

**6,400,000 Shares****scPharmaceuticals****Common Stock**

We are offering 6,400,000 shares of our common stock. This is our initial public offering and no public market currently exists for our common stock. The initial public offering price for our common stock is \$14.00 per share. We have been approved, subject to notice of issuance, to list our common stock on The Nasdaq Global Select Market under the symbol "SCPH."

We are an "emerging growth company" as defined in Section 2(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 and will be subject to reduced public company reporting requirements. See "Prospectus Summary—Implications of Being an Emerging Growth Company."

Investing in our common stock involves a high degree of risk. Please read "[Risk Factors](#)" beginning on page 10 of this prospectus.

Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

---

	<u>PER SHARE</u>	<u>TOTAL</u>
Public Offering Price	\$ 14.00	\$89,600,000
Underwriting Discounts and Commissions (1)	\$ 0.98	\$ 6,272,000
Proceeds to us, before expenses	\$ 13.02	\$83,328,000

---

(1) See "Underwriting" in this prospectus for a description of compensation payable to the underwriters.

Certain of our existing stockholders, including certain affiliates of our directors, have agreed to purchase an aggregate of approximately \$35 million of shares of our common stock in this offering at the initial public offering price.

Delivery of the shares of common stock is expected to be made on or about November 21, 2017. We have granted the underwriters an option for a period of 30 days to purchase an additional 960,000 shares of our common stock. If the underwriters exercise the option in full, the total underwriting discounts and commissions payable by us will be \$7,212,800, and the total proceeds to us, before expenses, will be \$95,827,200.

**Jefferies****Leerink Partners****BMO Capital Markets**

Prospectus dated November 16, 2017

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

	<u>PAGE</u>
<a href="#">PROSPECTUS SUMMARY</a>	1
<a href="#">RISK FACTORS</a>	10
<a href="#">SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS</a>	51
<a href="#">USE OF PROCEEDS</a>	53
<a href="#">DIVIDEND POLICY</a>	54
<a href="#">CAPITALIZATION</a>	55
<a href="#">DILUTION</a>	57
<a href="#">SELECTED FINANCIAL DATA</a>	59
<a href="#">MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS</a>	61
<a href="#">BUSINESS</a>	73
<a href="#">MANAGEMENT</a>	100
<a href="#">EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION</a>	107
<a href="#">DIRECTOR COMPENSATION</a>	116
<a href="#">CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS</a>	117
<a href="#">PRINCIPAL STOCKHOLDERS</a>	120
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK</a>	123
<a href="#">SHARES ELIGIBLE FOR FUTURE SALE</a>	127
<a href="#">MATERIAL U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSIDERATIONS FOR NON-U.S. HOLDERS OF COMMON STOCK</a>	129
<a href="#">UNDERWRITING</a>	132
<a href="#">LEGAL MATTERS</a>	139
<a href="#">EXPERTS</a>	139
<a href="#">WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION</a>	139
<a href="#">INDEX TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS</a>	F-1

---

Through and including December 11, 2017 (25 days after the commencement of this offering), all dealers effecting transactions in these securities, whether or not participating in this offering, may be required to deliver a prospectus. This delivery requirement is in addition to the obligation of dealers to deliver a prospectus when acting as underwriters and with respect to their unsold allotments or subscriptions.

You should rely only on the information contained in this prospectus or in any free writing prospectus we file with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Neither we nor the underwriters have authorized anyone to provide you with information other than that contained in this prospectus or any free writing prospectus prepared by or on behalf of us or to which we have referred you. We take no responsibility for, and can provide no assurance as to the reliability of, any other information that others may give you. We and the underwriters are offering to sell, and seeking offers to buy, common stock only in jurisdictions where offers and sales are permitted. The information contained in this prospectus is accurate only as of the date on the front cover page of this prospectus, or other earlier date stated in this prospectus, regardless of the time of delivery of this prospectus or of any sale of our common stock.

---

## PROSPECTUS SUMMARY

*This summary highlights information contained elsewhere in this prospectus and does not contain all of the information that you should consider in making your investment decision. Before investing in our common stock, you should carefully read this entire prospectus, including our financial statements and the related notes included elsewhere in this prospectus. You should also consider, among other things, the matters described under "Risk Factors" and "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations," in each case appearing elsewhere in this prospectus. As used in this prospectus, unless the context otherwise requires, references to the "company," "we," "us" and "our" refer to scPharmaceuticals Inc.*

### Overview

We are a pharmaceutical company focused on developing and commercializing products that have the potential to transform the way therapy is delivered, advance patient care and reduce healthcare costs. Our proprietary platform is designed to enable the subcutaneous administration of therapies that have previously been limited to intravenous, or IV, delivery. By moving delivery away from the high-cost healthcare settings typically required for IV administration, we believe our technology reduces overall healthcare costs and advances the quality and convenience of care. Our lead product candidate, Furoscix, consists of our subcutaneous formulation of furosemide delivered via our patented sc2Wear Infusor and is under development for treatment of worsening, or decompensated, heart failure outside of the inpatient setting. We filed a new drug application, or NDA, for Furoscix, with the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, or FDA, in August 2017. The FDA notified us in October 2017 that it had accepted our NDA for review and assigned us a June 23, 2018 Prescription Drug User Fee Act, or PDUFA, date which is the goal date for the FDA to complete its review of our NDA.

Heart failure is a chronic disease that affects approximately 6.5 million adults in the United States and treatment costs represent \$123 billion, or 33%, of annual Medicare Part A and B spending. Decompensated heart failure is one of the most common causes of hospital admissions and readmissions in patients age 65 and over, according to data from the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services. Patients with heart failure are prone to retain water and salt, or fluid, in their blood stream and other tissues. Management of fluid retention, or edema, to avoid decompensation is the primary concern for heart failure patients and their physicians. Heart failure patients are commonly prescribed an oral diuretic to promote ongoing discharge of excess fluid through urination, or diuresis. When their oral diuretic fails and the buildup of excess fluid continues, patients are admitted to the hospital for more intensive diuresis via IV administration of a loop diuretic. Furosemide represents over 90% of the IV loop diuretics utilized. Once a patient is stabilized, hospitals must decide between keeping the patient hospitalized for further diuresis, which results in high costs to the hospital, or discharging the patient so they may resume their normal lives and continue diuresis at home. In many instances, patients are discharged before diuresis is complete and must be readmitted to the hospital when their oral diuretic is not effective at home. Between 25% to 30% of Medicare patients are readmitted to the hospital for heart failure within 30 days of discharge, resulting in increased healthcare costs and potential penalties for the hospital.

We believe Furoscix, if approved by the FDA, would allow heart failure patients to receive IV-strength diuresis with earlier discharge from, or potentially without admission to, the high-cost hospital setting.

### Our Solution

Our novel formulation of furosemide was designed for subcutaneous delivery with a physiologic pH level to avoid the burning and discomfort associated with subcutaneous delivery of the current alkaline IV furosemide formulation. Furoscix consists of this novel formulation of furosemide for subcutaneous administration with our wearable, portable sc2Wear Infusor for the treatment of edema in patients with heart failure. Furoscix is delivered subcutaneously and has been observed in our clinical studies to date to provide comparable diuresis to IV furosemide with good tolerability.

We believe that, if approved, Furoscix has the potential to provide a safe, effective and more convenient solution that will enable IV-strength diuresis outside of the high-cost hospital setting, thereby reducing the number of days a heart failure patient remains in the hospital. We believe we can reduce the estimated 15 million days that heart failure patients spend in the hospital each year by decreasing current readmission rates, reducing the average length of stay and reducing admission rates for patients with mild edema. According to our estimates and analyses of Medicare data, for every 10% of heart failure patients that are managed outside of the inpatient setting, Medicare could save up to \$1.5 billion annually.

Our solution has the potential to reduce healthcare costs in the following ways:

- *Reduce patient readmission:* We believe Furoscix, if approved, could reduce the incidence of readmission for heart failure patients by providing IV-strength diuresis in the home environment upon discharge. Hospitals frequently discharge heart failure patients before diuresis is complete and transition them back to oral furosemide. Persistent edema reduces absorption of the oral furosemide, rendering it ineffective. As a result, patients are often readmitted to the hospital to again receive IV furosemide to complete diuresis.
- *Reduce patient length of stay:* We believe Furoscix, if approved, could reduce the average in-hospital length of stay for heart failure patients by allowing them to complete diuresis outside the hospital once they are stabilized. Our market research suggests that 46% of physicians believe they can reduce the length of stay for heart failure patients by one to two days if IV-strength diuresis could be achieved outside of the hospital setting following discharge.
- *Reduce hospital admission rates:* We believe Furoscix, if approved, could in certain instances avoid a hospitalization altogether, by providing IV-strength diuresis in an outpatient setting such as the physician office, heart failure clinic or at home. As a result, patients with chronic heart failure would have access to Furoscix at the onset of decompensation when their oral dosage begins to fail and could obtain treatment without presenting to the hospital.

Further, through subcutaneous delivery of IV-strength furosemide, we believe we can improve patients' quality of life by providing treatment with minimal interruption of daily living. Rather than restricting the patient to a stationary environment for an IV therapy, the wearable design of our Furoscix product candidate could potentially promote patient mobility by delivering furosemide for up to five hours while the patient resumes normal daily activities outside of the hospital.

### **Our Pipeline**

We have completed clinical trials and submitted an NDA for Furoscix, which the FDA has accepted for review, and believe that our sc2Wear subcutaneous drug delivery system has the potential to be used to administer additional existing drugs, specifically in the cardiovascular and infectious disease areas.

Beyond our initial focus on heart failure, our strategy is to apply our proprietary technology for the development of additional product candidates where, if approved, effective and convenient subcutaneous therapy may benefit patients, caregivers and payers.

- *scCeftriaxone:* We have filed an investigational new drug application, or IND, for scCeftriaxone, an antibiotic currently used intravenously for the treatment of infections caused by gram-positive and gram-negative organisms. To date, we have completed a positive PK study for scCeftriaxone and plan to conduct an additional Phase 3 study in 2019 to support an expected NDA filing in 2020.
- *scCarbapenem:* We have completed several IND-enabling studies for our scCarbapenem program, an antibiotic currently used intravenously for the treatment of infections caused by gram-negative organisms.

We aim to leverage our subcutaneous formulation expertise and delivery technology to develop and seek approval of additional drug candidates. We intend to conduct feasibility work on additional antibiotics and evaluate other product candidates.

## **Our Strategy**

Our goal is to improve the delivery paradigm for important, lifesaving medicines. We strive to reduce costs and improve patient quality of life by allowing for administration of therapies in lower cost settings with increased convenience and comfort for patients. Key elements of our strategy to achieve this goal are to:

- *Obtain FDA approval for our lead product candidate, Furoscix.* The FDA notified us in October 2017 that it had accepted our NDA for review and assigned us a June 23, 2018 PDUFA date.
- *Commercialize Furoscix in the United States.* We believe that we can effectively commercialize Furoscix, if approved, in the United States with a specialty sales force of approximately 40 representatives initially. We intend to target the highest volume hospitals and clinics, initially concentrating on those institutions that collectively account for 40% of all IV furosemide administered to heart failure patients.
- *Leverage our proprietary and licensed technology and the Furoscix sales force to develop and commercialize additional branded product candidates for treatment of cardiovascular and infectious diseases.* We plan to identify, develop and commercialize product candidates that we believe allow us to demonstrate value to patients and the healthcare system and that have large market potential. We intend to identify opportunities where existing pharmaceutical products currently require IV delivery in expensive care settings and where utilizing our proprietary technology could significantly reduce costs and improve quality of care for patients. We plan to leverage our sales force and Medicare-focused account teams that we are building to commercialize Furoscix, if approved, and for the launch of additional branded products.
- *Establish commercial collaborations outside the United States for our product candidates, if approved.* We plan to establish collaborations to commercialize our products, if approved by the relevant regulatory authorities, outside of the United States. We may also engage third-party intermediaries to sell and distribute our branded products, if approved, to hospitals and healthcare providers in foreign markets and thereby expand our global footprint and customer landscape.

## **Intellectual Property**

We own a patent family directed to the composition of matter of our subcutaneous formulation for furosemide and methods of treating edema, hypertension and heart failure using the formulation of furosemide. This patent family includes one pending U.S. patent application for which we recently received a notice of allowance for method of treatment claims, one pending patent application in each of Canada, China, Europe and Japan, and nine pending patent applications in other countries outside of the United States. Patents that issue from this patent family are generally expected to expire in 2034, excluding any additional term for patent term adjustment. In addition, we own a patent family directed to methods of treating infections and other diseases using a tri-phasic or a bi-phasic dosing regimen of a time-dependent antibiotic, which methods can include subcutaneous delivery via a micropump or patch pump device. This patent family includes one pending U.S. patent application, one pending patent application in Europe, and one pending patent application in another country outside of the United States. Patents that issue from this patent family are generally expected to expire in 2035, excluding any additional term for patent term adjustment.

## **Risks Associated with Our Business**

Our business is subject to a number of risks of which you should be aware before making an investment decision. These risks are discussed more fully in the "Risk Factors" section of this prospectus immediately following this prospectus summary. These risks include the following:

- We have a history of significant operating losses and expect to incur significant and increasing losses for the foreseeable future; we may never achieve or maintain profitability.
- We are heavily dependent on the success of our product candidates and, in particular, our lead product candidate, Furoscix. We cannot give any assurance that we will receive regulatory approval for this product candidate or any other product candidates, which is necessary before they can be commercialized.

- If we are not able to obtain required regulatory approvals, we will not be able to commercialize Furoscix, and our ability to generate revenue will be materially impaired.
- We intend to utilize the 505(b)(2) pathway for the regulatory approval of Furoscix, and an NDA submitted under Section 505(b)(2) may subject us to a patent infringement lawsuit that would delay or prevent the review or approval of Furoscix.
- The commercial success of Furoscix and any other product candidates, if approved, depends upon attaining market acceptance by hospital networks, physicians, patients, third-party payers and the medical community.
- If we are unable to establish sales and marketing capabilities or enter into agreements with third parties to market and sell Furoscix, if approved, we may be unable to generate any revenue.
- If we fail to produce Furoscix, if approved, in the volumes that we require on a timely basis, we may face delays in our commercialization efforts.
- If we are unable to achieve and maintain coverage and adequate levels of reimbursement for our product or product candidates, if approved, their commercial success may be severely limited.
- We may be subject to product liability lawsuits related to our product candidates, if approved, which could divert our resources, result in substantial liabilities and reduce the commercial potential of our product candidates.
- The commencement and completion of clinical trials can be delayed or prevented for a number of reasons. Clinical failure may occur at any stage of clinical development, and the results of our clinical trials may not support our proposed indications for our product candidates.
- Our failure to successfully identify, develop and market additional product candidates could impair our ability to grow.
- If we fail to comply with our obligations under our existing and any future intellectual property license with third parties, we could lose license rights that are important to our business.
- Our success depends on our ability to protect our intellectual property and proprietary technology, as well as the ability of our collaborators to protect their intellectual property and proprietary technology.
- We depend heavily on our executive officers, directors and principal consultants and the loss of their services would materially harm our business.

### **Corporate History**

We were formed as a limited liability company under the laws of the State of Delaware in February 2013 under the name scPharmaceuticals LLC. We converted to a corporation under the laws of the State of Delaware in March 2014 under the name scPharmaceuticals Inc. Our executive offices are located at 2400 District Avenue, Suite 310, Burlington, Massachusetts 01830, and our telephone number is (617) 517-0730. Our website address is [www.scpharmaceuticals.com](http://www.scpharmaceuticals.com). We do not incorporate the information on or accessible through our website into this prospectus, and you should not consider any information on, or that can be accessed through, our website as part of this prospectus.

We own various U.S. federal trademark registrations and applications and unregistered trademarks, including our company name. The scPharmaceuticals logo is our trademark and we own pending trademark applications for scPharmaceuticals, sc2Wear, and Furoscix. The other trademarks, trade names and service marks appearing in this prospectus are the property of their respective owners. Solely for convenience, the trademarks and trade names in this prospectus are referred to without the symbols ® and ™, but such references should not be construed as any indicator that their respective owners will not assert, to the fullest extent under applicable law, their rights thereto.

Except as otherwise indicated herein or as the context otherwise requires, references in this prospectus to “scPharmaceuticals,” “the company,” “we,” “us” and “our” refer to scPharmaceuticals Inc.

### **Implications of Being an Emerging Growth Company**

We qualify as an “emerging growth company” as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012, as amended. As an emerging growth company, we may take advantage of specified reduced disclosure and other requirements that are otherwise applicable generally to public companies. These provisions include:

- Only two years of audited financial statements in addition to any required unaudited interim financial statements with correspondingly reduced “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” disclosure;
- Reduced disclosure about our executive compensation arrangements;
- No advisory votes on executive compensation or golden parachute arrangements;
- Exemption from the auditor attestation requirement in the assessment of our internal control over financial reporting; and
- An exemption from new or revised financial accounting standards until they would apply to private companies and from compliance with any new requirements adopted by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board requiring mandatory audit firm rotation.

We may take advantage of these exemptions for up to five years or such earlier time that we are no longer an emerging growth company. We would cease to be an emerging growth company on the date that is the earliest of (i) the last day of the fiscal year in which we have total annual gross revenues of \$1.07 billion or more; (ii) the last day of our fiscal year following the fifth anniversary of the date of the completion of this offering; (iii) the date on which we have issued more than \$1.07 billion in nonconvertible debt during the previous three years; or (iv) the date on which we are deemed to be a large accelerated filer under the rules of the Securities and Exchange Commission, or SEC. We may choose to take advantage of some but not all of these exemptions. We have taken advantage of reduced reporting requirements in this prospectus. Accordingly, the information contained herein may be different from the information you receive from other public companies in which you hold stock. We have irrevocably elected to “opt out” of the exemption for the delayed adoption of certain accounting standards and, therefore, will be subject to the same new or revised accounting standards as other public companies that are not emerging growth companies.

## THE OFFERING

Common stock offered by us	6,400,000 shares
Common stock to be outstanding immediately after this offering	17,610,151 shares (18,570,151 shares if the underwriters exercise their option to purchase additional shares in full)
Underwriters' option to purchase additional shares	We have granted a 30-day option to the underwriters to purchase up to an aggregate of 960,000 additional shares of common stock from us at the public offering price, less underwriting discounts and commissions on the same terms as set forth in this prospectus.
Use of proceeds	We estimate that we will receive net proceeds from the sale of shares of our common stock in this offering of approximately \$81.2 million, or \$93.7 million if the underwriters exercise their option to purchase additional shares in full, and after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us. We intend to use the net proceeds from this offering, together with our existing unrestricted cash, for: pre-commercial planning and commercialization of Furoscix, if approved; automation necessary to increase manufacturing capacity for our sc2Wear Infusor; research and development, including for our infectious diseases program; and the remainder, if any, for working capital and other general corporate purposes. For a more complete description of our intended use of the proceeds from this offering, see "Use of Proceeds."
Risk factors	You should carefully read the "Risk Factors" section of this prospectus for a discussion of factors that you should consider before deciding to invest in our common stock.
Nasdaq Global Select Market symbol	"SCPH"
Certain of our existing stockholders, including certain affiliates of our directors, have agreed to purchase an aggregate of approximately \$35 million of shares of our common stock in this offering at the initial public offering price.	
The number of shares of our common stock to be outstanding after this offering is based on 1,083,380 shares of our common stock outstanding as of September 30, 2017 (of which 852 shares are subject to a right of repurchase by us pursuant to a stock restriction agreement between us and the holders of such shares), and gives effect to the conversion of all of our outstanding preferred stock into 10,126,771 shares of our common stock immediately prior to the closing of this offering, and excludes:	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ 1,046,879 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of stock options outstanding as of September 30, 2017, with a weighted average exercise price of \$4.76 per share;</li><li>▪ 124,437 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of stock options granted after September 30, 2017, with a weighted average exercise price of \$4.22 per share;</li></ul>	

## [Table of Contents](#)

- an additional 159,806 shares of common stock reserved for issuance under our 2014 Stock Incentive Plan as of September 30, 2017, which shares will no longer be reserved following this offering;
- an additional 1,430,000 shares of common stock that were made available for future issuance under our 2017 Stock Option and Incentive Plan upon the effectiveness of the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part; and
- an additional 205,000 shares of common stock that were made available for future issuance under our 2017 Employee Stock Purchase Plan upon the effectiveness of the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part.

Unless otherwise indicated, all information in this prospectus reflects or assumes the following:

- the filing of our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and the effectiveness of our amended and restated by-laws upon the closing of this offering;
- the conversion of all of our outstanding shares of preferred stock into an aggregate of 10,126,771 shares of common stock upon the closing of this offering;
- no exercise of outstanding options after September 30, 2017;
- a 1-for-7.180193 reverse split of our common stock effected on November 6, 2017; and
- no exercise by the underwriters of their option to purchase up to 960,000 additional shares of common stock in this offering.

## SUMMARY FINANCIAL DATA

The summary statements of operations data presented below for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2016 are derived from our audited financial statements included elsewhere in this prospectus. The summary statements of operations data for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2017 and our balance sheet data as of September 30, 2017 are derived from our unaudited interim condensed financial statements included elsewhere in this prospectus. The unaudited interim condensed financial statements were prepared on a basis consistent with our audited financial statements and reflect, in the opinion of management, all adjustments of a normal recurring nature that are necessary for the fair presentation of our financial position as of September 30, 2017 and our results of operations for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2017. Our historical results are not necessarily indicative of the results that may be expected in any future period, and the results for the nine months ended September 30, 2017 are not necessarily indicative of results to be expected for the full year ending December 31, 2017, or any other period.

The following summary financial data should be read with "Selected Financial Data," "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" and our financial statements and related notes included elsewhere in this prospectus. The summary financial data in this section are not intended to replace the financial statements and are qualified in their entirety by the financial statements and related notes included elsewhere in this prospectus.

(in thousands, except share and per share data)	YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31,		NINE MONTHS ENDED SEPTEMBER 30,	
	2015	2016	2016	2017
	(unaudited)			
<b>Statements of operations data:</b>				
Operating expenses:				
Research and development	\$ 8,267	\$ 11,856	\$ 8,839	\$ 10,615
General and administrative	2,577	6,054	5,111	6,113
Total operating expenses	<u>10,844</u>	<u>17,910</u>	<u>13,950</u>	<u>16,728</u>
Loss from operations	(10,844)	(17,910)	(13,950)	(16,728)
Interest expense, net	—	(6,505)	(5,120)	(291)
Fair value adjustments to Series A purchase rights	394	—	—	—
Other (expense) income, net	(68)	38	11	82
Net loss attributable to common stockholders	<u>\$ (10,518)</u>	<u>\$ (24,377)</u>	<u>\$ (19,059)</u>	<u>\$ (16,937)</u>
Net loss per share attributable to common stockholders, basic and diluted (1)	<u>\$ (13.78)</u>	<u>\$ (25.01)</u>	<u>\$ (20.20)</u>	<u>\$ (15.76)</u>
Weighted-average common shares outstanding, basic and diluted (1)	<u>763,112</u>	<u>974,660</u>	<u>943,501</u>	<u>1,074,702</u>
Pro forma net loss per share attributable to common stockholders, basic and diluted (unaudited) (1)		<u>\$ (6.11)</u>		<u>\$ (1.51)</u>
Pro forma weighted-average common shares outstanding, basic and diluted (unaudited) (1)		<u>3,989,846</u>		<u>11,201,473</u>

(1) See Notes 2 and 3 to our audited financial statements and Notes 2 and 4 to our unaudited interim condensed financial statements included elsewhere in this prospectus for an explanation of the calculations of our basic and diluted net loss per share, basic and diluted pro forma net loss per share and the shares used in computing basic and diluted net loss per share and basic and diluted pro forma net loss per share.

[Table of Contents](#)

(in thousands)	AS OF SEPTEMBER 30, 2017		
	ACTUAL	PRO FORMA (1)	PRO FORMA AS ADJUSTED (2)
<b>Balance sheet data:</b>			
Cash and restricted cash (3)	\$ 32,017	\$ 31,617	\$ 113,193
Working capital (4)	29,106	28,706	109,892
Total assets	34,334	33,934	114,418
Term loan	9,360	9,360	9,360
Derivative liability	394	—	—
Convertible preferred stock	73,094	—	—
Accumulated deficit	(60,137)	(60,143)	(60,143)
Total stockholders' (deficit) equity	(53,434)	19,654	100,840

(1) The pro forma balance sheet data give effect to (i) the automatic conversion of all outstanding shares of our convertible preferred stock as of September 30, 2017 into an aggregate of 10,126,771 shares of common stock and (ii) payment by us of an aggregate of \$400,000 pursuant to our Exit Fee Agreement with Solar Capital Ltd. and Silicon Valley Bank, in each case immediately prior to the closing of this offering.

(2) The pro forma as adjusted balance sheet data give effect to: (i) the pro forma adjustments set forth in footnote (1) above and (ii) the sale and issuance of 6,400,000 shares of common stock in this offering, at the initial public offering price of \$14.00 per share, after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us.

(3) Includes \$182,000 of restricted cash related to a letter of credit issued as a security deposit in connection with our office lease in Burlington, Massachusetts.

(4) We define working capital as current assets less current liabilities.

## RISK FACTORS

*Investing in our common stock involves a high degree of risk. You should carefully consider the following risks and uncertainties, together with all other information in this prospectus, including our consolidated financial statements and related notes and "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations," before investing in our common stock. Any of the risk factors we describe below could adversely affect our business, financial condition or results of operations. The market price of our common stock could decline if one or more of these risks or uncertainties actually occur, causing you to lose all or part of the money you paid to buy our common stock. Additional risks that we currently do not know about or that we currently believe to be immaterial may also impair our business. Certain statements below are forward-looking statements. See "Special Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements" in this prospectus.*

### **Risks Related to Our Business, Financial Position and Need for Additional Capital**

***We have a history of significant operating losses and expect to incur significant and increasing losses for the foreseeable future; we may never achieve or maintain profitability.***

We do not expect to generate revenue or profitability that is necessary to finance our operations in the short term. We incurred net losses of \$10.5 million and \$24.4 million for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2016, respectively, and \$19.1 million and \$16.9 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively. In addition, our accumulated deficit as of December 31, 2015 and 2016 was \$18.8 million and \$43.2 million, respectively, and \$60.1 million as of September 30, 2017. To date, we have not commercialized any products or generated any revenues from the sale of products, and absent the realization of sufficient revenues from product sales, if any, of our current or future product candidates, if approved, we may never attain profitability in the future. We have devoted substantially all of our financial resources and efforts to date to research and development, including preclinical studies and our clinical trials, and preparation for commercialization of our lead product candidate, Furoscix, if approved.

We anticipate that our expenses will increase substantially if and as we:

- pursue regulatory approval of Furoscix;
- establish sales, marketing, distribution and other commercial infrastructure and manufacture commercial inventory in anticipation of the potential regulatory approval of Furoscix;
- initiate and continue research, preclinical and clinical development efforts for any additional or future product candidates, including subcutaneous ceftriaxone;
- seek to identify additional product candidates;
- seek regulatory and marketing approvals for other product candidates that successfully complete clinical trials;
- manufacture larger quantities of product candidates for clinical development and, potentially, commercialization;
- maintain, expand and protect our intellectual property portfolio;
- hire and retain additional personnel, such as clinical, quality control, commercial and scientific personnel;
- add operational, financial and management information systems and personnel, including personnel to support our product development and help us comply with our obligations as a public company; and
- add equipment and physical infrastructure to support our research and development.

Our ability to become and remain profitable depends on our ability to generate revenue. We do not expect to generate significant revenue unless and until we are able to obtain marketing approval for, and successfully commercialize, Furoscix or any other product candidates that we may develop. Successful commercialization will require achievement of key milestones, including completing clinical trials of our product candidates that are under clinical development, obtaining marketing approval for our product candidates, manufacturing, marketing and selling those products for which we, or any of our future collaborators, may obtain marketing approval, satisfying any post-marketing requirements and obtaining reimbursement for our products from private insurance or government payers. Because of the uncertainties and risks associated with these activities, we are unable to accurately predict the

## [Table of Contents](#)

timing and amount of revenues, and if or when we might achieve profitability. We and any future collaborators may never succeed in these activities and, even if we or any future collaborators do, we may never generate revenues that are large enough for us to achieve profitability. Even if we do achieve profitability, we may not be able to sustain or increase profitability on a quarterly or annual basis.

Our failure to become and remain profitable would depress the market price of our common stock and could impair our ability to raise capital, expand our business, diversify our product offerings or continue our operations. If we continue to suffer losses as we have in the past, investors may not receive any return on their investment and may lose their entire investment.

***We have not generated any revenue from Furoscix and may never be profitable.***

Our ability to become profitable depends upon our ability to generate revenue. To date, we have not generated any revenue from Furoscix, and we do not know when, or if, we will generate any revenue. We do not expect to generate significant revenue unless or until we obtain marketing approval of, and begin to sell, Furoscix. Our ability to generate revenue depends on a number of factors, including, but not limited to, our ability to:

- obtain marketing approval for Furoscix;
- set an acceptable price for Furoscix, if approved;
- obtain commercial quantities of Furoscix, if Furoscix is approved, at acceptable cost levels;
- commercialize Furoscix, if approved, by developing our own sales force for commercialization in the United States or in other key territories by entering into partnership or co-promotion arrangements with third parties;
- obtain third-party coverage or adequate reimbursement for Furoscix, if approved;
- achieve market acceptance of Furoscix, if approved, in the medical community and with third-party payers, including placement in accepted clinical guidelines for the conditions for which Furoscix is intended to target; and
- delay the introduction by third parties of alternate versions of Furoscix, if approved.

If Furoscix is approved for commercial sale, we expect to incur significant sales and marketing costs as we prepare for its commercialization. Even if we receive marketing approval and expend these costs, Furoscix may not be a commercially successful device-drug combination. We may not achieve profitability soon after generating product sales, if ever. If we are unable to generate product revenue, we will not become profitable and may be unable to continue operations without continued funding.

***We may need additional funding and may be unable to raise capital when needed, which would force us to delay, reduce or eliminate our product development programs or commercialization efforts.***

Developing our product programs is a time-consuming, expensive and uncertain process that takes years to complete. If Furoscix or any of our other product candidates are approved, we may incur significant commercialization expenses related to product sales, marketing, manufacturing and distribution. Accordingly, we will need to obtain substantial additional funding in connection with our continuing operations. If we are unable to raise capital when needed or on attractive terms, we may be forced to delay, reduce or eliminate our research and development programs or any future commercialization efforts.

We plan to use the net proceeds of this offering primarily for pre-commercial planning and commercialization of Furoscix, if approved, automation necessary to increase capacity for our sc2Wear Infusor, research and development, including for our infectious diseases program and for working capital and other general corporate purposes. We will be required to expend significant funds in order to commercialize Furoscix, as well as other product candidates we may seek to develop. In any event, the net proceeds of this offering and our existing unrestricted cash may not be sufficient to fund all of the efforts that we plan to undertake, including the commercialization of Furoscix, if approved, and development of any of our other product candidates. Accordingly, we may be required to obtain further funding through public or private equity offerings, debt financings, royalty-based financing arrangements, collaborations and licensing arrangements or other sources. We do not have any committed external source of funds. Adequate additional financing may not be available to us on acceptable terms, or at all. Our failure to raise capital as and when needed would have a negative impact on our financial condition and our ability to pursue our business strategy.

## Table of Contents

We believe that the net proceeds from this offering, together with our existing unrestricted cash as of September 30, 2017, will enable us to fund our operating expenses and capital expenditure requirements for at least 24 months following this offering. Our estimate may prove to be wrong, and we may use our available capital resources sooner than we currently expect. Further, changing circumstances, some of which may be beyond our control, may cause us to consume capital significantly faster than we currently anticipate, and we may need to seek additional funds sooner than planned. Our future funding requirements, both short-term and long-term, will depend on many factors, including:

- the outcome, timing and costs of seeking regulatory approvals for Furoscix and other product candidates that we may develop;
- the costs of commercialization activities for Furoscix and any other of our product candidates that receive marketing approval, including the costs and timing of establishing product sales, marketing, distribution and manufacturing capabilities;
- subject to receipt of marketing approval, revenue, if any, received from commercial sales of Furoscix or any other of our current and future product candidates;
- the pricing and reimbursement of Furoscix, if approved, and of other product candidates that may be approved;
- the number of future product candidates that we pursue and their development requirements;
- the scope, progress, timing, costs and results of clinical trials of, and research and preclinical development efforts for, our other product candidates;
- our ability to enter into, and the terms and timing of, any collaborations, licensing or other arrangements;
- our headcount growth and associated costs as we establish a commercial infrastructure and continue our research and development activities;
- the costs of preparing, filing and prosecuting patent applications, maintaining and protecting our intellectual property rights including enforcing and defending intellectual property related claims; and
- the costs of operating as a public company.

***Raising additional capital may cause dilution to our stockholders, including purchasers of common stock in this offering, restrict our operations or require us to relinquish rights to our technologies or product candidates.***

We expect our expenses to increase in connection with our planned operations. To the extent that we raise additional capital through the sale of common stock, convertible securities or other equity securities, your ownership interest may be diluted, and the terms of these securities could include liquidation or other preferences and anti-dilution protections that could adversely affect your rights as a common stockholder. In addition, royalty-based financing or debt financing, if available, may result in our relinquishing rights to valuable future revenue streams or fixed payment obligations and may involve agreements that include restrictive covenants that limit our ability to take specific actions, such as incurring additional debt, making capital expenditures, creating liens, redeeming stock or declaring dividends, that could adversely impact our ability to conduct our business. In addition, securing financing could require a substantial amount of time and attention from our management and may divert a disproportionate amount of their attention away from day-to-day activities, which may adversely affect our management's ability to oversee the commercialization of Furoscix, if approved, and the development of our other product candidates.

If we raise additional funds through collaborations or marketing, distribution or licensing, or royalty-based financing arrangements with third parties, we may have to relinquish valuable rights to our technologies, future revenue streams or product candidates or grant licenses on terms that may not be favorable to us. If we are unable to raise additional funds when needed, we may be required to delay, limit, reduce or terminate our product development or commercialization efforts or grant rights to develop and market product candidates that we would otherwise prefer to develop and market ourselves.

***We have a limited operating history and no history of commercializing pharmaceutical products, which may make it difficult to evaluate the prospects for our future viability.***

We commenced operations in 2013. Our operations to date have been limited to financing and staffing our company, developing our technology and conducting preclinical research and clinical trials for our product candidates. We only recently submitted a new drug application, or NDA, for Furoscix in August 2017. The FDA

## [Table of Contents](#)

notified us in October 2017 that it had accepted our NDA for review and assigned us a June 23, 2018 Prescription Drug User Fee Act, or PDUFA, date which is the goal date for the FDA to complete its review of our NDA. However, there can be no assurance that our NDA for Furoscix will be approved by the FDA by the goal date or at all. We have not yet demonstrated an ability to obtain marketing approvals, manufacture a commercial-scale product, or arrange for a third party to do so on our behalf, or conduct sales and marketing activities necessary for successful product commercialization. Accordingly, you should consider our prospects in light of the costs, uncertainties, delays and difficulties frequently encountered by companies prior to regulatory approval of any product candidates, especially pharmaceutical companies such as ours. Any predictions you make about our future success or viability may not be as accurate as they could be if we had a longer operating history or a history of successfully commercializing pharmaceutical products.

We may encounter unforeseen expenses, difficulties, complications, delays and other known or unknown factors in achieving our business objectives. We will need to transition from a company with a development focus to a company capable of supporting commercial activities. We may not be successful in such a transition.

We expect our financial condition and operating results to continue to fluctuate significantly from quarter to quarter and year to year due to a variety of factors, many of which are beyond our control. Accordingly, you should not rely upon the results of any quarterly or annual periods as indications of future operating performance.

***We may not have cash available to us in an amount sufficient to enable us to make interest or principal payments on our indebtedness when due.***

In May 2017, we entered into a secured credit facility pursuant to a loan and security agreement with Solar Capital Ltd. and Silicon Valley Bank, providing for term loans of up to an aggregate of \$10.0 million. All obligations under our secured credit facility are secured by substantially all of our existing property and assets (excluding our intellectual property assets), subject to certain exceptions. This debt financing may create additional financial risk for us, particularly if our business or prevailing financial market conditions are not conducive to paying off or refinancing our outstanding debt obligations at maturity.

Failure to satisfy our current and future debt obligations, including covenants to take or avoid specific actions, under our secured credit facility could result in an event of default and, as a result, our lenders could accelerate all of the amounts due. In the event of an acceleration of amounts due under our secured credit facility as a result of an event of default, we may not have sufficient funds or may be unable to arrange for additional financing to repay our indebtedness while still pursuing our current business strategy. In addition, our lenders could seek to enforce their security interests in any collateral securing such indebtedness.

### **Risks Related to the Regulatory Approval and Commercialization of Our Lead Product Candidate, Furoscix**

***We are heavily dependent on the success of our product candidates and, in particular, our lead product candidate, Furoscix, for which regulatory approval is pending. We cannot give any assurance that we will receive regulatory approval for this product candidate or any other product candidates, which is necessary before they can be commercialized.***

To date, we have expended significant time, resources and effort on the development of our product candidates, and a substantial majority of our resources are now focused on seeking marketing approval for and planning for potential commercialization of our most advanced product candidate, Furoscix, in the United States. Our business and future success are substantially dependent on our ability to successfully and timely obtain regulatory approval for and commercialize Furoscix for the treatment of decompensated heart failure. All of our other product candidates are in earlier stages of development and subject to the risks of failure inherent in developing drug products. Accordingly, our ability to generate significant product revenues in the near term will depend almost entirely on our ability to successfully obtain marketing approval for and commercialize Furoscix.

We are not permitted to market any of our product candidates in the United States until we receive approval of an NDA from the FDA, or in any foreign jurisdiction until we receive the requisite approvals from such jurisdiction. We only recently submitted our NDA for Furoscix in August 2017, and the FDA notified us in October 2017 that it had accepted our NDA for review and assigned us a June 23, 2018 PDUFA date. However there can be no assurance that the FDA will approve Furoscix by this goal date, if at all and, unless it obtains regulatory approval, it may never be commercialized. Satisfaction of regulatory requirements can be protracted, is dependent upon the type, complexity and novelty of the

## [Table of Contents](#)

product candidate and requires the expenditure of substantial resources. For example, Furoscix is considered to be a drug-device combination product by the FDA, and its NDA thus will require review and coordination by FDA's drug and device centers prior to approval. We cannot predict whether we will obtain regulatory approval to commercialize Furoscix or any of our other product candidates, and we cannot, therefore, predict the timing of any future revenues from these product candidates, if any. Any delay or setback in the regulatory approval or commercialization of any of these product candidates will adversely affect our business.

Our ability to successfully commercialize any of our products candidates will depend, among other things, on our ability to:

- receive marketing approvals from the FDA and similar foreign regulatory authorities;
- produce, through a validated process, sufficiently large quantities of our product candidates to permit successful commercialization;
- establish and maintain commercial manufacturing arrangements with third-party manufacturers;
- build and maintain sales, distribution and marketing capabilities sufficient to launch commercial sales of our product candidates;
- successfully complete our clinical trials for our product candidates under clinical development;
- establish collaborations with third parties for the commercialization of our product candidates in countries outside the United States and such collaborators' ability to obtain regulatory and reimbursement approvals in such countries;
- secure acceptance of our product candidates from physicians, healthcare payers, patients and the medical community; and
- manage our spending as costs and expenses increase due to clinical trials, regulatory approvals and commercialization.

There are no guarantees that we will be successful in completing these tasks. If we are unable to successfully complete these tasks, we may not be able to commercialize Furoscix or any of our other product candidates in a timely manner, or at all, in which case we may be unable to generate sufficient revenues to sustain and grow our business.

***If we are not able to obtain required regulatory approvals, we will not be able to commercialize Furoscix, and our ability to generate revenue will be materially impaired.***

Furoscix and the activities associated with its development and commercialization, including its design, research, testing, manufacture, safety, efficacy, recordkeeping, labeling, packaging, storage, approval, advertising, promotion, sale and distribution, are subject to comprehensive regulation by the FDA and other regulatory agencies in the United States and similar regulatory authorities outside the United States. Failure to obtain marketing approval for Furoscix will prevent us from commercializing it.

The time required to obtain approval by the FDA and comparable foreign authorities is unpredictable but typically takes many years following the commencement of clinical trials and depends upon numerous factors, including the substantial discretion of the regulatory authorities. In addition, approval policies, regulations, or the type and amount of clinical data necessary to gain approval may change during the course of a product candidate's clinical development and may vary among jurisdictions. We have not received approval from regulatory authorities to market any product candidate in any jurisdiction, and it is possible that neither Furoscix nor any product candidates we may seek to develop in the future will ever obtain the appropriate regulatory approvals necessary for us to commence product sales.

The FDA has substantial discretion in the drug approval process, including the ability to delay, limit or deny approval of a product candidate for many reasons. For example the FDA:

- could determine that we cannot rely on the Section 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway for Furoscix;
- could determine that the information provided by us was inadequate, contained clinical deficiencies or otherwise failed to demonstrate the safety and effectiveness of Furoscix or any of our product candidates for any indication;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- may not find the data from bioequivalence studies and/or clinical trials sufficient to support the submission of an NDA or to obtain marketing approval in the United States, including any findings that the clinical and other benefits of our product candidates outweigh their safety risks;
- may disagree with our trial design or our interpretation of data from preclinical studies, bioequivalence studies and/or clinical trials, or may change the requirements for approval even after it has reviewed and commented on the design for our trials;
- may determine that there are unacceptable risks associated with the device component of Furoscix or that there are deficiencies with the information submitted to demonstrate the safety, effectiveness and reliability of the device component;
- may determine that we have identified the wrong listed drug or drugs or that approval of our Section 505(b)(2) application for Furoscix or any of our other product candidates is blocked by patent or non-patent exclusivity of the listed drug or drugs or of other previously-approved drugs with the same conditions of approval as Furoscix (e.g., subcutaneous injection);
- may identify deficiencies in the manufacturing processes or facilities of third-party manufacturers with which we enter into agreements for the manufacturing of our product candidates;
- may approve our product candidates for fewer or more limited indications than we request, or may grant approval contingent on the performance of costly post-approval clinical trials;
- may change its approval policies or adopt new regulations; or
- may not approve the labeling claims that we believe are necessary or desirable for the successful commercialization of our product candidates.

For example, in our Phase 3 product design clinical validation, or PDCV, study, Furoscix did not meet its specified primary endpoints of the absence of major product and major system related failures leading to inadequate delivery of drug product, due to four cases in which the Furoscix administered doses fell below the predefined criteria. We discussed these data with the FDA at a pre-NDA meeting in June 2017. As part of our NDA submission, the FDA requested that a high-level safety assurance case be submitted just prior to the NDA submission, which request we have complied with, and that certain updated risk analyses be submitted concurrently with our NDA. In addition, the FDA requested that our NDA include an assessment of the data generated from all of our studies, and stated that our NDA appeared capable of supporting a review. The FDA notified us in October 2017 that it had accepted our NDA for review and assigned us a June 23, 2018 PDUFA date. However, there can be no assurance that the FDA will approve Furoscix or that the FDA will not require us to undertake additional activities, such as conducting additional studies or performing other analyses before approving Furoscix.

Even if we were to obtain approval, regulatory authorities may approve any of our product candidates for fewer or more limited indications than we request, may not approve the price we intend to charge for our products, may grant approval contingent on the performance of costly post-marketing clinical trials, may impose distribution or use restrictions, or may approve a product candidate with a label that does not include the labeling claims necessary or desirable for the successful commercialization of that product candidate. Any of the foregoing scenarios could materially harm the commercial prospects for our product candidates.

In addition, principal investigators for our clinical trials may serve as scientific advisors or consultants to us from time to time and receive compensation in connection with such services. Under certain circumstances, we may be required to report some of these relationships to the FDA or other regulatory authorities. The FDA or other regulatory authorities may conclude that a financial relationship between us and a principal investigator has created a conflict of interest or otherwise affected interpretation of the study. The FDA or other regulatory authorities may therefore question the integrity of the data generated at the applicable clinical trial site and the utility of the clinical trial itself may be jeopardized. This could result in a delay in approval or rejection of our marketing applications by the FDA or other regulatory authorities, as the case may be, and may ultimately lead to the denial of marketing approval of one or more of our product candidates.

A number of academic institutions have or are also currently conducting and sponsoring clinical trials relating to Furoscix, including the Johns Hopkins Heart Failure Bridge Clinic and the Duke Clinical Research Institute. We do not control the design or administration of investigator-sponsored trials, and the investigator-sponsored trials could,

## [Table of Contents](#)

depending on the actions of such third parties, jeopardize the validity of the clinical data generated, identify significant concerns with respect to Furoscix that could impact our findings or clinical trials, and adversely affect our ability to obtain marketing approval from the FDA or other applicable regulatory authorities.

One of the investigator sponsored trials of our product candidates is currently ongoing. To the extent the results of this or other investigator sponsored trials are inconsistent with, or different from, the results of our company-sponsored trials or raise concerns regarding Furoscix, the FDA or a foreign regulatory authority may question the results of the company-sponsored trial, or subject such results to greater scrutiny than it otherwise would. In these circumstances, the FDA or such foreign regulatory authorities may require us to obtain and submit additional clinical data, which could delay clinical development or marketing approval of Furoscix.

We expect to rely on third-party consultants to assist us in filing and supporting the applications necessary to gain marketing approvals. Securing marketing approval requires the submission of extensive preclinical and clinical data and supporting information to regulatory authorities for each therapeutic indication to establish Furoscix's safety and efficacy for that indication. Securing marketing approval also requires the submission of information about the manufacturing process to, and inspection of manufacturing facilities by, the regulatory authorities. If we cannot successfully obtain approval of or commercialize Furoscix, our business will be materially harmed and your investment will be adversely affected.

***We intend to utilize the 505(b)(2) pathway for the regulatory approval of Furoscix. Final marketing approval of Furoscix or any of our other product candidates by the FDA or other regulatory authorities may be delayed, limited, or denied, any of which would adversely affect our ability to generate operating revenues.***

We are pursuing a regulatory pathway pursuant to Section 505(b)(2) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act, or FDCA, for the approval of Furoscix, which allows us to rely on our submissions on existing clinical data for the drug. Section 505(b)(2) was enacted as part of the Drug Price Competition and Patent Term Restoration Act of 1984, or the Hatch-Waxman Amendments, and permits the submission of an NDA where at least some of the information required for approval comes from preclinical studies or clinical trials not conducted by or for the applicant and for which the applicant has not obtained a right of reference. The FDA interprets Section 505(b)(2) of the FDCA to permit the applicant to rely upon the FDA's previous findings of safety and efficacy for an approved product. The FDA requires submission of information needed to support any changes to a previously approved drug, such as published data or new studies conducted by the applicant or clinical trials demonstrating safety and efficacy. The FDA could refuse to file our NDA submissions, request additional information before accepting our submissions for filing or require additional information to sufficiently demonstrate safety and efficacy to support approval.

If the FDA does not allow us to pursue the Section 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway as anticipated, we may need to conduct additional clinical trials, provide additional data and information, and meet additional standards for regulatory approval. If this were to occur, the time and financial resources required to obtain FDA approval for these product candidates, and the complications and risks associated with these product candidates, would likely substantially increase. Moreover, an inability to pursue the Section 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway would likely result in new competitive products reaching the market more quickly than our product candidates, which would likely materially adversely impact our competitive position and prospects. Even if we are allowed to pursue the Section 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway, we cannot assure you that our product candidates will receive the requisite approvals for commercialization.

Notwithstanding the approval of many products by the FDA pursuant to Section 505(b)(2), over the last few years some pharmaceutical companies and others have objected to the FDA's interpretation of Section 505(b)(2) to allow reliance on the FDA's prior findings of safety and effectiveness. If the FDA changes its interpretation of Section 505(b)(2), or if the FDA's interpretation is successfully challenged in court, this could delay or even prevent the FDA from approving any Section 505(b)(2) application that we submit. Moreover, the FDA recently adopted an interpretation of the three-year exclusivity provisions whereby a 505(b)(2) application can be blocked by exclusivity even if does not rely on the previously-approved drug that has exclusivity (or any safety or effectiveness information regarding that drug). Under the FDA's new interpretation, the approval of Furoscix may be blocked by exclusivity awarded to a previously-approved drug product that shares certain innovative features with Furoscix, even if our 505(b)(2) application does not identify the previously-approved drug product as a listed drug or rely upon any of its safety or efficacy data. Any failure to obtain regulatory approval of our product candidates would significantly limit our ability to generate revenues, and any failure to obtain such approval for all of the indications and labeling claims we deem desirable could reduce our potential revenues.

***Additional time may be required to obtain regulatory approval for our product candidates because they are combination products.***

Because our product candidates are designed to be self-administered subcutaneously by patients, they are drug-device combination products that require coordination within the FDA and similar foreign regulatory agencies for review of their device and drug components. Although the FDA and similar foreign regulatory agencies have systems in place for the review and approval of combination products such as ours, we may experience delays in the development and commercialization of our product candidates due to regulatory timing constraints and uncertainties in the product development and approval process.

***The commercial success of Furoscix and any other product candidates, if approved, depends upon attaining market acceptance by hospital networks, physicians, patients, third-party payers and the medical community.***

Even if our current and future product candidates are approved for commercialization by the appropriate regulatory authorities, physicians may not prescribe our approved product candidates, in which case we would not generate the revenues we anticipate. Market acceptance of any of our product candidates by physicians, patients, third-party payers and the medical community depends on, among other things:

- our ability to provide acceptable evidence of safety and efficacy, at least equivalent to IV-level treatments;
- perceived advantages of our product candidates over alternative treatments, such as oral and IV formulations;
- relative convenience as well as ease of administration of our product candidates compared to existing treatments;
- any labeling restrictions placed upon each product candidate in connection with its approval;
- the prevalence and severity of the adverse side effects of each of our product candidates;
- the clinical indications for which each of our product candidates is approved, including any potential additional restrictions placed upon each product candidate in connection with its approval;
- prevalence of the disease or condition for which each product candidate is approved;
- the cost of treatment in relation to alternative treatments, including generic products;
- the extent to which each product is approved for use at, or included on formularies of, hospitals and managed care organizations;
- any negative publicity related to our or our competitors' products or other formulations of products that we administer subcutaneously, including as a result of any related adverse side effects;
- the effectiveness of our or any current or future collaborators' sales, marketing and distribution strategies;
- pricing and cost effectiveness; and
- the availability of coverage and adequate reimbursement by third parties.

Additionally, if Furoscix or any of our other product candidates receives marketing approval and we or others later identify undesirable or unacceptable side effects caused by such products, a number of potentially significant negative consequences could result, including:

- regulatory authorities may withdraw approvals of such products, require us to take our approved product off the market or ask us to voluntarily remove the product from the market;
- regulatory authorities may require the addition of labeling statements, specific warnings, a contraindication or field alerts to physicians and pharmacies;
- regulatory authorities may impose conditions under a risk evaluation and mitigation strategy, or REMS, including distribution of a medication guide to patients outlining the risks of such side effects or imposing distribution or use restrictions;
- we may be required to change the way the product is administered, conduct additional clinical trials or change the labeling of the product;
- we may be subject to limitations on how we may promote the product;
- sales of the product may decrease significantly;
- we may be subject to litigation or product liability claims; and
- our reputation may suffer.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Any of these events could prevent us, our collaborators or our potential future partners from achieving or maintaining market acceptance of the affected product or could substantially increase commercialization costs and expenses, which in turn could delay or prevent us from generating significant revenue from the sale of our products.

Successful commercialization will also depend on whether we can adequately protect against and effectively respond to any claims by holders of patents and other intellectual property rights that our products infringe upon their rights, whether any unanticipated adverse effects or unfavorable publicity develops in respect of our products, as well as the emergence of new or existing products as competition, which may be proven to be more clinically effective and cost-effective.

***If we are unable to establish sales and marketing capabilities or enter into agreements with third parties to market and sell our lead product candidate, Furoscix, if approved, we may be unable to generate any revenue.***

We do not have sufficient infrastructure for the sales, marketing or distribution of our product candidates, and the cost of establishing and maintaining such an organization may exceed the benefits of doing so. In order to market Furoscix, if approved by the FDA, we must build our sales, marketing, managerial, and other non-technical capabilities or make arrangements with third parties to perform these services.

We intend to establish a sales force to promote Furoscix to hospital networks, healthcare providers and third-party payers in the United States, if we obtain FDA approval. There are significant expenses and risks involved with establishing our own sales and marketing capabilities, including our ability to hire, retain and appropriately incentivize qualified individuals, generate sufficient sales leads, provide adequate training to sales and marketing personnel, and effectively manage a geographically dispersed sales and marketing team. Any failure or delay in the development of our internal sales, marketing and distribution capabilities could delay any product launch, which would adversely impact the commercialization of Furoscix. For example, if we recruit any sales representatives or establish marketing capabilities prior to the commercial launch of Furoscix and the commercial launch is delayed or does not occur for any reason, we would have prematurely or unnecessarily incurred these commercialization expenses. This may be costly, and our investment would be lost if we cannot retain or reposition our sales and marketing personnel.

We cannot be sure that we will be able to hire a sufficient number of sales representatives or that they will be effective at promoting Furoscix. In addition, we will need to commit significant additional management and other resources to establish and grow our sales organization. We may not be able to achieve the necessary development and growth in a cost-effective manner or realize a positive return on our investment. We will also have to compete with other companies to recruit, hire, train and retain sales and marketing personnel.

Factors that may inhibit our efforts to commercialize our product candidates on our own include:

- our inability to recruit, train and retain adequate numbers of effective sales and marketing personnel;
- the inability of sales personnel to obtain access to physicians or attain adequate numbers of physicians to prescribe any drugs; and
- unforeseen costs and expenses associated with creating an independent sales and marketing organization.

If we are unable to establish adequate sales, marketing and distribution capabilities, whether independently or with third parties, our business, results of operations, financial condition and prospects will be materially adversely impacted.

Beyond Furoscix, we intend to leverage the sales and marketing capabilities that we establish for Furoscix to commercialize additional product candidates for the treatment of cardiovascular and infectious diseases, if approved by the FDA, in the United States. If we are unable to do so for any reason, we would need to expend additional resources to establish commercialization capabilities for those product candidates, if approved.

In addition, we intend to establish collaborations to commercialize our product candidates, if approved by the relevant regulatory authorities, outside of the United States. Therefore, our future success will depend, in part, on our ability to enter into and maintain collaborative relationships for such efforts, the collaborator's strategic interest in the product and such collaborator's ability to successfully market and sell the product. We cannot assure you that we will be able to establish or maintain such collaborative arrangements, or if able to do so, that they will have effective sales forces. To the extent that we depend on third parties for marketing and distribution, any revenues we receive will depend upon the efforts of such third parties, and there can be no assurance that such efforts will be successful.

## [Table of Contents](#)

***If we fail to produce Furoscix in the volumes that we require on a timely basis, we may face delays in our commercialization efforts, if it is approved.***

We do not currently own or operate manufacturing facilities for the production of any of our product candidates, including Furoscix. We currently depend on third parties to manufacture our product candidates, including the drug formulation and device components for Furoscix, and expect to continue to rely on such third parties to produce the final commercial product, if approved. Any future curtailment in the availability of materials could result in production or other delays with consequent adverse effects on us. In addition, because regulatory authorities must generally approve raw material sources for pharmaceutical products, changes in raw material suppliers may result in production delays or higher raw material costs.

The manufacture of pharmaceutical products requires significant expertise and capital investment, including the development of advanced manufacturing techniques and process controls. Pharmaceutical companies often encounter difficulties in production, particularly in scaling up production, of their products. These problems include manufacturing difficulties relating to production costs and yields, quality control, including stability of the product and quality assurance testing, shortages of qualified personnel, as well as compliance with federal, state and foreign regulations. If we are unable to demonstrate stability in accordance with commercial requirements, or if our manufacturers were to encounter difficulties or otherwise fail to comply with their obligations to us, our ability to obtain FDA approval and market our product candidates would be jeopardized. In addition, any delay or interruption in the supply of clinical trial supplies could delay or prohibit the completion of our bioequivalence and/or clinical trials, increase the costs associated with conducting our bioequivalence and/or clinical trials and, depending upon the period of delay, require us to commence new trials at significant additional expense or to terminate a trial.

Manufacturers of combination products need to comply with both pharmaceutical current good manufacturing practice requirements, or cGMPs, and medical device Quality System Regulations, or QSRs, enforced by the FDA through its facilities inspection programs. These requirements include, among other things, quality control, quality assurance and the maintenance of records and documentation. Manufacturers of our product candidates may be unable to comply with these cGMP and QSR requirements and with other FDA and foreign regulatory requirements. A failure to comply with these requirements may result in fines and civil penalties, suspension of production, suspension or delay in product approval, product seizure or recall, or withdrawal of product approval. If the safety of any of our product candidates is compromised due to failure to adhere to applicable laws or for other reasons, we may not be able to successfully commercialize such product candidate, and we may be held liable for any injuries sustained as a result. Any of these factors could cause a delay in the commercialization of our product candidates, entail higher costs or even prevent us from effectively commercializing our product candidates.

***Even if we successfully obtain approval for, produce and distribute Furoscix, its success will be dependent on the proper use of Furoscix by patients, healthcare professionals and caregivers.***

While we have designed Furoscix to be operable by patients, caregivers and healthcare practitioners in a home environment after limited training, we cannot control the successful use of the product by patients, caregivers and healthcare professionals. We make use of packaging, instructions for use, quick reference guide and training video components to provide guidance to users of Furoscix, but we cannot ensure that the product will be used properly.

For example, in our Phase 3 PDCV study, there were four cases in which the Furoscix administered doses fell below the predefined criteria. One case was determined to be a dispensing failure, and the remaining three cases were determined to be caused by an undetected incomplete filling of the sc2Wear Infusor, likely due to user errors. As a result, the study did not meet its specified primary endpoints. We cannot ensure that improvements made to our quick reference guide and instructions for use will improve the ability of patients, healthcare professionals and caregivers to administer treatment using our device, if the product is approved. If we are not successful in promoting the proper use of Furoscix, if approved, by patients, healthcare professionals and caregivers, we may not be able to achieve market acceptance or effectively commercialize Furoscix.

***Even in the event of proper use of Furoscix by patients, healthcare professionals and caregivers, individual devices may fail.***

We have increased manufacturing capabilities for production of Furoscix, but increasing scale of production inherently creates increased risk of manufacturing errors. We may not be able to adequately inspect every device that is produced, and it is possible that individual devices may fail to perform as designed. Manufacturing errors could

## [Table of Contents](#)

negatively impact market acceptance of Furoscix, result in negative press coverage, or increase the risk that we may be sued.

### ***Product liability lawsuits could divert our resources, result in substantial liabilities and reduce the commercial potential of our product candidates.***

The risk that we may be sued on product liability claims is inherent in the development drug formulation and device products. We face a risk of product liability exposure related to the testing of our current and future product candidates in clinical trials and will face even greater risks upon any commercialization by us of our product candidates. Product liability claims might be brought against us by consumers, healthcare providers or others coming into contact with our product candidates. These lawsuits may divert our management from pursuing our business strategy and may be costly to defend. In addition, if we are held liable in any of these lawsuits, we may incur substantial liabilities and may be forced to limit or forego further commercialization of one or more of our products which could adversely affect our stock price and our operations.

### ***Even if we obtain FDA approval for Furoscix in the United States, we may never obtain approval for or commercialize it in any other jurisdiction, which would limit our ability to realize its full market potential.***

In order to market products in any particular jurisdiction, we must establish and comply with numerous and varying regulatory requirements on a country-by-country basis regarding safety and efficacy. Approval by the FDA in the United States does not ensure approval by regulatory authorities in other countries or jurisdictions. In addition, the clinical standards of care may differ significantly such that clinical trials conducted in one country may not be accepted by healthcare providers, third-party payers or regulatory authorities in other countries, and regulatory approval in one country does not guarantee regulatory approval in any other country. Approval processes vary among countries and can involve additional drug testing and validation and additional administrative review periods. Seeking foreign regulatory approval could result in difficulties and costs for us and require additional preclinical studies or clinical trials which could be costly and time consuming. Regulatory requirements can vary widely from country to country and could delay or prevent the introduction of our products in those countries. We do not have any product candidates approved for sale in any jurisdiction, including in international markets, and we do not have experience in obtaining regulatory approval in international markets. If we fail to comply with regulatory requirements in international markets or to obtain and maintain required approvals, or if regulatory approvals in international markets are delayed, our target market will be reduced and our ability to realize the full market potential of any drug we develop will be unrealized.

### ***If we are unable to achieve and maintain coverage and adequate levels of reimbursement for our product or product candidates, if approved, their commercial success may be severely hindered.***

Successful sales of Furoscix and any other product candidates that receive regulatory approval depend on the availability of adequate coverage and reimbursement from third-party payers. Patients who are prescribed medications for the treatment of their conditions generally rely on third-party payers to reimburse all or part of the costs associated with their prescription drugs. Adequate coverage and reimbursement from governmental healthcare programs, such as Medicare and Medicaid, and commercial payers is critical to new product acceptance. Coverage decisions may depend upon clinical and economic standards that disfavor new products when more established or lower cost therapeutic alternatives are already available or subsequently become available. Assuming we obtain coverage for a given product, the resulting reimbursement payment rates might not be adequate or may require co-payments that patients find unacceptably high. Patients are unlikely to use our products unless coverage is provided and reimbursement is adequate to cover a significant portion of the cost of our products.

In addition, the market for Furoscix and any other product candidates that we attempt to commercialize will depend significantly on access to third-party payers' drug formularies, or lists of medications for which third-party payers provide coverage and reimbursement. The industry competition to be included in such formularies often leads to downward pricing pressures on pharmaceutical companies. Also, third-party payers may refuse to include a particular branded drug in their formularies or otherwise restrict patient access through formulary controls or otherwise to a branded drug when a less costly generic equivalent or other alternative is available.

Third-party payers, whether foreign or domestic, or governmental or commercial, are developing increasingly sophisticated methods of controlling healthcare costs. In addition, in the United States, no uniform policy requirement for coverage and reimbursement for products exists among third-party payers. Therefore, coverage and

## [Table of Contents](#)

reimbursement for products can differ significantly from payer to payer. As a result, the coverage determination process is often a time-consuming and costly process that will require us to provide scientific and clinical support for the use of our products to each payer separately, with no assurance that coverage and adequate reimbursement will be applied consistently or obtained in the first instance.

Further, we believe that future coverage and reimbursement will likely be subject to increased restrictions both in the United States and in international markets. Third-party coverage and reimbursement for our product candidates for which we may receive regulatory approval may not be available or adequate in either the United States or international markets, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations, financial condition and prospects.

***We face substantial competition, which may result in others discovering, developing or commercializing drugs before or more successfully than we do, or limit the market potential of our product candidates, if approved.***

We face and will continue to face competition from other companies in the pharmaceuticals and medical device industries. We believe our technology and approach of developing proprietary formulations of medicines to be delivered subcutaneously using our sc2Wear Infusor will compete with the efforts of other companies seeking to develop similar therapies. These and other pharmaceutical companies are applying significant resources and expertise to the challenges of drug delivery. Some of these current and potential future competitors may be addressing the same therapeutic areas or indications as we are. Many of our current and potential future competitors have significantly greater research and development capabilities than we do, have substantially more marketing, manufacturing, financial, technical, human and managerial resources than we do, and have more institutional experience than we do.

As a result of these factors, our competitors may obtain regulatory approval of their products more rapidly than we are able to or may obtain patent protection or other intellectual property rights that allow them to develop and commercialize their products before us and limit our ability to develop or commercialize our product candidates. Our competitors may also develop drugs or devices that are more effective, more widely used and less costly than ours, and they may also be more successful than us in manufacturing and marketing their products.

We submitted the Furoscix NDA to the FDA for approval under 505(b)(2) of the FDCA. If the FDA approves a competitor's application for a product candidate or drug-device combination product before our application for a similar product candidate or drug-device combination product, and grants such competitor a period of exclusivity, the FDA may take the position that it cannot approve our 505(b)(2) application for a similar product candidate until the exclusivity period expires. Additionally, even if our 505(b)(2) application for Furoscix is approved first, we may still be subject to competition from other producers of heart failure and infectious disease therapies with approved products or approved 505(b)(2) NDAs for different conditions of use that would not be restricted by any grant of exclusivity to us.

The widespread acceptance of currently available therapies with which our product candidates will compete may limit market acceptance of our product candidates even if commercialized. Oral medication and IV drug delivery are currently available treatments for heart failure and are widely accepted in the medical community and have a long history of use. For example, the use of IV furosemide to treat decompensation in heart failure patients is well-established and has received widespread market acceptance. These treatments will compete with our Furoscix product candidate, if approved, and the established use of IV furosemide may limit the potential for Furoscix to receive widespread acceptance if commercialized.

### **Risks Related to the Ongoing Legal Requirements to Which Our Product Candidates are Subject**

***If the FDA or other applicable regulatory authorities approve generic products that compete with any of our product candidates, the sales of our product candidates, if approved, could be adversely affected.***

Once an NDA, including a Section 505(b)(2) application, is approved, the product covered becomes a "listed drug" which can be cited by potential competitors in support of approval of an abbreviated new drug application, or ANDA. FDA regulations and other applicable regulations and policies provide incentives to manufacturers to create modified versions of a drug to facilitate the approval of an ANDA or other application for similar substitutes. If these manufacturers demonstrate that their product has the same active ingredient(s), dosage form, strength, route of

## [Table of Contents](#)

administration, and conditions of use, or labeling, as our product candidate, they might only be required to conduct a relatively inexpensive study to show that their generic product is absorbed in the body at the same rate and to the same extent as, or is bioequivalent to, our product candidate (and in some cases even this limited bioequivalence testing can be waived by the FDA). Competition from generic equivalents to our product candidates could substantially limit our ability to generate revenues and therefore to obtain a return on the investments we have made in our product candidates.

***An NDA submitted under 505(b)(2) may subject us to a patent infringement lawsuit that would delay or prevent the review or approval of Furoscix.***

Our NDA for Furoscix has been submitted to the FDA for approval under 505(b)(2) of the FDCA. Section 505(b)(2) permits the submission of an NDA where at least some of the information required for approval comes from preclinical studies and/or clinical trials that were not conducted by, or for, the applicant and for which the applicant has not obtained a right of reference. An NDA under 505(b)(2) would enable us to reference published literature and/or the FDA's previous findings of safety and effectiveness for a previously approved drug.

For NDAs submitted under section 505(b)(2), the patent certification and related provisions of the Hatch-Waxman Act apply. Accordingly, if we rely for approval on the safety or effectiveness information for a previously approved drug, referred to as a listed drug, we will be required to include patent certifications in our 505(b)(2) application regarding any patents covering the listed drug. If there are patents listed in the FDA publication Approved Drug Products with Therapeutic Equivalence Evaluations, commonly known as the Orange Book, for the listed drug, and we seek to obtain approval prior to the expiration of one or more of those patents, we will be required to submit a Paragraph IV certification indicating our belief that the relevant patents are invalid, unenforceable or will not be infringed by the manufacture, use or sale of the product that is the subject of our 505(b)(2) application. Otherwise, our 505(b)(2) application cannot be approved by the FDA until the expiration of any patents listed in the Orange Book for the listed drug. In connection with our NDA for Furoscix that we submitted to the FDA in August 2017, we certified that there were no unexpired patents for furosemide contained in the Orange Book.

If we submit a Paragraph IV certification, we will be required to provide notice of that certification to the NDA holder and patent owner shortly after our 505(b)(2) application is accepted for filing. Under the Hatch-Waxman Act, the patent owner may file a patent infringement lawsuit after receiving such notice. If a patent infringement lawsuit is filed within 45 days of the patent owner's or NDA holder's receipt of notice (whichever is later), a one-time, automatic stay of the FDA's ability to approve the 505(b)(2) NDA is triggered, which typically extends for 30 months unless patent litigation is resolved in favor of the Paragraph IV filer or the patent expires before that time. Accordingly, we may invest a significant amount of time and expense in the development of one or more product candidates only to be subject to significant delay and patent litigation before such product candidates may be commercialized, if at all.

In addition, a 505(b)(2) application will not be approved until any non-patent exclusivity listed in the Orange Book for the listed drug, or for any other drug with the same, protected conditions of approval as our product, has expired. The FDA also may require us to perform one or more additional clinical trials or measurements to support the change from the listed drug, which could be time consuming and could substantially delay our achievement of regulatory approval. The FDA also may reject any future 505(b)(2) submissions and require us to submit traditional NDAs under 505(b)(1), which would require extensive data to establish safety and effectiveness of the product for the proposed use and could cause delay and additional costs. Or the FDA could reject any future 505(b)(2) application and require us to submit an ANDA if, before the submission of our 505(b)(2) application, the FDA approves an application for a product that is pharmaceutically equivalent to ours. These factors, among others, may limit our ability to commercialize our product candidates successfully.

***If we fail to comply with environmental, health and safety laws and regulations, we could become subject to fines or penalties or incur costs that could have a material adverse effect on our business.***

We are subject to numerous environmental, health and safety laws and regulations, including those governing laboratory procedures and the handling, use, storage, treatment and disposal of hazardous materials and wastes. From time to time and in the future, our operations may involve the use of hazardous and flammable materials, including chemicals and biological materials, and may also produce hazardous waste products. Even if we contract with third parties for the disposal of these materials and waste products, we cannot completely eliminate the risk of

## [Table of Contents](#)

contamination or injury resulting from these materials. In the event of contamination or injury resulting from the use or disposal of our hazardous materials, we could be held liable for any resulting damages, and any liability could exceed our resources. We also could incur significant costs associated with civil or criminal fines and penalties for failure to comply with such laws and regulations.

We maintain workers' compensation insurance to cover us for costs and expenses we may incur due to injuries to our employees resulting from the use of hazardous materials, but this insurance may not provide adequate coverage against potential liabilities. However, we do not maintain insurance for environmental liability or toxic tort claims that may be asserted against us.

In addition, we may incur substantial costs in order to comply with current or future environmental, health and safety laws and regulations. Current or future environmental laws and regulations may impair our research, development or production efforts. In addition, failure to comply with these laws and regulations may result in substantial fines, penalties or other sanctions.

***We will need to obtain FDA approval of any proposed product names, and any failure or delay associated with such approval may adversely impact our business.***

Any name we intend to use for our product candidates will require approval from the FDA regardless of whether we have secured a trademark registration from the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, or USPTO. The FDA typically conducts a review of proposed product names, including an evaluation of potential for confusion with other product names. The FDA may object to any product name we submit if it believes the name inappropriately implies medical claims. If the FDA objects to any of our proposed product names, we may be required to adopt an alternative name for our product candidates. If we adopt an alternative name, we would lose the benefit of any existing trademark applications for such product candidate, and may be required to expend significant additional resources in an effort to identify a suitable product name that would qualify under applicable trademark laws, not infringe the existing rights of third parties and be acceptable to the FDA. We may be unable to build a successful brand identity for a new trademark in a timely manner or at all, which would limit our ability to commercialize our product candidates.

***Laws and regulations governing any international operations we may have in the future may preclude us from developing, manufacturing and selling certain products outside of the United States and require us to develop and implement costly compliance programs.***

If we expand our operations outside of the United States, we must dedicate additional resources to comply with numerous laws and regulations in each jurisdiction in which we plan to operate. The Foreign Corrupt Practices Act, or FCPA, prohibits any U.S. individual or business from paying, offering, authorizing payment or offering of anything of value, directly or indirectly, to any foreign official, political party or candidate for the purpose of influencing any act or decision of the foreign entity in order to assist the individual or business in obtaining or retaining business. The FCPA also obligates companies whose securities are listed in the United States to comply with certain accounting provisions requiring the company to maintain books and records that accurately and fairly reflect all transactions of the corporation, including international subsidiaries, and to devise and maintain an adequate system of internal accounting controls for international operations.

Compliance with the FCPA is expensive and difficult, particularly in countries in which corruption is a recognized problem. In addition, the FCPA presents particular challenges in the pharmaceutical industry, because, in many countries, hospitals are operated by the government, and doctors and other hospital employees are considered foreign officials. Certain payments to hospitals in connection with clinical trials and other work have been deemed to be improper payments to government officials and have led to FCPA enforcement actions.

Various laws, regulations and executive orders also restrict the use and dissemination outside of the United States, or the sharing with certain non-U.S. nationals, of information classified for national security purposes, as well as certain products and technical data relating to those products. If we expand our presence outside of the United States, it will require us to dedicate additional resources to comply with these laws, and these laws may preclude us from developing, manufacturing, or selling certain products and product candidates outside of the United States, which could limit our growth potential and increase our development costs.

The failure to comply with laws governing international business practices may result in substantial civil and criminal penalties and suspension or debarment from government contracting. The Securities and Exchange Commission, or

## [Table of Contents](#)

SEC, also may suspend or bar issuers from trading securities on U.S. exchanges for violations of the FCPA's accounting provisions

***Governments outside the United States tend to impose strict price controls, which may adversely affect our revenues, if any.***

In some countries, such as the countries of the European Union, the pricing of prescription pharmaceuticals is subject to governmental control. In these countries, pricing negotiations with governmental authorities can take considerable time after the receipt of marketing approval for a product. In addition, there can be considerable pressure by governments and other stakeholders on prices and reimbursement levels, including as part of cost containment measures. Political, economic and regulatory developments may further complicate pricing negotiations, and pricing negotiations may continue after coverage and reimbursement have been obtained. Reference pricing used by various countries and parallel distribution or arbitrage between low-priced and high-priced countries, can further reduce prices. To obtain reimbursement or pricing approval in some countries, we, or any future collaborators, may be required to conduct a clinical trial that compares the cost-effectiveness of our product candidates to other available therapies, which is time-consuming and costly. If reimbursement of our product candidates is unavailable or limited in scope or amount, or if pricing is set at unsatisfactory levels, our business could be harmed.

***Any of our product candidates for which we obtain marketing approval in the future will be subject to ongoing requirements and continued regulatory review, could be subject to post-marketing restrictions or withdrawal from the market, and we may be subject to substantial penalties if we fail to comply with regulatory requirements or if we experience unanticipated problems with our products following approval.***

Any of our product candidates for which we, or any future collaborators, obtain marketing approval, as well as the manufacturing processes, post-approval studies and measures, labeling, advertising and promotional activities for such product, among other things, will be subject to ongoing requirements of and review by the FDA, the European Medicines Agency, or EMA, and other regulatory authorities. These requirements include submissions of safety and other post-marketing information and reports, registration and listing requirements, requirements relating to manufacturing, quality control, quality assurance and corresponding maintenance of records and documents, requirements regarding the distribution of samples to physicians and recordkeeping. Even if marketing approval of a product candidates is granted, the approval may be subject to limitations on the indicated uses for which the product may be marketed or to the conditions of approval, including the requirement to implement a Risk Evaluation and Mitigation Strategy.

The FDA or the EMA may also impose requirements for costly post-marketing studies or clinical trials and surveillance to monitor the safety or efficacy of a product. The FDA and other agencies, including the Department of Justice, closely regulate and monitor the post-approval marketing and promotion of products to ensure that they are manufactured, marketed and distributed only for the approved indications and in accordance with the provisions of the approved labeling. The FDA imposes stringent restrictions on manufacturers' communications regarding off-label use and if we, or any future collaborators, do not market any of our product for which we, or they, receive marketing approval for only their approved indications, we, or they, may be subject to warnings or enforcement action for off-label marketing. Violation of the FDCA and other statutes, including the False Claims Act, relating to the promotion and advertising of prescription drugs may lead to investigations or allegations of violations of federal and state healthcare fraud and abuse laws and state consumer protection laws.

In addition, later discovery of previously unknown adverse events or other problems with our products or their manufacturers or manufacturing processes, or failure to comply with regulatory requirements, may yield various results, including:

- restrictions on the marketing or manufacturing of such products;
- restrictions on the labeling or marketing of a product;
- restrictions on product distribution or use;
- requirements to conduct post-marketing studies or clinical trials;
- warning letters or untitled letters;
- withdrawal of the products from the market;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- refusal to approve pending applications or supplements to approved applications that we submit;
- recall of products;
- restrictions on coverage by third-party payers;
- fines, restitution or disgorgement of profits or revenues;
- suspension or withdrawal of marketing approvals;
- refusal to permit the import or export of products;
- product seizure; or
- injunctions or the imposition of civil or criminal penalties.

### ***Recently enacted and future legislation may increase the difficulty and cost for us to obtain marketing approval of and commercialize Furoscix and affect the prices we may obtain.***

In the United States and some foreign jurisdictions, there have been a number of legislative and regulatory changes and proposed changes regarding the healthcare system that could prevent or delay marketing approval of Furoscix, restrict or regulate post-approval activities and affect our ability to profitably sell any product candidates for which we obtain marketing approval.

Among policy makers and payers in the United States and elsewhere, there is significant interest in promoting changes in healthcare systems with the stated goals of containing healthcare costs, improving quality and/or expanding access. In the United States, the pharmaceutical industry has been a particular focus of these efforts and has been significantly affected by major legislative initiatives. In March 2010, President Obama signed into law the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, as amended by the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act of 2010, collectively referred to as the Affordable Care Act, a sweeping law intended to broaden access to health insurance, reduce or constrain the growth of healthcare spending, enhance remedies against fraud and abuse, add new transparency requirements for the healthcare and health insurance industries, impose new taxes and fees on the health industry and impose additional health policy reforms.

Among the provisions of the Affordable Care Act of importance to our product candidates are the following:

- an annual, nondeductible fee on any entity that manufactures or imports certain branded prescription drugs and biologic agents, apportioned among these entities according to their market share in certain government healthcare programs;
- a new methodology by which rebates owed by manufacturers under the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program are calculated for drugs that are inhaled, infused, instilled, implanted or injected;
- an increase in the statutory minimum rebates a manufacturer must pay under the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program to 23.1% and 13.0% of the average manufacturer price for branded and generic drugs, respectively;
- expansion of healthcare fraud and abuse laws, including the False Claims Act and the Anti-Kickback Statute, which include, among other things, new government investigative powers and enhanced penalties for non-compliance;
- a new Medicare Part D coverage gap discount program, in which manufacturers must agree to offer 50% point-of-sale discounts off negotiated prices of applicable brand drugs to eligible beneficiaries during their coverage gap period, as a condition for the manufacturer's outpatient drugs to be covered under Medicare Part D;
- extension of manufacturers' Medicaid rebate liability to covered drugs dispensed to individuals who are enrolled in Medicaid managed care organizations;
- expansion of eligibility criteria for Medicaid programs by, among other things, allowing states to offer Medicaid coverage to additional individuals, thereby potentially increasing manufacturers' Medicaid rebate liability;
- expansion of the entities eligible for discounts under the Public Health Service pharmaceutical pricing program;
- the requirements under the federal open payments program and its implementing regulations;
- a requirement to annually report drug samples that manufacturers and distributors provide to physicians; and

## [Table of Contents](#)

- a new Patient-Centered Outcomes Research Institute to oversee, identify priorities in, and conduct comparative clinical effectiveness research, along with funding for such research.

Since its enactment, there have been judicial and Congressional challenges to certain aspects of the Affordable Care Act. As a result, there have been delays in the implementation of, and action taken to repeal or replace, certain aspects of the Affordable Care Act. In January 2017, President Trump signed an Executive Order directing federal agencies with authorities and responsibilities under the Affordable Care Act to waive, defer, grant exemptions from, or delay the implementation of any provision of the Affordable Care Act that would impose a fiscal or regulatory burden on states, individuals, healthcare providers, health insurers, or manufacturers of pharmaceuticals or medical devices. Further, in May 2017, following the passage of the budget resolution for fiscal year 2017, the U.S. House of Representatives passed legislation known as the American Health Care Act, which, if enacted, would amend or repeal significant portions of the Affordable Care Act. Senate Republicans formed their own revised form of the American Health Care Act called the Better Care Reconciliation Act. In July 2017, the Senate Republicans introduced a stripped down version of the Better Care Reconciliation Act. Each of these measures was rejected by the full Senate. Congress will likely consider other legislation to replace elements of the Affordable Care Act. We continue to evaluate the effect that the Affordable Care Act and its possible repeal and replacement has on our business.

In addition, other legislative changes have been proposed and adopted since the Affordable Care Act was enacted. These changes included aggregate reductions to Medicare payments to providers of 2% per fiscal year through 2025. In January 2013, President Obama signed into law the American Taxpayer Relief Act of 2012, which, among other things, further reduced Medicare payments to several providers, and increased the statute of limitations period for the government to recover overpayments to providers from three to five years.

We expect that the Affordable Care Act, as well as other healthcare reform measures that may be adopted in the future, may result in additional reductions in Medicare and other healthcare funding, more rigorous coverage criteria, new payment methodologies and in additional downward pressure on the price that we receive for any approved product. Any reduction in reimbursement from Medicare or other government programs may result in a similar reduction in payments from private payers. The implementation of cost containment measures or other healthcare reforms may prevent us from being able to generate revenue, attain profitability, or commercialize our products.

Legislative and regulatory proposals have been made to expand post-approval requirements and restrict sales and promotional activities for approved products. In addition, there have been several recent Congressional inquiries and proposed bills designed to, among other things, bring more transparency to drug pricing, review the relationship between pricing and manufacturer patient programs, reduce the cost of drugs under Medicare and reform government program reimbursement methodologies for drugs. We cannot be sure whether additional legislative changes will be enacted, or whether the FDA regulations, guidance or interpretations will be changed, or what the impact of such changes on the marketing approvals of Furoscix, if any, may be. In addition, increased scrutiny by the U.S. Congress of the FDA's approval process may significantly delay or prevent marketing approval, as well as subject us to more stringent labeling and post-marketing testing and other requirements.

We cannot predict the likelihood, nature or extent of government regulation that may arise from future legislation or administrative or executive action, either in the United States or abroad. For example, certain policies of the Trump administration may impact our business and industry. Namely, the Trump administration has taken several executive actions, including the issuance of a number of Executive Orders, that could impose significant burdens on, or otherwise materially delay, the FDA's ability to engage in routine regulatory and oversight activities such as implementing statutes through rulemaking, issuance of guidance, and review and approval of marketing applications. Notably, on January 30, 2017, President Trump issued an Executive Order, applicable to all executive agencies, including the FDA, that requires that for each notice of proposed rulemaking or final regulation to be issued in fiscal year 2017, the agency shall identify at least two existing regulations to be repealed, unless prohibited by law. These requirements are referred to as the "two-for-one" provisions. This Executive Order includes a budget neutrality provision that requires the total incremental cost of all new regulations in the 2017 fiscal year, including repealed regulations, to be no greater than zero, except in limited circumstances. For fiscal years 2018 and beyond, the Executive Order requires agencies to identify regulations to offset any incremental cost of a new regulation and approximate the total costs or savings associated with each new regulation or repealed regulation. In interim

guidance issued by the Office of Information and Regulatory Affairs within the Office of Management and Budget on February 2, 2017, the administration indicates that the “two-for-one” provisions may apply not only to agency regulations, but also to significant agency guidance documents. Further, on February 24, 2017, President Trump issued an Executive Order requiring each agency to designate a regulatory reform officer and create a regulatory reform task force to evaluate existing regulations and make recommendations regarding their repeal, replacement, or modification. It is difficult to predict how these requirements will be implemented, and the extent to which they will impact the FDA’s ability to exercise its regulatory authority. If these executive actions impose constraints on the FDA’s ability to engage in oversight and implementation activities in the normal course, our business may be negatively impacted.

***Our relationships with customers and payers will be subject to applicable anti-kickback, fraud and abuse, transparency, and other healthcare laws and regulations, which could expose us to criminal sanctions, civil penalties, contractual damages, reputational harm, administrative burdens, and diminished profits and future earnings.***

Healthcare providers, physicians and third-party payers will play a primary role in the recommendation and prescription of any products for which we obtain marketing approval. Our future arrangements with investigators, healthcare professionals, consultants, third-party payers and customers, if any, will subject us to broadly applicable fraud and abuse and other healthcare laws and regulations. These laws and regulations may constrain the business or financial arrangements and relationships through which we conduct our operations, including how we research, market, sell and distribute any products for which we obtain marketing approval. These include the following:

- ***Anti-Kickback Statute.*** The federal Anti-Kickback Statute prohibits, among other things, persons and entities from knowingly and willfully soliciting, offering, receiving or providing remuneration, directly or indirectly, in cash or in kind, to induce or reward, or in return for, either the referral of an individual for, or the purchase, order or recommendation or arranging of, any good or service, for which payment may be made under a federal healthcare program such as Medicare and Medicaid. This statute has been interpreted to apply to arrangements between pharmaceutical manufacturers on the one hand and prescribers, purchasers and formulary managers on the other. Although there are several statutory exceptions and regulatory safe harbors protecting certain common activities from prosecution, they are drawn narrowly, and practices that involve remuneration intended to induce prescribing, purchasing or recommending may be subject to scrutiny if they do not qualify for an exception or safe harbor. A person or entity can be found guilty of violating the federal Anti-Kickback Statute without actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it. In addition, the government may assert that a claim including items or services resulting from a violation of the federal Anti-Kickback Statute constitutes a false or fraudulent claim for purposes of the federal False Claims Act or federal civil money penalties statute.
- ***False Claims Laws.*** The federal false claims and civil monetary penalties laws, including the federal civil False Claims Act, impose criminal and civil penalties, including through civil whistleblower or qui tam actions, against individuals or entities for, among other things, knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented false or fraudulent claims for payment by a federal healthcare program or making a false statement or record material to payment of a false claim or avoiding, decreasing or concealing an obligation to pay money to the federal government, with potential liability including mandatory treble damages and significant per-claim penalties.
- ***Anti-Inducement Law.*** The anti-inducement law prohibits, among other things, the offering or giving of remuneration, which includes, without limitation, any transfer of items or services for free or for less than fair market value (with limited exceptions), to a Medicare or Medicaid beneficiary that the person knows or should know is likely to influence the beneficiary’s selection of a particular supplier of items or services reimbursable by a federal or state governmental program.
- ***HIPAA.*** The federal Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, or HIPAA, imposes criminal and civil liability for, among other things, knowingly and willfully executing, or attempting to execute, a scheme to defraud any healthcare benefit program or making false or fraudulent statements relating to healthcare matters. Similar to the federal Anti-Kickback Statute, a person or entity does not need to have actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it in order to have committed a violation. Additionally, HIPAA, as amended by the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act and its implementing regulations, also imposes obligations on covered entities and their business associates, including mandatory contractual terms and technical safeguards, with respect to maintaining the privacy, security and transmission of individually identifiable health information.

## Table of Contents

- *Transparency Requirements.* The federal Physician Payments Sunshine Act requires certain manufacturers of drugs, devices, biologics, and medical supplies for which payment is available under Medicare, Medicaid, or the Children's Health Insurance Program, with specific exceptions, to report annually to the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services, or CMS, information related to payments or transfers of value made to physicians (defined to include doctors, dentists, optometrists, podiatrists and chiropractors) and teaching hospitals, as well as information regarding ownership and investment interests held by the physicians described above and their immediate family members.
- *Analogous State and Foreign Laws.* Analogous state and foreign fraud and abuse laws and regulations, such as state anti-kickback and false claims laws, can apply to our business practices, including but not limited to, research, distribution, sales and marketing arrangements, and claims involving healthcare items or services reimbursed by non-governmental third-party payers, and are generally broad and are enforced by many different federal and state agencies as well as through private actions. Some state laws require pharmaceutical companies to comply with the pharmaceutical industry's voluntary compliance guidelines and the relevant compliance guidance promulgated by the federal government, or otherwise restrict payments that may be made to healthcare providers and other potential referral sources; and state laws that require drug manufacturers to report information related to payments and other transfers of value to physicians and other healthcare providers or marketing expenditures and pricing information. State and foreign laws also govern the privacy and security of health information in some circumstances, many of which differ from each other in significant ways and often are not pre-empted by HIPAA, thus complicating compliance efforts.

Efforts to ensure that our business arrangements with third parties, and our business generally, will comply with applicable healthcare laws and regulations will involve substantial costs. It is possible that governmental authorities will conclude that our business practices, including our arrangements with physicians and other healthcare providers, some of whom receive stock options as compensation for services provided, may not comply with current or future statutes, regulations, agency guidance or case law involving applicable fraud and abuse or other healthcare laws and regulations. If our operations are found to be in violation of any of these laws or any other governmental regulations that may apply to us, we may be subject to significant civil, criminal and administrative penalties, damages, fines, imprisonment, exclusion of products from government funded healthcare programs, such as Medicare and Medicaid, disgorgement, contractual damages, reputational harm, and the curtailment or restructuring of our operations. Defending against any such actions can be costly, time-consuming and may require significant financial and personnel resources. Therefore, even if we are successful in defending against any such actions that may be brought against us, our business may be impaired. Further, if any of the physicians or other healthcare providers or entities with whom we expect to do business is found to be not in compliance with applicable laws, they may be subject to criminal, civil or administrative sanctions, including exclusions from government funded healthcare programs.

***Even if we, or any future collaborators, obtain marketing approvals for our product candidates, the terms of approvals and ongoing regulation of our products may limit how we manufacture and market our products, which could impair our ability to generate revenue.***

Once marketing approval has been granted, an approved product and its manufacturer and marketer are subject to ongoing review and extensive regulation. We, and any future collaborators, must therefore comply with requirements concerning advertising and promotion for any of our product candidates for which we or they obtain marketing approval. Promotional communications with respect to prescription drugs are subject to a variety of legal and regulatory restrictions and must be consistent with the information in the product's approved labeling. Thus, we and any future collaborators will face restrictions on how we promote any products we develop for indications or uses for which they are not approved.

In addition, manufacturers of approved products and those manufacturers' facilities are required to comply with extensive FDA requirements, including ensuring that quality control and manufacturing procedures conform to cGMPs and QSRs, which include requirements relating to quality control and quality assurance as well as the corresponding maintenance of records and documentation and reporting requirements. We, our contract manufacturers, any future collaborators and their contract manufacturers could be subject to periodic unannounced inspections by the FDA to monitor and ensure compliance with cGMPs and QSRs.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Accordingly, assuming we receive marketing approval for one or more of our product candidates, we, and any future collaborators, and our and their contract manufacturers will continue to expend time, money and effort in all areas of regulatory compliance, including manufacturing, production, product surveillance and quality control.

If we are not able to comply with post-approval regulatory requirements, we could have the marketing approvals for our products withdrawn by regulatory authorities and our ability to market any future products could be limited, which could adversely affect our ability to achieve or sustain profitability. Further, the cost of compliance with post-approval regulations may have a negative effect on our operating results and financial condition.

### **Risks Related to the Clinical Development of Other Product Candidates in Our Pipeline**

#### ***The commencement and completion of clinical trials can be delayed or prevented for a number of reasons.***

Beyond Furoscix, we intend to identify, develop and market additional product candidates, including subcutaneous ceftriaxone. However, we may not be able to commence or complete the clinical trials that would support the submission of an NDA to the FDA or marketing authorization to any other regulatory agency. Drug development is a long, expensive and uncertain process, and delay or failure can occur at any stage of any of our clinical trials. Clinical trials can be delayed or prevented for a number of reasons, including:

- difficulties obtaining regulatory approval to commence a clinical trial or complying with conditions imposed by a regulatory authority regarding the scope or term of a clinical trial;
- delays in reaching or failing to reach agreement on acceptable terms with prospective contract research organizations, or CROs, contract manufacturing organizations, or CMOs, and trial sites, the terms of which can be subject to extensive negotiation and may vary significantly among different CROs and trial sites;
- failure of our third-party contractors, such as CROs and CMOs, or our investigators to comply with regulatory requirements or otherwise meet their contractual obligations in a timely manner;
- insufficient or inadequate supply or quality of a product candidate or other materials necessary to conduct our clinical trials
- difficulties obtaining institutional review board, or IRB, approval to conduct a clinical trial at a prospective site;
- the FDA requiring alterations to any of our study designs, our nonclinical strategy or our manufacturing plans;
- challenges recruiting and enrolling subjects to participate in clinical trials for a variety of reasons, including size and nature of subject population, proximity of subjects to clinical sites, eligibility criteria for the trial, nature of trial protocol, the availability of approved effective treatments for the relevant disease and competition from other clinical trial programs for similar indications;
- difficulties maintaining contact with subjects after treatment, which results in incomplete data;
- receipt by a competitor of marketing approval for a product targeting an indication that our product targets, such that we are not "first to market" with our product candidate;
- governmental or regulatory delays and changes in regulatory requirements, policy and guidelines; and
- varying interpretations of data by the FDA and similar foreign regulatory agencies.

Clinical trials may also be delayed or terminated as a result of ambiguous or negative interim results. In addition, a clinical trial may be suspended or terminated by us, the FDA, the IRBs at the sites where the IRBs are overseeing a trial, or a data safety monitoring board overseeing the clinical trial at issue, or other regulatory authorities due to a number of factors, including:

- failure to conduct the clinical trial in accordance with regulatory requirements or our clinical protocols;
- inspection of the clinical trial operations or trial sites by the FDA or other regulatory authorities;
- unforeseen safety issues, including serious adverse events associated with a product candidate, or lack of effectiveness; and
- lack of adequate funding to continue the clinical trial.

#### ***Clinical failure may occur at any stage of clinical development, and the results of our clinical trials may not support our proposed indications for our product candidates.***

We cannot be certain that existing clinical trial results will be sufficient to support regulatory approval of our product candidates. Success in preclinical testing and early clinical trials does not ensure that later clinical trials will be successful, and we cannot be sure that the results of later clinical trials will replicate the results of prior clinical

## [Table of Contents](#)

trials and preclinical testing. Moreover, success in clinical trials in a particular indication, does not ensure that a product candidate will be successful in other indications. A number of companies in the pharmaceutical industry have suffered significant setbacks in clinical trials, even after promising results in earlier preclinical studies or clinical trials or successful later-stage trials in other related indications. These setbacks have been caused by, among other things, preclinical findings made while clinical trials were underway and safety or efficacy observations made in clinical trials, including previously unreported adverse events. The results of preclinical and early clinical trials of our product candidates may not be predictive of the results of later-stage clinical trials. Product candidates in later stages of clinical trials may fail to show the desired safety and efficacy traits despite having progressed through preclinical and initial clinical trials. A failure of a clinical trial to meet its predetermined endpoints would likely cause us to abandon a product candidate and may delay development of any other product candidates. Any delay in, or termination of, our clinical trials will delay the submission of the NDA to the FDA, the marketing authorization application to the EMA or other similar applications with other relevant foreign regulatory authorities and, ultimately, our ability to commercialize our product candidates and generate revenue.

***Our product candidates may have serious adverse, undesirable or unacceptable side effects which may delay or prevent marketing approval. If such side effects are identified during the development of our product candidates or following approval, if any, we may need to abandon our development of such product candidates, the commercial profile of any approved label may be limited, or we may be subject to other significant negative consequences following marketing approval, if any.***

Undesirable side effects that may be caused by our product candidates could cause us or regulatory authorities to interrupt, delay or halt clinical trials and could result in a more restrictive label or the delay or denial of regulatory approval by the FDA or other comparable foreign authorities. To date, patients treated with Furoscix have experienced drug-related side effects including local skin effects such as reddening, or erythema, bruising and pain, which were mild or moderate in severity. Results of our trials could reveal a high and unacceptable severity and prevalence of these or other side effects. It is possible that there may be side effects associated with our other product candidates' use. In such an event, our trials could be suspended or terminated and the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities could order us to cease further development of or deny approval of our product candidates for any or all targeted indications. The drug-related side effects could affect patient recruitment or the ability of enrolled patients to complete the trial or result in potential product liability claims. Any of these occurrences may harm our business, financial condition and prospects.

***Our failure to successfully identify, develop and market additional product candidates could impair our ability to grow.***

As part of our growth strategy, we intend to identify, develop and market additional product candidates beyond Furoscix. We are exploring various therapeutic opportunities for our pipeline and product programs for use with our sc2Wear Infusor. We may spend several years completing our development of any particular current or future internal product candidates, and failure can occur at any stage. The product candidates to which we allocate our resources may not end up being successful. In addition, because our internal research capabilities are limited, we may be dependent upon pharmaceutical companies, academic scientists and other researchers to sell or license product candidates, approved products or the underlying technology to us. The success of this strategy depends partly upon our ability to identify, select, discover and acquire promising product candidates and products.

The process of proposing, negotiating and implementing a license or acquisition of a product candidate or approved product is lengthy and complex. Other companies, including some with substantially greater financial, marketing and sales resources, may compete with us for the license or acquisition of product candidates and approved products. We have limited resources to identify and execute the acquisition or in-licensing of third-party products, businesses and technologies and integrate them into our current infrastructure. Moreover, we may devote resources to potential acquisitions or in-licensing opportunities that are never completed, or we may fail to realize the anticipated benefits of such efforts. We may not be able to acquire the rights to additional product candidates on terms that we find acceptable, or at all.

In addition, future acquisitions may entail numerous operational and financial risks, including:

- exposure to unknown liabilities;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- disruption of our business and diversion of our management's time and attention to develop acquired products or technologies;
- incurrence of substantial debt, dilutive issuances of securities or depletion of cash to pay for acquisitions;
- higher than expected acquisition and integration costs;
- difficulty in combining the operations and personnel of any acquired businesses with our operations and personnel;
- increased amortization expenses;
- impairment of relationships with key suppliers or customers of any acquired businesses due to changes in management and ownership; and
- inability to motivate key employees of any acquired businesses.

Further, any product candidate that we acquire may require additional development efforts prior to commercial sale, including extensive clinical testing and approval by the FDA and other regulatory authorities.

### **Risks Related to Our Dependence on Third Parties**

***Use of third parties to manufacture our product candidates may increase the risk that we will not have sufficient quantities of our product candidates, products, or necessary quantities at an acceptable cost.***

We do not own or operate manufacturing facilities for the production of clinical or commercial quantities of our product candidates, and we lack the resources and the capabilities to do so. As a result, we currently rely on third parties for supply of the active pharmaceutical ingredients, or API, in our product candidates, as well as the device components in our sc2Wear Infusor. Our current strategy is to outsource all manufacturing of our product candidates and products to third parties.

We currently engage third-party manufacturers to manufacture Furoscix. For example, we have engaged a third-party manufacturer for the manufacture of the furosemide formulation used in Furoscix. In addition, one of our CMOs manufactures the single-use components of our sc2Wear Infusor device, including the cartridge and vial adaptor. This CMO has contracted with a sterilization sub-contractor to sterilize the manufactured component parts prior to inclusion into the single-dose kit. The reusable activator in the sc2Wear Infusor is manufactured by another CMO. Another third party then assembles and packages the finished drug-device kits for Furoscix. There is no guarantee that we can maintain our relationships with these manufacturers and we may incur added costs and delays in identifying and qualifying any replacements for such manufacturers. There is no assurance that we will be able to timely secure further needed supply arrangements on satisfactory terms, or at all. Our failure to secure these arrangements as needed could have a material adverse effect on our ability to commercialize Furoscix or develop our other product candidates. There may be difficulties and delays in scaling up to commercial quantities of Furoscix and the costs of manufacturing could be prohibitive. Beyond Furoscix, third parties also manufacture the materials that we require for the development of our other product candidates, including subcutaneous ceftriaxone, and our reliance on these manufacturers for these activities carries similar risks as our reliance on third-party manufacturers in connection with Furoscix.

Reliance on third-party manufacturers entails additional risks, including:

- reliance on third parties for manufacturing process development, regulatory compliance and quality assurance;
- limitations on supply availability resulting from capacity and scheduling constraints of third parties;
- the possible breach of manufacturing agreements by third parties because of factors beyond our control; and
- the possible termination or non-renewal of the manufacturing agreements by the third party, at a time that is costly or inconvenient to us.

If we do not maintain our key manufacturing relationships, we may fail to find replacement manufacturers or develop our own manufacturing capabilities, which could delay or impair our ability to obtain regulatory approval for our products. If we do find replacement manufacturers, we may not be able to enter into agreements with them on terms and conditions favorable to us and there could be a substantial delay before new facilities could be qualified and registered with the FDA and other foreign regulatory authorities.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Our lead product candidate is a drug-device combination product that will be regulated under the drug regulations of the FDCA based on its primary mode of action as a drug. Third-party manufacturers may not be able to comply with the regulatory requirements, known as current good manufacturing practice, or cGMP, applicable to drug-device combination products, including applicable provisions of the FDA's drug cGMP regulations, device cGMP requirements embodied in the QSR or similar regulatory requirements outside the United States. Our failure, or the failure of our third-party manufacturers, to comply with applicable regulations could result in sanctions being imposed on us, including clinical holds, fines, injunctions, civil penalties, delays, suspension or withdrawal of approvals, license revocation, seizures or recalls of product candidates, operating restrictions and criminal prosecutions, any of which could significantly affect supplies of our product candidates. The facilities used by our contract manufacturers to manufacture our product candidates must be approved by the FDA pursuant to inspections that will be conducted after we submit our NDA to the FDA. We do not control the manufacturing process of, and are completely dependent on, our contract manufacturing partners for compliance with cGMPs and QSRs. If our contract manufacturers cannot successfully manufacture material that conforms to our specifications and the strict regulatory requirements of the FDA or others, they will not be able to secure and/or maintain regulatory approval for their manufacturing facilities. In addition, we have no control over the ability of our contract manufacturers to maintain adequate quality control, quality assurance and qualified personnel. If the FDA or a comparable foreign regulatory authority does not approve these facilities for the manufacture of our product candidates or if it withdraws any such approval in the future, we may need to find alternative manufacturing facilities, which would significantly impact our ability to develop, obtain regulatory approval for or market our product candidates, if approved. Contract manufacturers may face manufacturing or quality control problems causing drug substance production and shipment delays or a situation where the contractor may not be able to maintain compliance with the applicable cGMP and QSR requirements. Any failure to comply with cGMP or QSR requirements or other FDA, EMA and comparable foreign regulatory requirements could adversely affect our clinical research activities and our ability to develop our product candidates and market our products following approval.

The FDA and other foreign regulatory authorities require manufacturers to register manufacturing facilities. The FDA and corresponding foreign regulators also inspect these facilities to confirm compliance with applicable cGMPs and QSRs. Contract manufacturers may face manufacturing or quality control problems causing drug substance or device component production and shipment delays or a situation where the contractor may not be able to maintain compliance with the applicable cGMP or QSR requirements. Any failure to comply with cGMP or QSR requirements or other FDA, EMA and comparable foreign regulatory requirements could adversely affect our clinical research activities and our ability to develop our product candidates and market our products following approval.

***If our third-party manufacturers of our product candidates are unable to increase the scale of their production of our product candidates, or increase the product yield of manufacturing, then our costs to manufacture the product may increase and commercialization may be delayed.***

In order to produce sufficient quantities to meet the demand for clinical trials and subsequent commercialization of Furoscix or any of our other product candidates in our pipeline or that we may develop, our third-party manufacturers will be required to increase their production and automate and otherwise optimize their manufacturing processes while maintaining the quality of the product. The transition to larger scale production could prove difficult. In addition, if our third-party manufacturers are not able to automate and otherwise optimize their manufacturing process to increase the product yield for our sc2Wear Infusor and other components of our product candidates, or if they are unable to produce increased amounts of our product candidates while maintaining quality, then we may not be able to meet the demands of clinical trials or market demands, which could decrease our ability to generate revenues and have a material adverse impact on our business and results of operations.

***We rely on third parties to conduct our preclinical studies and clinical trials. If they do not perform satisfactorily or fail to meet expected deadlines, our business could be harmed.***

We do not independently conduct clinical trials of any of our product candidates. We rely on third parties, such as CROs, clinical data management organizations, medical institutions and clinical investigators, to conduct these clinical trials and expect to rely on these third parties to conduct clinical trials of any other product candidate that we develop. Any of these third parties may terminate their engagements with us under certain circumstances. We may not be able to enter into alternative arrangements or do so on commercially reasonable terms. In addition, there is a natural transition period when a new contract research organization begins work. As a result, delays would likely

## [Table of Contents](#)

occur, which could negatively impact our ability to meet our expected clinical development timelines and harm our business, financial condition and prospects.

Further, although our reliance on these third parties for clinical development activities limits our control over these activities, we remain responsible for ensuring that each of our trials is conducted in accordance with the applicable protocol, legal, regulatory and scientific standards. For example, notwithstanding the obligations of a CRO for a trial of one of our product candidates, we remain responsible for ensuring that each of our clinical trials is conducted in accordance with the general investigational plan and protocols for the trial. Moreover, the FDA requires us to comply with standards, commonly referred to as Good Clinical Practices, or GCPs, for conducting, recording and reporting the results of clinical trials to assure that data and reported results are credible and accurate and that the rights, integrity and confidentiality of trial participants are protected. The FDA enforces these GCPs through periodic inspections of trial sponsors, principal investigators, clinical trial sites and institutional review boards. If we or our third-party contractors fail to comply with applicable GCPs, the clinical data generated in our clinical trials may be deemed unreliable and the FDA may require us to perform additional clinical trials before approving our product candidates, which would delay the marketing approval process. We cannot be certain that, upon inspection, the FDA will determine that any of our clinical trials comply with GCPs. We are also required to register clinical trials and post the results of completed clinical trials on a government-sponsored database, ClinicalTrials.gov, within certain timeframes. Failure to do so can result in fines, adverse publicity and civil and criminal sanctions.

Furthermore, the third parties conducting clinical trials on our behalf are not our employees, and except for remedies available to us under our agreements with such contractors, we cannot control whether or not they devote sufficient time, skill and resources to our ongoing development programs. These contractors may also have relationships with other commercial entities, including our competitors, for whom they may also be conducting clinical trials or other drug development activities, which could impede their ability to devote appropriate time to our clinical programs. If these third parties do not successfully carry out their contractual duties, meet expected deadlines or conduct our clinical trials in accordance with regulatory requirements or our stated protocols, we may not be able to obtain, or may be delayed in obtaining, marketing approvals for our product candidates. If that occurs, we will not be able to, or may be delayed in our efforts to, successfully commercialize our product candidates. In such an event, our financial results and the commercial prospects for any product candidates that we seek to develop could be harmed, our costs could increase and our ability to generate revenues could be delayed, impaired or foreclosed.

***We enter into various contracts in the normal course of our business in which we indemnify the other party to the contract. In the event we have to perform under these indemnification provisions, it could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.***

In the normal course of business, we periodically enter into academic, commercial, service, collaboration, licensing, consulting and other agreements that contain indemnification provisions. With respect to our academic and other research agreements, we typically indemnify the institution and related parties from losses arising from claims relating to the products, processes or services made, used, sold or performed pursuant to the agreements for which we have secured licenses, and from claims arising from our or our sublicensees' exercise of rights under the agreement. With respect to our commercial agreements, we indemnify our vendors from any third-party product liability claims that could result from the production, use or consumption of the product, as well as for alleged infringements of any patent or other intellectual property right by a third party.

Should our obligation under an indemnification provision exceed applicable insurance coverage or if we were denied insurance coverage, our business, financial condition and results of operations could be adversely affected. Similarly, if we are relying on a collaborator to indemnify us and the collaborator is denied insurance coverage or the indemnification obligation exceeds the applicable insurance coverage and does not have other assets available to indemnify us, our business, financial condition and results of operations could be adversely affected.

***We expect to seek to establish collaborations and, if we are not able to establish them on commercially reasonable terms, we may have to alter our development and commercialization plans.***

We expect to seek one or more collaborators for the development and commercialization of one or more of our product candidates. For example, we started collaborating with Sensile Medical AG in 2013. Likely collaborators may include large and mid-size pharmaceutical companies, regional and national pharmaceutical companies and biotechnology companies. In addition, if we are able to obtain marketing approval for product candidates from

## [Table of Contents](#)

foreign regulatory authorities, we intend to enter into strategic relationships with international biotechnology or pharmaceutical companies for the commercialization of such product candidates outside of the United States.

We face significant competition in seeking appropriate collaborators. Whether we reach a definitive agreement for a collaboration will depend, among other things, upon our assessment of the collaborator's resources and expertise, the terms and conditions of the proposed collaboration and the proposed collaborator's evaluation of a number of factors. Those factors may include the potential differentiation of our product candidate from competing product candidates, design or results of clinical trials, the likelihood of approval by the FDA, the EMA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities and the regulatory pathway for any such approval, the potential market for the product candidate, the costs and complexities of manufacturing and delivering the product to patients and the potential of competing products. The collaborator may also consider alternative product candidates or technologies for similar indications that may be available for collaboration and whether such a collaboration could be more attractive than the one with us for our product candidate. If we elect to increase our expenditures to fund development or commercialization activities on our own, we may need to obtain additional capital, which may not be available to us on acceptable terms or at all. If we do not have sufficient funds, we may not be able to further develop our product candidates or bring them to market and generate product revenue.

Collaborations are complex and time-consuming to negotiate and document. Further, there have been a significant number of recent business combinations among large pharmaceutical companies that have resulted in a reduced number of potential future collaborators. Any collaboration agreements that we enter into in the future may contain restrictions on our ability to enter into potential collaborations or to otherwise develop specified product candidates. We may not be able to negotiate collaborations on a timely basis, on acceptable terms, or at all. If we are unable to do so, we may have to curtail the development of the product candidate for which we are seeking to collaborate, reduce or delay its development program or one or more of our other development programs, delay its potential commercialization or reduce the scope of any sales or marketing activities, or increase our expenditures and undertake development or commercialization activities at our own expense.

### **Risks Related to Our Intellectual Property**

***Our drug development strategy relies heavily upon the 505(b)(2) regulatory approval pathway, which requires us to certify that we do not infringe upon third-party patents covering approved drugs that we rely upon for approval if we want to obtain approval prior to patent expiry. Such certifications typically result in third-party claims of intellectual property infringement, the defense of which would be costly and time consuming, and an unfavorable outcome in any litigation may prevent or delay our development and commercialization efforts which would harm our business.***

Our commercial success depends in large part on our avoiding infringement of the patents and proprietary rights of third parties for existing approved drug products. Because we utilize the 505(b)(2) regulatory approval pathway for the approval of our products and product candidates, we rely in whole or in part on studies conducted by third parties related to those approved drug products. As a result, upon filing with the FDA for approval of our product candidates, we will be required to certify to the FDA that either: (1) there is no patent information listed in the FDA's Orange Book for the listed drug; (2) the patents listed in the Orange Book have expired; (3) the listed patents have not expired, but will expire on a particular date and approval is sought after patent expiration; or (4) the listed patents are invalid or will not be infringed by the manufacture, use or sale of our proposed drug product. We can avoid certifying to a method-of-use patent if we do not seek approval of the patented condition of use. If we certify to the FDA that a patent is invalid or not infringed, or a Paragraph IV certification, a notice of the Paragraph IV certification must also be sent to the patent owner and NDA holder shortly after our 505(b)(2) NDA is accepted for filing by the FDA. The third party may then initiate a lawsuit against us asserting infringement of the patents identified in the notice. The filing of a patent infringement lawsuit within 45 days of receipt of the notice automatically prevents the FDA from approving our 505(b)(2) application until the earliest of 30 months or the date on which the patent expires, the lawsuit is settled, or the court reaches a decision in the infringement lawsuit in our favor. If the third party does not file a patent infringement lawsuit within the required 45-day period, our application will not be subject to the 30-month stay. However, even if the third party does not sue within the 45-day time limit, thereby invoking the 30-month stay, it may still challenge our right to market our product upon FDA approval; therefore, some risk of an infringement suit remains even after the expiry of the 45-day limit.

***If we fail to comply with our obligations under our existing and any future intellectual property licenses with third parties, we could lose license rights that are important to our business.***

We are a party to a license agreement with Sensile Medical, or Sensile, under which we license patent rights relating to Furoscix. We may enter into additional license agreements in the future. Our license agreement with Sensile imposes, and we expect that future license agreements will impose, various diligence, milestone payment, royalty, insurance and other obligations on us. If we fail to comply with our obligations under these licenses, our licensors may have the right to terminate these license agreements, in which event we might not be able to market any product that is covered by these agreements, or our licensors may convert the license to a non-exclusive license, which could negatively impact the value of the product candidate being developed under the license agreement. Termination of these license agreements or reduction or elimination of our licensed rights may also result in our having to negotiate new or reinstated licenses with less favorable terms.

***Our success depends on our ability to protect our intellectual property and proprietary technology, as well as the ability of our collaborators to protect their intellectual property and proprietary technology.***

Our success depends in large part on our ability to obtain and maintain patent protection and trade secret protection in the United States and other countries with respect to our proprietary product candidates. If we do not adequately protect our intellectual property rights, competitors may be able to erode or negate any competitive advantage we may have, which could harm our business and ability to achieve profitability. To protect our proprietary position, we file patent applications in the United States and abroad related to our novel product candidates that are important to our business; we also license or purchase patent applications filed by others. The patent application and approval process is expensive and time-consuming. We may not be able to file and prosecute all necessary or desirable patent applications at a reasonable cost or in a timely manner.

Agreements through which we license patent rights, including our agreements with Sensile, may not give us control over patent prosecution or maintenance, so that we may not be able to control which claims or arguments are presented and may not be able to secure, maintain, or successfully enforce necessary or desirable patent protection from those patent rights. We have not had and do not have primary control over patent prosecution and maintenance for certain of the patents and patent applications we license, and therefore cannot guarantee that these patents and applications will be prosecuted or maintained in a manner consistent with the best interests of our business. We are reliant on patents and patent applications that we license for our product candidates, particularly those with Sensile, and failure by owners of this intellectual property to enforce claims could have a negative impact on our business. We cannot be certain that patent prosecution and maintenance activities by our licensors have been or will be conducted in compliance with applicable laws and regulations or will result in valid and enforceable patents.

If the scope of the patent protection we or our licensors obtain is not sufficiently broad, we may not be able to prevent others from developing and commercializing technology and products similar or identical to ours. The degree of patent protection we require to successfully compete in the marketplace may be unavailable or severely limited in some cases and may not adequately protect our rights or permit us to gain or keep any competitive advantage. We cannot provide any assurances that any of our licensed patents have, or that any of our pending licensed patent applications that mature into issued patents will include, claims with a scope sufficient to protect our current and future product candidates or otherwise provide any competitive advantage, nor can we assure you that our licenses are or will remain in force. In addition, the laws of foreign countries may not protect our rights to the same extent as the laws of the United States. Furthermore, patents have a limited lifespan. In the United States, the natural expiration of a patent is generally twenty years after it is filed. Various extensions may be available; however, the life of a patent, and the protection it affords, is limited. Given the amount of time required for the development, testing and regulatory review of new product candidates, patents protecting such candidates might expire before or shortly after such candidates are commercialized. As a result, our licensed patent portfolio may not provide us with adequate and continuing patent protection sufficient to exclude others from commercializing products similar to our product candidates. In addition, the patent portfolio licensed to us is, or may be, licensed to third parties, such as outside our field, and such third parties may have certain enforcement rights. Thus, patents licensed to us could be put at risk of being invalidated or interpreted narrowly in litigation filed by or against another licensee or in administrative proceedings brought by or against another licensee in response to such litigation or for other reasons.

Even if they are unchallenged, our licensed patents and pending patent applications, if issued, may not provide us with any meaningful protection or prevent competitors from designing around our patent claims to circumvent our or

## [Table of Contents](#)

our licensors' patents by developing similar or alternative technologies or therapeutics in a non-infringing manner. For example, a third party may develop a competitive therapy that provides benefits similar to one or more of our product candidates but that uses a formulation and/or a device that falls outside the scope of our patent protection or license rights. If the patent protection provided by the patents and patent applications we hold or pursue with respect to our product candidates is not sufficiently broad to impede such competition, our ability to successfully commercialize our product candidates could be negatively affected, which would harm our business. Although currently all of our patents and some of our patent applications are in-licensed, similar risks would apply to any patents or patent applications that we may own or in-license in the future.

We, or any future partners, collaborators, or licensees, may fail to identify patentable aspects of inventions made in the course of development and commercialization activities before it is too late to obtain patent protection on them. Therefore, we may miss potential opportunities to strengthen our patent position.

It is possible that defects of form in the preparation or filing of our patents or patent applications may exist, or may arise in the future, for example with respect to proper priority claims, inventorship, claim scope, or requests for patent term adjustments. If we or our partners, collaborators, licensees, or licensors, whether current or future, fail to establish, maintain or protect such patents and other intellectual property rights, such rights may be reduced or eliminated. If our partners, collaborators, licensees, or licensors, are not fully cooperative or disagree with us as to the prosecution, maintenance or enforcement of any patent rights, such patent rights could be compromised. If there are material defects in the form, preparation, prosecution, or enforcement of our patents or patent applications, such patents may be invalid and/or unenforceable, and such applications may never result in valid, enforceable patents. Any of these outcomes could impair our ability to prevent competition from third parties, which may have an adverse impact on our business.

The patent position of biotechnology and pharmaceutical companies generally is highly uncertain. No consistent policy regarding the breadth of claims allowed in biotechnology and pharmaceutical patents has emerged to date in the United States or in many foreign jurisdictions. In addition, the determination of patent rights with respect to pharmaceutical compounds commonly involves complex legal and factual questions, which has in recent years been the subject of much litigation. As a result, the issuance, scope, validity, enforceability and commercial value of our patent rights are highly uncertain.

Moreover, because the issuance of a patent is not conclusive as to its inventorship, scope, validity or enforceability, our patents or pending patent applications may be challenged in the courts or patent offices in the United States and abroad. There is no assurance that all of the potentially relevant prior art relating to our patents and patent applications has been found. If such prior art exists, it may be used to invalidate a patent, or may prevent a patent from issuing from a pending patent application. For example, such patent filings may be subject to a third-party preissuance submission of prior art to the USPTO to other patent offices around the world. Alternately or additionally, we may become involved in post-grant review procedures, oppositions, derivations proceedings, reexaminations, *inter partes* review or interference proceedings, in the United States or elsewhere, challenging patents or patent applications in which we have rights, including patents on which we rely to protect our business. An adverse determination in any such challenges may result in loss of exclusivity or in patent claims being narrowed, invalidated or held unenforceable, in whole or in part, which could limit our ability to stop others from using or commercializing similar or identical technology and products, or limit the duration of the patent protection of our technology and products.

Pending and future patent applications may not result in patents being issued which protect our business, in whole or in part, or which effectively prevent others from commercializing competitive products. Changes in either the patent laws or interpretation of the patent laws in the United States and other countries may diminish the value of our patents or narrow the scope of our patent protection. In addition, the laws of foreign countries may not protect our rights to the same extent or in the same manner as the laws of the United States. For example, patent laws in various jurisdictions, including significant commercial markets such as Europe, restrict the patentability of methods of treatment of the human body more than United States law does.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The patent application process is subject to numerous risks and uncertainties, and there can be no assurance that we or any of our future development partners will be successful in protecting our product candidates by obtaining and defending patents. These risks and uncertainties include the following:

- the USPTO and various foreign governmental patent agencies require compliance with a number of procedural, documentary, fee payment and other provisions during the patent process. There are situations in which noncompliance can result in abandonment or lapse of a patent or patent application, resulting in partial or complete loss of patent rights in the relevant jurisdiction. In such an event, competitors might be able to enter the market earlier than would otherwise have been the case;
- patent applications may not result in any patents being issued;
- patents that may be issued or in-licensed may be challenged, invalidated, modified, revoked, circumvented, found to be unenforceable or otherwise may not provide any competitive advantage;
- our competitors, many of whom have substantially greater resources and many of whom have made significant investments in competing technologies, may seek or may have already obtained patents that will limit, interfere with or eliminate our ability to make, use, and sell our potential product candidates;
- there may be significant pressure on the U.S. government and international governmental bodies to limit the scope of patent protection both inside and outside the United States for disease treatments that prove successful, as a matter of public policy regarding worldwide health concerns; and
- countries other than the United States may have patent laws less favorable to patentees than those upheld by U.S. courts, allowing foreign competitors a better opportunity to create, develop and market competing product candidates in such countries.

Issued patents that we have or may obtain or license may not provide us with any meaningful protection, prevent competitors from competing with us or otherwise provide us with any competitive advantage. Our competitors may be able to circumvent our or our licensors' patents by developing similar or alternative technologies or products in a non-infringing manner. Our competitors may also seek approval to market their own products similar to or otherwise competitive with our products. Alternatively, our competitors may seek to market generic versions of any approved products by submitting ANDAs to the FDA in which they claim that patents owned or licensed by us are invalid, unenforceable or not infringed. In these circumstances, we may need to defend or assert our patents, or both, including by filing lawsuits alleging patent infringement. In any of these types of proceedings, a court or other agency with jurisdiction may find our patents invalid or unenforceable, or that our competitors are competing in a non-infringing manner. Thus, even if we have valid and enforceable patents, these patents still may not provide protection against competing products or processes sufficient to achieve our business objectives.

Pursuant to the terms of some of our license agreements with third parties, some of our third-party licensors have the right, but not the obligation in certain circumstances to control enforcement of our licensed patents or defense of any claims asserting the invalidity of these patents. Even if we are permitted to pursue such enforcement or defense, we will require the cooperation of our licensors, and cannot guarantee that we would receive it and on what terms. We cannot be certain that our licensors will allocate sufficient resources or prioritize their or our enforcement of such patents or defense of such claims to protect our interests in the licensed patents. If we cannot obtain patent protection, or enforce existing or future patents against third parties, our competitive position and our financial condition could suffer.

In addition, we rely on the protection of our trade secrets and proprietary know-how. Although we have taken steps to protect our trade secrets and unpatented know-how, including entering into confidentiality agreements with third parties, and confidential information and inventions agreements with employees, consultants and advisors, we cannot provide any assurances that all such agreements have been duly executed, and third parties may still obtain this information or may come upon this or similar information independently. Additionally, if the steps taken to maintain our trade secrets are deemed inadequate, we may have insufficient recourse against third parties for misappropriating our trade secrets. If any of these events occurs or if we otherwise lose protection for our trade secrets or proprietary know-how, our business may be harmed.

## [Table of Contents](#)

### ***It is difficult and costly to protect our intellectual property and our proprietary technologies, and we may not be able to ensure their protection.***

Our commercial success will depend in part on obtaining and maintaining patent protection and trade secret protection for the use, formulation and structure of our product candidates, the methods used to manufacture them, the related therapeutic targets and associated methods of treatment as well as on successfully defending these patents against potential third-party challenges. Our ability to protect our products and product candidates from unauthorized making, using, selling, offering to sell or importing by third parties is dependent on the extent to which we have rights under valid and enforceable patents that cover these activities.

The patent positions of pharmaceutical, biotechnology and other life sciences companies can be highly uncertain and involve complex legal and factual questions for which important legal principles remain unresolved. Changes in either the patent laws or in interpretations of patent laws in the United States and other countries may diminish the value of our intellectual property. Further, the determination that a patent application or patent claim meets all of the requirements for patentability is a subjective determination based on the application of law and jurisprudence. The ultimate determination by the USPTO or by a court or other trier of fact in the United States, or corresponding foreign national patent offices or courts, on whether a claim meets all requirements of patentability cannot be assured. We have not conducted searches for third-party publications, patents and other information that may affect the patentability of claims in our various patent applications and patents, so we cannot be certain that all relevant information has been identified. Accordingly, we cannot predict the breadth of claims that may be allowed or enforced in our patents or patent applications, in our licensed patents or patent applications or in third-party patents.

We cannot provide assurances that any of our patent applications will be found to be patentable, including over our own prior art patents, or will issue as patents. Neither can we make assurances as to the scope of any claims that may issue from our pending and future patent applications nor to the outcome of any proceedings by any potential third parties that could challenge the patentability, validity or enforceability of our patents and patent applications in the United States or foreign jurisdictions. Any such challenge, if successful, could limit patent protection for our products and product candidates and/or materially harm our business.

The degree of future protection for our proprietary rights is uncertain because legal means afford only limited protection and may not adequately protect our rights or permit us to gain or keep our competitive advantage. For example:

- we may not be able to generate sufficient data to support full patent applications that protect the entire breadth of developments in one or more of our programs;
- it is possible that one or more of our pending patent applications will not become an issued patent or, if issued, that the patent(s) will not: (a) be sufficient to protect our technology, (b) provide us with a basis for commercially viable products or (c) provide us with any competitive advantages;
- if our pending applications issue as patents, they may be challenged by third parties as not infringed, invalid or unenforceable under U.S. or foreign laws; or
- if issued, the patents under which we hold rights may not be valid or enforceable.

In addition, to the extent that we are unable to obtain and maintain patent protection for one of our products or product candidates or in the event that such patent protection expires, it may no longer be cost-effective to extend our portfolio by pursuing additional development of a product or product candidate for follow-on indications.

We also may rely on trade secrets to protect our technologies or products, especially where we do not believe patent protection is appropriate or obtainable. However, trade secrets are difficult to protect. Although we use reasonable efforts to protect our trade secrets, our employees, consultants, contractors, outside scientific collaborators and other advisers may unintentionally or willfully disclose our information to competitors. Enforcing a claim that a third-party entity illegally obtained and is using any of our trade secrets is expensive and time-consuming, and the outcome is unpredictable. In addition, courts outside the United States are sometimes less willing to protect trade secrets. Moreover, our competitors may independently develop equivalent knowledge, methods and know-how.

***Obtaining and maintaining patent protection depends on compliance with various procedural, document submission, fee payment and other requirements imposed by governmental patent agencies, and our patent protection could be reduced or eliminated for non-compliance with these requirements.***

Periodic maintenance fees, renewal fees, annuity fees and various other governmental fees on patents and applications are required to be paid to the USPTO and various governmental patent agencies outside of the United States in several stages over the lifetime of the patents and applications. The USPTO and various non-U.S. governmental patent agencies require compliance with a number of procedural, documentary, fee payment and other similar provisions during the patent application process and after a patent has issued. There are situations in which non-compliance can result in abandonment or lapse of the patent or patent application, resulting in partial or complete loss of patent rights in the relevant jurisdiction. Under the terms of some of our licenses, we do not have the ability to maintain or prosecute patents in the portfolio, and must therefore rely on third parties to comply with these requirements.

***Patent terms may be inadequate to protect our competitive position on our products for an adequate amount of time.***

Given the amount of time required for the development, testing and regulatory review of new product candidates, patents protecting such candidates might expire before or shortly after such candidates are commercialized. We expect to seek extensions of patent terms in the United States and, if available, in other countries where we are prosecuting patents. In the United States, the Drug Price Competition and Patent Term Restoration Act of 1984 permits a patent term extension of up to five years beyond the normal expiration of the patent, which is limited to the approved indication (or any additional indications approved during the period of extension). However, the applicable authorities, including the FDA and the USPTO in the United States, and any equivalent regulatory authority in other countries, may not agree with our assessment of whether such extensions are available, and may refuse to grant extensions to our patents, or may grant more limited extensions than we request. If this occurs, our competitors may be able to take advantage of our investment in development and clinical trials by referencing our clinical and preclinical data and launch their product earlier than might otherwise be the case.

***Changes to the patent law in the United States and other jurisdictions could diminish the value of patents in general, thereby impairing our ability to protect our products.***

As is the case with other biopharmaceutical companies, our success is heavily dependent on intellectual property, particularly patents. Obtaining and enforcing patents in the biopharmaceutical industry involves both technological and legal complexity and is therefore costly, time consuming and inherently uncertain. Recent patent reform legislation in the United States, including the Leahy-Smith America Invents Act, or the America Invents Act, could increase those uncertainties and costs. The America Invents Act was signed into law on September 16, 2011, and many of the substantive changes became effective on March 16, 2013. The America Invents Act reforms United States patent law in part by changing the U.S. patent system from a "first to invent" system to a "first inventor to file" system, expanding the definition of prior art, and developing a post-grant review system. This legislation changes United States patent law in a way that may weaken our ability to obtain patent protection in the United States for those applications filed after March 16, 2013.

Further, the America Invents Act created new procedures to challenge the validity of issued patents in the United States, including post-grant review and *inter partes* review proceedings, which some third parties have been using to cause the cancellation of selected or all claims of issued patents. For a patent with an effective filing date of March 16, 2013 or later, a petition for post-grant review can be filed by a third party in a nine month window from issuance of the patent. A petition for *inter partes* review can be filed immediately following the issuance of a patent if the patent has an effective filing date prior to March 16, 2013. A petition for *inter partes* review can be filed after the nine month period for filing a post-grant review petition has expired for a patent with an effective filing date of March 16, 2013 or later. Post-grant review proceedings can be brought on any ground of invalidity, whereas *inter partes* review proceedings can only raise an invalidity challenge based on published prior art and patents. In these adversarial actions, the USPTO reviews patent claims without the presumption of validity afforded to U.S. patents in lawsuits in U.S. federal courts and uses a lower burden of proof than used in litigation in U.S. federal courts. Therefore, it is generally considered easier for a competitor or third party to have a U.S. patent invalidated in a USPTO post-grant review or *inter partes* review proceeding than invalidated in a litigation in a U.S. federal court. If any of our or our licensors' patents are challenged by a third party in such a USPTO proceeding, there is no guarantee that we or our licensors or collaborators will be successful in defending the patent, which would result in a loss of the challenged patent right to us.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Depending on future actions by the U.S. Congress, the U.S. courts, the USPTO and the relevant law-making bodies in other countries, the laws and regulations governing patents could change in unpredictable ways that would weaken our ability to obtain new patents or to enforce our existing patents and patents that we might obtain in the future.

### ***We may not be able to enforce our intellectual property rights throughout the world.***

Filing, prosecuting, enforcing and defending patents on our product candidates in all countries throughout the world would be prohibitively expensive, and our intellectual property rights in some countries outside the United States can be less extensive than those in the United States. The requirements for patentability may differ in certain countries, particularly in developing countries; thus, even in countries where we do pursue patent protection, there can be no assurance that any patents will issue with claims that cover our product candidates.

Moreover, our ability to protect and enforce our intellectual property rights may be adversely affected by unforeseen changes in foreign intellectual property laws. Additionally, laws of some countries outside of the United States and Europe do not afford intellectual property protection to the same extent as the laws of the United States and Europe. Many companies have encountered significant problems in protecting and defending intellectual property rights in certain foreign jurisdictions. The legal systems of some countries, including India, China and other developing countries, do not favor the enforcement of patents and other intellectual property rights. This could make it difficult for us to stop the infringement of our patents or the misappropriation of our other intellectual property rights. For example, many foreign countries have compulsory licensing laws under which a patent owner must grant licenses to third parties. Consequently, we may not be able to prevent third parties from practicing our inventions in certain countries outside the United States and Europe. Competitors may use our technologies in jurisdictions where we have not obtained patent protection to develop and market their own products and, further, may export otherwise infringing products to territories where we have patent protection, if our ability to enforce our patents to stop infringing activities is inadequate. These products may compete with our products, and our patents or other intellectual property rights may not be effective or sufficient to prevent them from competing.

Agreements through which we license patent rights may not give us sufficient rights to permit us to pursue enforcement of our licensed patents or defense of any claims asserting the invalidity of these patents (or control of enforcement or defense) of such patent rights in all relevant jurisdictions as requirements may vary.

Proceedings to enforce our patent rights in foreign jurisdictions, whether or not successful, could result in substantial costs and divert our efforts and resources from other aspects of our business. Moreover, such proceedings could put our patents at risk of being invalidated or interpreted narrowly and our patent applications at risk of not issuing and could provoke third parties to assert claims against us. We may not prevail in any lawsuits that we initiate and the damages or other remedies awarded, if any, may not be commercially meaningful. Furthermore, while we intend to protect our intellectual property rights in major markets for our products, we cannot ensure that we will be able to initiate or maintain similar efforts in all jurisdictions in which we may wish to market our products. Accordingly, our efforts to protect our intellectual property rights in such countries may be inadequate.

### ***Others may claim an ownership interest in our intellectual property which could expose us to litigation and have a significant adverse effect on our prospects.***

A third party may claim an ownership interest in one or more of our or our licensors' patents or other proprietary or intellectual property rights. A third party could bring legal actions against us and seek monetary damages and/or enjoin clinical testing, manufacturing and marketing of the affected product or products. While we are presently unaware of any claims or assertions by third parties with respect to our patents or other intellectual property, we cannot guarantee that a third party will not assert a claim or an interest in any of such patents or intellectual property. If we become involved in any litigation, it could consume a substantial portion of our resources, and cause a significant diversion of effort by our technical and management personnel. If any of these actions are successful, in addition to any potential liability for damages, we could be required to obtain a license to continue to manufacture or market the affected product, in which case we may be required to pay substantial royalties or grant cross-licenses to our patents. We cannot, however, assure you that any such license will be available on acceptable terms, if at all. Ultimately, we could be prevented from commercializing a product candidate, or be forced to cease some aspect of our business operations as a result of claims of patent infringement or violation of other intellectual property rights. Further, the outcome of intellectual property litigation is subject to uncertainties that cannot be

## [Table of Contents](#)

adequately quantified in advance, including the demeanor and credibility of witnesses and the identity of any adverse party. This is especially true in intellectual property cases that may turn on the testimony of experts as to technical facts upon which experts may reasonably disagree.

***If we are sued for infringing intellectual property rights of third parties, such litigation could be costly and time consuming and could prevent or delay us from developing or commercializing our product candidates.***

Our commercial success depends, in part, on our ability to develop, manufacture, market and sell our product candidates without infringing the intellectual property and other proprietary rights of third parties. Third parties may have U.S. and non-U.S. issued patents and pending patent applications relating to compounds, methods of manufacturing compounds and/or methods of use for the treatment of the disease indications for which we are developing our product candidates. If any third-party patents or patent applications are found to cover our product candidates or their methods of use or manufacture, we may not be free to manufacture or market our product candidates as planned without obtaining a license, which may not be available on commercially reasonable terms, or at all.

There is a substantial amount of intellectual property litigation in the biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries, and we may become party to, or threatened with, litigation or other adversarial proceedings regarding intellectual property rights with respect to our products candidates, including interference and post-grant proceedings before the USPTO. There may be third-party patents or patent applications with claims to materials, formulations, methods of manufacture or methods for treatment related to the composition, use or manufacture of our product candidates. We cannot guarantee that any of our patent analyses including, but not limited to, the scope of patent claims or the expiration of relevant patents are complete or thorough, nor can we be certain that we have identified each and every patent and pending application in the United States and abroad that is relevant to or necessary for the commercialization of our product candidates in any jurisdiction. Because patent applications can take many years to issue, there may be currently pending patent applications which may later result in issued patents that our product candidates may be accused of infringing. In addition, third parties may obtain patents in the future and claim that use of our technologies infringes upon these patents. Accordingly, third parties may assert infringement claims against us based on intellectual property rights that exist now or arise in the future. The outcome of intellectual property litigation is subject to uncertainties that cannot be adequately quantified in advance. The pharmaceutical and biotechnology industries have produced a significant number of patents, and it may not always be clear to industry participants, including us, which patents cover various types of products or methods of use or manufacture. The scope of protection afforded by a patent is subject to interpretation by the courts, and the interpretation is not always uniform. If we were sued for patent infringement, we would need to demonstrate that our product candidates, products or methods either do not infringe the patent claims of the relevant patent or that the patent claims are invalid or unenforceable, and we may not be able to do this. Proving invalidity is difficult. For example, in the United States, proving invalidity requires a showing of clear and convincing evidence to overcome the presumption of validity enjoyed by issued patents. Even if we are successful in these proceedings, we may incur substantial costs and the time and attention of our management and scientific personnel could be diverted in pursuing these proceedings, which could significantly harm our business and operating results. In addition, we may not have sufficient resources to bring these actions to a successful conclusion.

If we are found to infringe a third party's intellectual property rights, we could be forced, including by court order, to cease developing, manufacturing or commercializing the infringing product candidate or product. Alternatively, we may be required to obtain a license from such third party in order to use the infringing technology and continue developing, manufacturing or marketing the infringing product candidate or product. However, we may not be able to obtain any required license on commercially reasonable terms or at all. Even if we were able to obtain a license, it could be non-exclusive, thereby giving our competitors access to the same technologies licensed to us; alternatively or additionally it could include terms that impede or destroy our ability to compete successfully in the commercial marketplace. In addition, we could be found liable for monetary damages, including treble damages and attorneys' fees if we are found to have willfully infringed a patent. A finding of infringement could prevent us from commercializing our product candidates or force us to cease some of our business operations, which could harm our business. Claims that we have misappropriated the confidential information or trade secrets of third parties could have a similar negative impact on our business.

***We may be subject to claims by third parties asserting that our employees or we have misappropriated their intellectual property, or claiming ownership of what we regard as our own intellectual property.***

Many of our current and former employees and our licensors' current and former employees, including our senior management, were previously employed at universities or at other biotechnology or pharmaceutical companies, including some which may be competitors or potential competitors. Some of these employees, including each member of our senior management, executed proprietary rights, non-disclosure and non-competition agreements, or similar agreements, in connection with such previous employment. Although we try to ensure that our employees do not use the proprietary information or know-how of others in their work for us, we may be subject to claims that we or these employees have used or disclosed intellectual property, including trade secrets or other proprietary information, of any such third party. Litigation may be necessary to defend against such claims. If we fail in defending any such claims, in addition to paying monetary damages, we may lose valuable intellectual property rights or personnel or sustain damages. Such intellectual property rights could be awarded to a third party, and we could be required to obtain a license from such third party to commercialize our technology or products. Such a license may not be available on commercially reasonable terms or at all. Even if we are successful in defending against such claims, litigation could result in substantial costs and be a distraction to management.

In addition, while we typically require our employees, consultants and contractors who may be involved in the development of intellectual property to execute agreements assigning such intellectual property to us, we may be unsuccessful in executing such an agreement with each party who in fact develops intellectual property that we regard as our own, which may result in claims by or against us related to the ownership of such intellectual property. If we fail in prosecuting or defending any such claims, in addition to paying monetary damages, we may lose valuable intellectual property rights. Even if we are successful in prosecuting or defending against such claims, litigation could result in substantial costs and be a distraction to our senior management and scientific personnel.

***We may become involved in lawsuits to protect or enforce our patents or other intellectual property, which could be expensive, time consuming and unsuccessful.***

Competitors may infringe our patents, trademarks, copyrights or other intellectual property. To counter infringement or unauthorized use, we may be required to file infringement claims, which can be expensive and time consuming and divert the time and attention of our management and scientific personnel. Any claims we assert against perceived infringers could provoke these parties to assert counterclaims against us alleging that we infringe their patents, in addition to counterclaims asserting that our patents are invalid or unenforceable, or both. In any patent infringement proceeding, there is a risk that a court will decide that a patent of ours is invalid or unenforceable, in whole or in part, and that we do not have the right to stop the other party from using the invention at issue. There is also a risk that, even if the validity of such patents is upheld, the court will construe the patent's claims narrowly or decide that we do not have the right to stop the other party from using the invention at issue on the grounds that our patent claims do not cover the invention. An adverse outcome in a litigation or proceeding involving one or more of our patents could limit our ability to assert those patents against those parties or other competitors, and may curtail or preclude our ability to exclude third parties from making and selling similar or competitive products. Similarly, if we assert trademark infringement claims, a court may determine that the marks we have asserted are unenforceable, that the alleged infringing mark does not infringe our trademark rights, or that the party against whom we have asserted trademark infringement has superior rights to the marks in question. In this last instance, we could ultimately be forced to cease use of such trademarks.

Even if we establish infringement, the court may decide not to grant an injunction against further infringing activity and instead award only monetary damages, which may or may not be an adequate remedy. Furthermore, because of the substantial amount of discovery required in connection with intellectual property litigation, there is a risk that some of our confidential information could be compromised by disclosure during litigation. There could also be public announcements of the results of hearings, motions or other interim proceedings or developments. If securities analysts or investors perceive these results to be negative, it could adversely affect the price of shares of our common stock. Moreover, there can be no assurance that we will have sufficient financial or other resources to file and pursue such infringement claims, which typically last for years before they are concluded. Even if we ultimately prevail in such claims, the monetary cost of such litigation and the diversion of the attention of our management and scientific personnel could outweigh any benefit we receive as a result of the proceedings.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Additionally, for certain of our in-licensed patent rights, we do not have the right to bring suit for infringement and must rely on third parties to enforce these rights for us. If we cannot or choose not to take action against those we believe infringe our intellectual property rights, we may have difficulty competing in certain markets where such potential infringers conduct their business, and our commercialization efforts may suffer as a result.

***If we are unable to protect the confidentiality of our trade secrets, the value of our technology could be negatively impacted and our business would be harmed.***

In addition to the protection afforded by patents, we also rely on trade secret protection for certain aspects of our intellectual property. We seek to protect these trade secrets, in part, by entering into non-disclosure and confidentiality agreements with parties who have access to them, such as our employees, consultants, independent contractors, advisors, contract manufacturers, suppliers and other third parties. We also enter into confidentiality and invention or patent assignment agreements with employees and certain consultants. Any party with whom we have executed such an agreement may breach that agreement and disclose our proprietary information, including our trade secrets, and we may not be able to obtain adequate remedies for such breaches. Enforcing a claim that a party illegally disclosed or misappropriated a trade secret is difficult, expensive and time-consuming, and the outcome is unpredictable. Additionally, if the steps taken to maintain our trade secrets are deemed inadequate, we may have insufficient recourse against third parties for misappropriating such trade secrets. Further, if any of our trade secrets were to be lawfully obtained or independently developed by a competitor, we would have no right to prevent such third party, or those to whom they communicate such technology or information, from using that technology or information to compete with us. If any of our trade secrets were to be disclosed to or independently developed by a competitor, our business and competitive position could be harmed.

***If our trademarks and trade names are not adequately protected, then we may not be able to build name recognition in our marks of interest and our business may be adversely affected.***

Our trademarks or trade names may be challenged, infringed, circumvented or declared generic or determined to be infringing on other marks. We rely on both registration and common law protection for our trademarks. We may not be able to protect our rights to these trademarks and trade names or may be forced to stop using these names, which we need for name recognition by potential partners or customers in our markets of interest. During the trademark registration process, we may receive Office Actions from the USPTO objecting to the registration of our trademark. Although we would be given an opportunity to respond to those objections, we may be unable to overcome such rejections. In addition, in the USPTO and in comparable agencies in many foreign jurisdictions, third parties are given an opportunity to oppose pending trademark applications and/or to seek the cancellation of registered trademarks. Opposition or cancellation proceedings may be filed against our trademarks, and our trademarks may not survive such proceedings. If we are unable to establish name recognition based on our trademarks and trade names, we may not be able to compete effectively and our business may be adversely affected.

### **Risks Related to Employee Matters, Managing Growth and Ongoing Operations**

***We only have a limited number of employees to manage and operate our business.***

As of September 30, 2017, we had 28 full-time or part-time employees. Our focus on the development of Furoscix has required us to optimize cash utilization and to manage and operate our business in a lean manner. We cannot assure you that we will be able to hire and/or retain adequate staffing levels to commercialize Furoscix or run our operations and/or to accomplish all of the objectives that we otherwise would seek to accomplish.

***We depend heavily on our executive officers, directors, and principal consultants and the loss of their services would materially harm our business.***

Our success depends, and will likely continue to depend, upon our ability to hire, retain the services of our current executive officers, directors, principal consultants and others. In addition, we have established relationships with universities and research institutions which have historically provided, and continue to provide, us with access to research laboratories, clinical trials, facilities and patients. Our ability to compete in the biotechnology and pharmaceuticals industries depends upon our ability to attract and retain highly qualified managerial, scientific and medical personnel.

Our industry has experienced a high rate of turnover of management personnel in recent years. Any of our personnel may terminate their employment at will. If we lose one or more of our executive officers or other key employees, our ability to implement our business strategy successfully could be seriously harmed. Furthermore, replacing executive

## [Table of Contents](#)

officers or other key employees may be difficult and may take an extended period of time because of the limited number of individuals in our industry with the breadth of skills and experience required to develop, gain marketing approval of and commercialize products successfully.

Competition to hire from this limited pool is intense, and we may be unable to hire, train, retain or motivate these additional key employees on acceptable terms given the competition among numerous pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies for similar personnel. We also experience competition for the hiring of scientific and clinical personnel from universities and research institutions.

We rely on consultants and advisors, including scientific and clinical advisors, to assist us in formulating our research and development and commercialization strategy. Our consultants and advisors may be employed by other entities and may have commitments under consulting or advisory contracts with those entities that may limit their availability to us. If we are unable to continue to attract and retain highly qualified personnel, our ability to develop and commercialize our product candidates will be limited.

***Our employees, independent contractors, consultants, collaborators and contract research organizations may engage in misconduct or other improper activities, including non-compliance with regulatory standards and requirements, which could cause significant liability for us and harm our reputation.***

We are exposed to the risk that our employees, independent contractors, consultants, collaborators and contract research organizations may engage in fraud or other misconduct, including intentional failures to comply with FDA regulations or similar regulations of comparable non-U.S. regulatory authorities, to provide accurate information to the FDA or comparable non-U.S. regulatory authorities, to comply with manufacturing standards we have established, to comply with federal and state healthcare fraud and abuse laws and regulations and similar laws and regulations established and enforced by comparable non-U.S. regulatory authorities, to report financial information or data accurately or to disclose unauthorized activities to us. Such misconduct could also involve the improper use or misrepresentation of information obtained in the course of clinical trials, creating fraudulent data in our preclinical studies or clinical trials or illegal misappropriation of product materials, which could result in regulatory sanctions and serious harm to our reputation. It is not always possible to identify and deter misconduct, and the precautions we take to detect and prevent this activity may not be effective in controlling unknown or unmanaged risks or losses or in protecting us from governmental investigations or other actions or lawsuits stemming from a failure to be in compliance with such laws, standards or regulations. Additionally, we are subject to the risk that a person or government could allege such fraud or other misconduct, even if none occurred. If any such actions are instituted against us, and we are not successful in defending ourselves or asserting our rights, those actions could have a significant impact on our business and results of operations, including the imposition of significant fines or other sanctions.

***We expect to expand our organization and, as a result, we may encounter difficulties in managing our growth, which could disrupt our operations.***

We expect to experience significant growth in the number of our employees and the scope of our operations, particularly in the areas of drug manufacturing, regulatory affairs and sales, marketing and distribution, as well as to support our public company operations. To manage these growth activities, we must continue to implement and improve our managerial, operational and financial systems, expand our facilities and continue to recruit and train additional qualified personnel. Our management may need to devote a significant amount of its attention to managing these growth activities. Moreover, our expected growth could require us to relocate to a different geographic area of the country. Due to our limited financial resources and the limited experience of our management team in managing a company with such anticipated growth, we may not be able to effectively manage the expansion or relocation of our operations, retain key employees, or identify, recruit and train additional qualified personnel. Our inability to manage the expansion or relocation of our operations effectively may result in weaknesses in our infrastructure, give rise to operational mistakes, loss of business opportunities, loss of employees and reduced productivity among remaining employees. Our expected growth could also require significant capital expenditures and may divert financial resources from other projects, such as the development of additional product candidates. If we are unable to effectively manage our expected growth, our expenses may increase more than expected, our ability to generate revenues could be reduced and we may not be able to implement our business strategy, including the successful commercialization of our product candidates.

## [Table of Contents](#)

***We have operated as a private company and have no experience attempting to comply with public company reporting and other obligations. Taking steps to comply with these requirements will increase our costs and require additional management resources, and do not ensure that we will be able to satisfy them.***

As a result of becoming a public company, compliance with the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, as well as other rules and regulations promulgated by the SEC and The Nasdaq Stock Market LLC, or Nasdaq, will result in significant initial and continuing legal, accounting, administrative and other costs and expenses, particularly after we are no longer an “emerging growth company.” The listing requirements of The Nasdaq Global Select Market require that we satisfy certain corporate governance requirements relating to director independence, distributing annual and interim reports, stockholder meetings, approvals and voting, soliciting proxies, conflicts of interest and a code of conduct. Our management and other personnel will need to devote a substantial amount of time to ensure that we comply with all of these requirements.

After this offering, we will be subject to Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, or Section 404, and the related rules of the SEC that generally require our management and independent registered public accounting firm to report on the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting. Beginning with the second annual report that we will be required to file with the SEC, Section 404 requires an annual management assessment of the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting. However, for so long as we remain an “emerging growth company” as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012, or the JOBS Act, we intend to take advantage of certain exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to public companies that are not emerging growth companies, including, but not limited to, not being required to comply with the auditor attestation requirements of Section 404. Once we are no longer an “emerging growth company” or, if before such date, we opt to no longer take advantage of the applicable exemption, we will be required to include an opinion from our independent registered public accounting firm on the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting.

To date, we have never conducted a review of our internal control for the purpose of providing the reports required by these rules. During the course of our review and testing, we may identify deficiencies and be unable to remediate them before we must provide the required reports. Furthermore, if we have a material weakness in our internal control over financial reporting, we may not detect errors on a timely basis and our financial statements may be materially misstated. We or our independent registered public accounting firm may not be able to conclude on an ongoing basis that we have effective internal control over financial reporting, which could harm our operating results, cause investors to lose confidence in our reported financial information and cause the trading price of our stock to fall. In addition, as a public company we will be required to timely file accurate quarterly and annual reports with the SEC under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, or the Exchange Act, as amended. Any failure to report our financial results on an accurate and timely basis could result in sanctions, lawsuits, delisting of our shares from The Nasdaq Global Select Market or other adverse consequences.

***Our business and operations would suffer in the event of computer system failures.***

Despite the implementation of security measures, our internal computer systems, and those of other third parties on which we rely are vulnerable to damage from computer viruses, unauthorized access, natural disasters, terrorism, war and telecommunication and electrical failures. If such an event were to occur and cause interruptions in our operations, it could result in a material disruption of our drug development programs. For example, the loss of clinical trial data from completed or ongoing or planned clinical trials could result in delays in our regulatory approval efforts and significantly increase our costs to recover or reproduce the data. To the extent that any disruption or security breach were to result in a loss of or damage to our data or applications, or inappropriate disclosure of confidential or proprietary information, we could incur liability and the further development of our product candidates could be delayed.

### **Risks Related to Our Common Stock and this Offering**

***An active trading market for our common stock may not develop or be sustainable. If an active trading market does not develop, investors may not be able to resell their shares at or above the initial public offering price and our ability to raise capital in the future may be impaired.***

Prior to this offering, there has been no public market for our common stock. The initial public offering price for our common stock was determined through negotiations with the underwriters. This price may not reflect the price at

## [Table of Contents](#)

which investors in the market will be willing to buy and sell our shares following this offering. Although we have been approved to list our common stock on The Nasdaq Global Select Market, subject to notice of issuance, an active trading market for our shares may never develop or, if developed, be maintained following this offering. If an active market for our common stock does not develop or is not maintained, it may be difficult for you to sell shares you purchase in this offering without depressing the market price for the shares or at all. An inactive trading market may also impair our ability to raise capital to continue to fund operations by selling shares and may impair our ability to acquire other companies or technologies by using our shares as consideration.

***If you purchase shares of common stock in this offering, you will suffer immediate dilution in the net tangible book value of your investment.***

The initial public offering price of our common stock is substantially higher than the net tangible book value per share of our common stock. Therefore, if you purchase shares of our common stock in this offering, you will pay a price per share that substantially exceeds our net tangible book value per share after this offering. Based on the initial public offering price of \$14.00 per share, and after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us, you will experience immediate dilution of \$8.28 per share, representing the difference between our pro forma net tangible book value per share after giving effect to this offering and the initial public offering price. Purchasers of common stock in this offering will have contributed approximately 56% of the aggregate price paid by all purchasers of our stock and will own approximately 36% of our common stock outstanding after this offering, excluding any shares of our common stock that they may have acquired prior to this offering. Furthermore, if the underwriters exercise their option to purchase additional shares or our previously issued options to acquire common stock at prices below the initial public offering price are exercised, you will experience further dilution. For additional information on the dilution that you will experience immediately after this offering, see the section titled "Dilution."

***The trading price of our common stock is likely to be highly volatile, which could result in substantial losses for purchasers of our common stock in this offering.***

Our stock price is likely to be highly volatile. The stock market in general and the market for smaller pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies in particular have experienced extreme volatility that has often been unrelated to the operating performance of particular companies. As a result of this volatility, you may not be able to sell your common stock at or above the initial public offering price and you may lose some or all of your investment. The market price for our common stock may be influenced by many factors, including:

- the timing and results of applications for FDA approval of Furoscix and other regulatory actions with respect to our product candidates;
- the pricing and reimbursement of Furoscix, if approved, and of other product candidates that may be approved;
- regulatory actions with respect to our competitors' products and product candidates;
- the success of existing or new competitive products or technologies;
- announcements by us or our competitors of significant acquisitions, strategic partnerships, joint ventures, collaborations or capital commitments;
- the timing and results of clinical trials of our pipeline product candidates;
- commencement or termination of collaborations for our development programs;
- failure or discontinuation of any of our development programs;
- results of clinical trials of product candidates of our competitors;
- regulatory or legal developments in the United States and other countries;
- developments or disputes concerning patent applications, issued patents or other proprietary rights, including proprietary rights that we in-license from third parties, such as Sensile;
- the recruitment or departure of key personnel;
- the level of expenses related to any of our product candidates or clinical development programs;
- the results of our efforts to develop additional product candidates or products;
- actual or anticipated changes in estimates as to financial results or development timelines;
- announcement or expectation of additional financing efforts;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- sales of our common stock by us, our insiders or other stockholders;
- variations in our financial results or those of companies that are perceived to be similar to us;
- changes in estimates or recommendations by securities analysts, if any, that cover our stock;
- changes in the structure of healthcare payment systems;
- market conditions in the pharmaceutical and biotechnology sectors;
- general economic, industry and market conditions; and
- the other factors described in this “Risk Factors” section.

Additionally, in the past, securities class action litigation has often been brought against a company following a decline in the market price of its securities. This risk is especially relevant for us because pharmaceutical companies have experienced significant stock price volatility in recent years. If we face such litigation, it could result in substantial costs and a diversion of management’s attention and resources, which could harm our business.

***We have broad discretion in the use of the net proceeds from this offering and may invest or spend the proceeds in ways with which you do not agree and in ways that may not yield a return on your investment.***

Although we currently intend to use the net proceeds from this offering in the manner described in the section titled “Use of Proceeds” in this prospectus, our management will have broad discretion in the application of the net proceeds from this offering and could spend the proceeds in ways that do not improve our results of operations or enhance the value of our common stock. You will not have the opportunity to influence our decisions on how to use our net proceeds from this offering. The failure by our management to apply these funds effectively could result in financial losses that could harm our business, cause the price of our common stock to decline and delay the development of our product candidates. Pending their use, we may invest the net proceeds from this offering in a manner that does not produce income or that loses value.

***We are an “emerging growth company,” and the reduced disclosure requirements applicable to emerging growth companies may make our common stock less attractive to investors.***

We are an “emerging growth company,” as defined in the JOBS Act, and may remain an emerging growth company for up to five years. For so long as we remain an emerging growth company, we are permitted and plan to rely on exemptions from certain disclosure requirements that are applicable to other public companies that are not emerging growth companies. These exemptions include not being required to comply with the auditor attestation requirements of Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, or SOX Section 404, not being required to comply with any requirement that may be adopted by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board regarding mandatory audit firm rotation or a supplement to the auditor’s report providing additional information about the audit and the financial statements, reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation and exemptions from the requirements of holding a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation and stockholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved. In this prospectus, we have provided only two years of audited financial statements and have not included all of the executive compensation related information that would be required if we were not an emerging growth company. We cannot predict whether investors will find our common stock less attractive if we rely on these exemptions. If some investors find our common stock less attractive as a result, there may be a less active trading market for our common stock and our stock price may be more volatile.

In addition, the JOBS Act provides that an emerging growth company can take advantage of an extended transition period for complying with new or revised accounting standards. This allows an emerging growth company to delay the adoption of certain accounting standards until those standards would otherwise apply to private companies. We have irrevocably elected not to avail ourselves of this exemption from new or revised accounting standards and, therefore, we will be subject to the same new or revised accounting standards as other public companies that are not emerging growth companies.

***A significant portion of our total outstanding shares is restricted from immediate resale but may be sold into the market in the near future, which could cause the market price of our common stock to decline significantly, even if our business is doing well.***

Sales of a substantial number of shares of our common stock in the public market could occur at any time. These sales, or the perception in the market that the holders of a large number of shares of common stock intend to sell shares, could reduce the market price of our common stock. Following this offering, we will have 17,610,151

## [Table of Contents](#)

shares of common stock outstanding based on the 1,083,380 shares of our common stock outstanding as of September 30, 2017 (of which 852 shares are subject to a right of repurchase by us pursuant to a stock restriction agreement between us and the holders of such shares), and after giving effect to the conversion of all outstanding shares of our preferred stock into 10,126,771 shares of our common stock upon the closing of this offering. Of these shares, the 6,400,000 shares sold by us in this offering may be resold in the public market immediately, unless purchased by our affiliates. The remaining 11,210,151 shares are currently restricted under securities laws or as a result of lock-up or other agreements, but will be able to be sold after this offering as described in the "Shares Eligible for Future Sale" section of this prospectus. The representatives of the underwriters may release these stockholders from their lock-up agreements with the underwriters at any time and without notice, which would allow for earlier sales of shares in the public market.

Moreover, after this offering, holders of an aggregate of 10,126,771 shares of our common stock will have rights, subject to conditions, to require us to file registration statements covering their shares or to include their shares in registration statements that we may file for ourselves or other stockholders. We also plan to register all shares of common stock that we may issue under our equity compensation plans. Once we register these shares, they can be freely sold in the public market upon issuance and once vested, subject to volume limitations applicable to affiliates and the lock-up agreements. If these additional shares are sold, or if it is perceived that they will be sold, in the public market, the trading price of our common stock could decline.

### ***We might not be able to utilize a significant portion of our net operating loss carryforwards and research and development tax credit carryforwards.***

As of December 31, 2016, we had federal and state net operating loss carryforwards of \$9.1 million and \$8.3 million, respectively, and federal and state research and development tax credit carryforwards of \$0.6 million and \$0.2 million, respectively. If not utilized, the net operating loss carryforwards will expire at various dates through 2036. If not utilized, the research and development credits expire at various dates through 2036. These net operating loss and tax credit carryforwards could expire unused and be unavailable to offset future income tax liabilities. In addition, under Section 382 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and corresponding provisions of state law, if a corporation undergoes an "ownership change," which is generally defined as a greater than 50% change, by value, in its equity ownership over a three-year period, the corporation's ability to use its pre-change net operating loss carryforwards and other pre-change tax attributes to offset its post-change income may be limited. We may experience ownership changes in the future as a result of subsequent shifts in our stock ownership, including this offering, some of which may be outside of our control. If an ownership change occurs and our ability to use our historical net operating loss and tax credit carryforwards is materially limited, or if our research and development carryforwards are adjusted, it would harm our future operating results by effectively increasing our future tax obligations.

### ***We do not anticipate paying any cash dividends on our capital stock in the foreseeable future. Accordingly, stockholders must rely on capital appreciation, if any, for any return on their investment.***

We have never declared nor paid cash dividends on our capital stock. We currently plan to retain all of our future earnings, if any, to finance the operation, development and growth of our business. In addition, the terms of any of our existing, and potentially future, debt or credit agreements will preclude us from paying dividends. For example, under our loan and security agreement with Solar Capital Ltd. and Silicon Valley Bank, we are restricted from paying any dividends or making any distributions on account of our capital stock. As a result, capital appreciation, if any, of our common stock will be your sole source of gain for the foreseeable future.

### ***Concentration of ownership of our common stock among our existing executive officers, directors and principal stockholders may prevent new investors from influencing significant corporate decisions.***

Based upon shares outstanding as of September 30, 2017, and after giving effect to the conversion of all outstanding shares of preferred stock into 10,126,771 shares of our common stock and not accounting for any shares purchased in this offering by certain of our existing stockholders, including certain affiliates of our directors, who have agreed to purchase an aggregate of approximately \$35 million in this offering, our executive officers and directors, combined with our stockholders who owned more than 5% of our outstanding common stock before this offering and their affiliates, will, in the aggregate, beneficially own shares representing approximately 63.3% of our common stock.

## [Table of Contents](#)

As a result, if these stockholders were to choose to act together, they would be able to control all matters submitted to our stockholders for approval, as well as our management and affairs. For example, these persons, if they choose to act together, would control the election of directors and approval of any merger, consolidation or sale of all or substantially all of our assets. This concentration of ownership control may:

- delay, defer or prevent a change in control;
- entrench our management or the board of directors; or
- impede a merger, consolidation, takeover or other business combination involving us that other stockholders may desire.

Some of these persons or entities may have interests different than yours. For example, because many of these stockholders purchased their shares at prices substantially below the price at which shares are being sold in this offering and have held their shares for a longer period, they may be more interested in selling our company to an acquirer than other investors or they may want us to pursue strategies that deviate from the interests of other stockholders.

### ***Provisions in our corporate charter documents and under Delaware law may prevent or frustrate attempts by our stockholders to change our management or hinder efforts to acquire a controlling interest in us.***

Provisions in our corporate charter and our bylaws that will become effective upon the closing of this offering may discourage, delay or prevent a merger, acquisition or other change in control of us that stockholders may consider favorable, including transactions in which you might otherwise receive a premium for your shares. These provisions could also limit the price that investors might be willing to pay in the future for shares of our common stock, thereby depressing the market price of our common stock. In addition, because our board of directors is responsible for appointing the members of our management team, these provisions may frustrate or prevent any attempts by our stockholders to replace or remove our current management by making it more difficult for stockholders to replace members of our board of directors. Among other things, these provisions:

- establish a classified board of directors such that all members of the board are not elected at one time;
- allow the authorized number of our directors to be changed only by resolution of our board of directors;
- limit the manner in which stockholders can remove directors from the board;
- establish advance notice requirements for nominations for election to the board of directors or for proposing matters that can be acted on at stockholder meetings;
- require that stockholder actions must be effected at a duly called stockholder meeting and prohibit actions by our stockholders by written consent;
- limit who may call a special meeting of stockholders;
- authorize our board of directors to issue preferred stock without stockholder approval, which could be used to institute a "poison pill" that would work to dilute the stock ownership of a potential hostile acquirer, effectively preventing acquisitions that have not been approved by our board of directors; and
- require the approval of the holders of at least two-thirds of the votes that all our stockholders would be entitled to cast to amend or repeal certain provisions of our charter or bylaws.

Moreover, because we are incorporated in Delaware, we are governed by the provisions of Section 203 of the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware, which prohibits a person who owns in excess of 15% of our outstanding voting stock from merging or combining with us for a period of three years after the date of the transaction in which the person acquired in excess of 15% of our outstanding voting stock, unless the merger or combination is approved in a prescribed manner. This could discourage, delay or prevent someone from acquiring us or merging with us, whether or not it is desired by, or beneficial to, our stockholders. This could also have the effect of discouraging others from making tender offers for our common stock, including transactions that may be in your best interests. These provisions may also prevent changes in our management or limit the price that investors are willing to pay for our stock.

### ***If securities or industry analysts do not publish research or publish inaccurate or unfavorable research about our business, our share price and trading volume could decline.***

The trading market for our common stock will likely depend in part on the research and reports that securities or industry analysts publish about us or our business. We do not have any control over these analysts. We do not

---

[Table of Contents](#)

currently have research coverage, and there can be no assurance that analysts will cover us, or provide favorable coverage. Securities or industry analysts may elect not to provide research coverage of our common stock after this offering, and such lack of research coverage may negatively impact the market price of our common stock. In the event we do have analyst coverage, if one or more analysts downgrade our stock or change their opinion of our stock, our share price would likely decline. In addition, if one or more analysts cease coverage of our company or fail to regularly publish reports on us, we could lose visibility in the financial markets, which could cause our share price or trading volume to decline.

## SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This prospectus, including the sections entitled “Prospectus Summary,” “Risk Factors,” “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” and “Business,” contains express or implied forward-looking statements that are based on our management’s belief and assumptions and on information currently available to our management. Although we believe that the expectations reflected in these forward-looking statements are reasonable, these statements relate to future events or our future operational or financial performance, and involve known and unknown risks, uncertainties and other factors that may cause our actual results, performance or achievements to be materially different from any future results, performance or achievements expressed or implied by these forward-looking statements. Forward-looking statements in this prospectus include, but are not limited to, statements about:

- the timing or likelihood of approval by the FDA of our new drug application for Furoscix;
- the timing or likelihood of other regulatory filings and approvals, including any approval to market and sell subcutaneous ceftriaxone;
- the commercialization, marketing and manufacturing of Furoscix or any other of our product candidates, if approved;
- the pricing and reimbursement of Furoscix or any other of our product candidates, if approved;
- the rate and degree of market acceptance and clinical utility of Furoscix or any other of our product candidates for which we receive marketing approval;
- the initiation, timing, progress and results of our research and development programs, including subcutaneous ceftriaxone and future preclinical and clinical studies;
- our ability to advance any other product candidates into, and successfully complete, clinical studies and obtain regulatory approval for them;
- our ability to identify additional product candidates;
- the implementation of our strategic plans for our business, product candidates and technology;
- the scope of protection we are able to establish and maintain for intellectual property rights covering Furoscix or any other of our product candidates and technology;
- our expectations related to the use of proceeds from this offering, and estimates of our expenses, future revenues, capital requirements and our needs for additional financing;
- our ability to manufacture, or the ability of third parties to deliver, sufficient quantities of components and drug product for commercialization of Furoscix or any other of our product candidates;
- our ability to maintain and establish collaborations;
- our financial performance;
- developments relating to our competitors and our industry, including the impact of government regulation; and
- other risks and uncertainties, including those listed under the caption “Risk Factors.”

In some cases, forward-looking statements can be identified by terminology such as “may,” “should,” “expects,” “intends,” “plans,” “anticipates,” “believes,” “estimates,” “predicts,” “potential,” “continue” or the negative of these terms or other comparable terminology. These statements are only predictions. You should not place undue reliance on forward-looking statements because they involve known and unknown risks, uncertainties and other factors, which are, in some cases, beyond our control and which could materially affect results. Factors that may cause actual results to differ materially from current expectations include, among other things, those listed under the section entitled “Risk Factors” and elsewhere in this prospectus. If one or more of these risks or uncertainties occur, or if our underlying assumptions prove to be incorrect, actual events or results may vary significantly from those implied or projected by the forward-looking statements. No forward-looking statement is a guarantee of future performance. You should read this prospectus and the documents that we reference in this prospectus and have filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission as exhibits to the registration statement, of which this prospectus is a part, completely and with the understanding that our actual future results may be materially different from any future results expressed or implied by these forward-looking statements.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

The forward-looking statements in this prospectus represent our views as of the date of this prospectus. We anticipate that subsequent events and developments will cause our views to change. However, while we may elect to update these forward-looking statements at some point in the future, we have no current intention of doing so except to the extent required by applicable law. You should therefore not rely on these forward-looking statements as representing our views as of any date subsequent to the date of this prospectus.

This prospectus includes statistical and other industry and market data that we obtained from industry publications and research, surveys and studies conducted by third parties. Industry publications and third-party research, surveys and studies generally indicate that their information has been obtained from sources believed to be reliable, although they do not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information. We are responsible for all of the disclosure contained in this prospectus, and we believe these industry publications and third-party research, surveys and studies are reliable.

## USE OF PROCEEDS

We estimate that our net proceeds from the sale of shares of our common stock in this offering will be approximately \$81.2 million, or \$93.7 million if the underwriters exercise in full their option to purchase additional shares, based on the initial public offering price of \$14.00 per share, and after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us.

We currently intend to use the net proceeds from this offering, together with our existing unrestricted cash, as follows:

- approximately \$35 million to \$42 million for the pre-commercial planning and commercialization of Furoscix, if approved, including the development of our sales and marketing infrastructure;
- approximately \$6 million to \$8 million for the automation necessary to increase manufacturing capacity for our sc2Wear Infusor;
- approximately \$10 million to \$25 million for research and development, including for our infectious diseases program; and
- the remaining for working capital and other general corporate purposes.

Based on our current plans, we believe our existing unrestricted cash, together with the net proceeds from this offering, will be sufficient to fund our operations for at least 24 months following this offering.

This expected use of the net proceeds from this offering represents our intentions based upon our current plans and business conditions. For example, we may use a portion of the net proceeds for the acquisition of businesses or technologies to continue to build our pipeline, our research and development capabilities and our intellectual property position, although we currently have no agreements, commitments or understandings with respect to any such transaction. We cannot predict with certainty all of the particular uses for the net proceeds to be received upon the completion of this offering or the amounts that we will actually spend on the uses set forth above. The amounts and timing of our actual expenditures may vary significantly depending on numerous factors, including the results of the review by the FDA of our NDA for Furoscix, the progress of our research and development, the status of and results from non-clinical studies or clinical trials we may commence in the future, as well as any collaborations that we may enter into with third parties for our product candidates or strategic opportunities that become available to us, and any unforeseen cash needs. As a result, our management will retain broad discretion over the allocation of the net proceeds from this offering.

Pending our use of proceeds from this offering, we intend to invest the net proceeds in a variety of capital preservation instruments, including short-term, investment-grade, interest-bearing instruments and U.S. government securities.

## DIVIDEND POLICY

We have never declared or paid any cash dividends on our capital stock. We currently intend to retain all available funds and any future earnings to support our operations and finance the growth and development of our business. We do not intend to pay cash dividends on our common stock for the foreseeable future. Any future determination related to dividend policy will be made at the discretion of our board of directors and will depend on, among other factors, our results of operations, financial condition, capital requirements, contractual restrictions, business prospects and other factors our board of directors may deem relevant. Investors should not purchase our common stock with the expectation of receiving cash dividends. In addition, under our loan and security agreement with Solar Capital Ltd. and Silicon Valley Bank, we are restricted from paying any dividends or making any distributions on account of our capital stock. See “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations—Liquidity and Capital Resources” for a description of the restrictions on our ability to pay dividends.

## CAPITALIZATION

The following table sets forth our cash and restricted cash and total capitalization as of September 30, 2017:

- on an actual basis;
- on a pro forma basis to give effect to: (i) the automatic conversion of all outstanding shares of our convertible preferred stock as of September 30, 2017 into an aggregate of 10,126,771 shares of common stock immediately prior to the closing of this offering; (ii) payment by us of \$400,000 pursuant to our Exit Fee Agreement with Solar Capital Ltd. and Silicon Valley Bank immediately prior to the closing of this offering; and (iii) the effectiveness of our amended and restated certificate of incorporation upon the closing of this offering; and
- on a pro forma as adjusted basis to give effect to: (i) the pro forma adjustments set forth above and (ii) the sale and issuance of 6,400,000 shares of common stock in this offering, at the initial public offering price of \$14.00 per share after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us.

You should read this table together with “Use of Proceeds,” “Selected Financial Data,” “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” and our financial statements and related notes included elsewhere in this prospectus.

(in thousands, except shares and per share data)	AS OF SEPTEMBER 30, 2017		
	ACTUAL	PRO FORMA (unaudited)	PRO FORMA AS ADJUSTED
Cash and restricted cash (1)	\$ 32,017	\$ 31,617	\$ 113,193
Term loan	\$ 9,360	\$ 9,360	\$ 9,360
Derivative liability	394	—	
Convertible preferred stock, \$0.0001 par value; 72,712,255 shares authorized, 72,712,255 shares issued and outstanding, actual; no shares authorized, issued or outstanding, pro forma and pro forma as adjusted	73,094	—	—
Stockholders' (deficit) equity:			
Preferred stock, \$0.0001 par value; no shares authorized, issued or outstanding, actual; 10,000,000 shares authorized, no shares issued or outstanding, pro forma and pro forma as adjusted			
Common stock, \$0.0001 par value; 95,000,000 shares authorized, 1,082,528 shares issued and outstanding, actual; 150,000,000 shares authorized, 11,209,299 shares issued and outstanding, pro forma; 150,000,000 shares authorized, 17,609,299 shares issued and outstanding, pro forma as adjusted (2)	—	1	2
Additional paid-in capital	6,703	79,796	160,981
Accumulated deficit	(60,137)	(60,143)	(60,143)
Total stockholders' (deficit) equity	(53,434)	19,654	100,840
Total capitalization	<u>\$ 29,414</u>	<u>\$ 29,014</u>	<u>\$ 110,200</u>

(1) Includes \$182,000 of restricted cash related to a letter of credit issued as a security deposit in connection with our office lease in Burlington, Massachusetts.

(2) Total shares issued and outstanding does not include an additional 852 shares subject to a right of repurchase by us pursuant to a stock restriction agreement between us and the holders of such shares.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The table above excludes the following shares:

- 1,046,879 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of stock options outstanding as of September 30, 2017, with a weighted-average exercise price of \$4.76 per share;
- 124,437 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of stock options granted after September 30, 2017, with a weighted average exercise price of \$4.22 per share;
- an additional 159,806 shares of common stock reserved for issuance under our 2014 Stock Incentive Plan as of September 30, 2017, which shares will no longer be reserved following this offering;
- an additional 1,430,000 shares of common stock that were made available for future issuance under our 2017 Stock Option and Incentive Plan upon the effectiveness of the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part; and
- an additional 205,000 shares of common stock that were made available for future issuance under our 2017 Employee Stock Purchase Plan upon the effectiveness of the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part.

## DILUTION

If you invest in our common stock in this offering, your ownership interest will be immediately diluted to the extent of the difference between the initial public offering price per share of our common stock and the pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value per share of our common stock immediately after this offering.

As of September 30, 2017, our historical net tangible book value (deficit) was \$(54.5) million, or \$(50.36) per share of our common stock. Net tangible book value (deficit) per share represents our total tangible assets (total assets less intangible assets) less total liabilities and preferred stock, divided by the total number of our outstanding shares of common stock.

Our pro forma net tangible book value as of September 30, 2017 was approximately \$18.6 million, or \$1.65 per share of pro forma common stock. Pro forma net tangible book value per share represents the amount of our total tangible assets (total assets less intangible assets) less total liabilities, divided by the total number of outstanding shares of our common stock, after giving effect to (i) the automatic conversion of all outstanding shares of our convertible preferred stock as of September 30, 2017 into an aggregate of 10,126,771 shares of common stock and (ii) the payment by us of \$400,000 pursuant to our Exit Fee Agreement with Solar Capital Ltd. and Silicon Valley Bank, in each case immediately prior to the closing of this offering.

After giving effect to (i) the pro forma adjustments set forth above and (ii) the sale and issuance of 6,400,000 shares of common stock in this offering, at the initial public offering price of \$14.00 per share, after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us, our pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value as of September 30, 2017 would have been approximately \$100.8 million, or \$5.72 per share of our common stock. This represents an immediate increase in pro forma net tangible book value of approximately \$4.07 per share to our existing stockholders and an immediate dilution of \$8.28 per share to investors.

Dilution per share to investors participating in this offering is determined by subtracting pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value per share after this offering from the initial public offering price per share paid by investors participating in this offering. The following table illustrates this dilution (without giving effect to any exercise by the underwriters of their option to purchase additional shares):

---

Initial public offering price per share		\$14.00
Historical net tangible book value per share as of September 30, 2017	\$(50.36)	
Increase in net tangible book value per share attributable to pro forma adjustments described above	<u>52.01</u>	
Pro forma net tangible book value per share as of September 30, 2017	1.65	
Increase in pro forma net tangible book value per share attributable to investors participating in this offering	<u>4.07</u>	
Pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value per share after this offering		5.72
Dilution in pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value per share to new investors participating in this offering		<u>\$ 8.28</u>

---

If the underwriters exercise their option to purchase additional shares in full, our pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value per share after this offering would be approximately \$6.10 per share, and the dilution in pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value per share to new investors participating in this offering would be \$7.90 per share.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The following table summarizes, on a pro forma as adjusted basis as of September 30, 2017, the differences between the number of shares of common stock purchased from us, the total cash consideration and the average price per share paid to us by existing stockholders and by new investors purchasing shares in this offering, at the initial public offering price of \$14.00 per share, before deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us:

	SHARES PURCHASED		TOTAL CONSIDERATION		AVERAGE PRICE PER SHARE
	NUMBER	PERCENT	AMOUNT	PERCENT	
Existing stockholders	11,210,151	64%	\$ 70,899,167	44%	\$ 6.32
New investors participating in this offering	6,400,000	36%	89,600,000	56%	\$ 14.00
Total	17,610,151	100 %	\$160,499,167	100 %	

Certain of our existing stockholders, including certain affiliates of our directors, have agreed to purchase an aggregate of approximately \$35 million of shares of our common stock in this offering at the initial public offering price. The table above does not reflect the purchases by such stockholders in this offering.

If the underwriters exercise their option to purchase additional shares in full, the number of shares of common stock held by existing stockholders will be reduced to 60% of the total number of shares of common stock to be outstanding after this offering, and the number of shares of common stock held by investors participating in this offering will be increased to 40% of the total number of shares of common stock to be outstanding after this offering.

The above discussion and tables are based on 1,083,380 shares of common stock issued and outstanding as of September 30, 2017 (of which 852 shares are subject to a right of repurchase by us pursuant to a stock restriction agreement between us and the holders of such shares) and gives effect to the conversion of all of our outstanding preferred stock into 10,126,771 shares of our common stock immediately prior to the closing of this offering and excludes:

- 1,046,879 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of stock options outstanding as of September 30, 2017, with a weighted average exercise price of \$4.76 per share;
- 124,437 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of stock options granted after September 30, 2017, with a weighted average exercise price of \$4.22 per share;
- an additional 159,806 shares of common stock reserved for issuance under our 2014 Stock Incentive Plan as of September 30, 2017, which shares will no longer be reserved following this offering;
- an additional 1,430,000 shares of common stock that were made available for future issuance under our 2017 Stock Option and Incentive Plan upon the effectiveness of the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part); and
- an additional 205,000 shares of common stock that were made available for future issuance under our 2017 Employee Stock Purchase Plan upon the effectiveness of the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part.

To the extent that outstanding options are exercised or shares are issued under our equity incentive plans, you will experience further dilution. In addition, we may choose to raise additional capital due to market conditions or strategic considerations even if we believe we have sufficient funds for our current or future operating plans. To the extent that additional capital is raised through the sale of equity or convertible debt securities, the issuance of these securities may result in further dilution to our stockholders.

**SELECTED FINANCIAL DATA**

The selected statements of operations data for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2016 and the balance sheet data as of December 31, 2015 and 2016 are derived from our audited financial statements included elsewhere in this prospectus. The selected statement of operations data for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2017 and the balance sheet data as of September 30, 2017 have been derived from our unaudited interim condensed financial statements included elsewhere in this prospectus. The unaudited interim condensed financial statements were prepared on a basis consistent with our audited financial statements and reflect, in the opinion of management, all adjustments of a normal recurring nature that are necessary for the fair presentation of our financial position as of September 30, 2017 and our results of operations for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2017. Our historical results are not necessarily indicative of the results that may be expected in any future period, and the results for the nine months ended September 30, 2017 are not necessarily indicative of results to be expected for the full year ending December 31, 2017, or any other period.

The following selected financial data should be read with “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” and our financial statements and related notes included elsewhere in this prospectus. The selected financial data in this section are not intended to replace the financial statements and are qualified in their entirety by the financial statements and related notes included elsewhere in this prospectus.

(in thousands, except share and per share data)	YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31,		NINE MONTHS ENDED SEPTEMBER 30,	
	2015	2016	2016	2017
				(unaudited)
<b>Statements of operations data:</b>				
Operating expenses:				
Research and development	\$ 8,267	\$ 11,856	\$ 8,839	\$ 10,615
General and administrative	2,577	6,054	5,111	6,113
Total operating expenses	<u>10,844</u>	<u>17,910</u>	<u>13,950</u>	<u>16,728</u>
Loss from operations	(10,844)	(17,910)	(13,950)	(16,728)
Interest expense, net	—	(6,505)	(5,120)	(291)
Fair value adjustments to Series A purchase rights	394	—	—	—
Other (expense) income, net	(68)	38	11	82
Net loss and comprehensive loss	<u>\$ (10,518)</u>	<u>\$ (24,377)</u>	<u>\$ (19,059)</u>	<u>\$ (16,937)</u>
Net loss per share, basic and diluted (1)	<u>\$ (13.78)</u>	<u>\$ (25.01)</u>	<u>\$ (20.20)</u>	<u>\$ (15.76)</u>
Weighted-average common shares outstanding, basic and diluted (1)	<u>763,112</u>	<u>974,660</u>	<u>943,501</u>	<u>1,074,702</u>
Pro forma net loss per share, basic and diluted (unaudited) (1)		<u>\$ (6.11)</u>		<u>\$ (1.51)</u>
Pro forma weighted-average common shares outstanding, basic and diluted (unaudited) (1)		<u>3,989,846</u>		<u>11,201,473</u>

(1) See Notes 2 and 3 to our audited financial statements and Notes 2 and 4 to our unaudited interim condensed financial statements included elsewhere in this prospectus for an explanation of the calculations of our basic and diluted net loss per share, basic and diluted pro forma net loss per share and the shares used in computing basic and diluted net loss per share and basic and diluted pro forma net loss per share.

[Table of Contents](#)

---

(in thousands)	AS OF DECEMBER 31,		AS OF
	2015	2016	SEPTEMBER 30, 2017 (unaudited)
<b>Balance sheet data:</b>			
Cash and restricted cash (1)	\$ 1,573	\$ 39,282	\$ 32,017
Working capital (2)	(187)	36,004	29,106
Total assets	1,846	39,772	34,334
Term loan	—	—	9,360
Derivative liability	—	—	394
Convertible preferred stock	18,073	73,103	73,094
Accumulated deficit	(18,822)	(43,199)	(60,137)
Total stockholders' deficit	(18,240)	(37,074)	(53,434)

---

(1) Includes \$182,000 of restricted cash related to a letter of credit issued as a security deposit in connection with our office lease in Burlington, Massachusetts.

(2) We define working capital as current assets less current liabilities.

## MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

*You should read the following discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations together with our financial statements and the related notes appearing at the end of this prospectus. Some of the information contained in this discussion and analysis or set forth elsewhere in this prospectus, including information with respect to our plans and strategy for our business and related financing, includes forward-looking statements that involve risks, uncertainties and assumptions. You should read the "Special Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements" and "Risk Factors" sections of this prospectus for a discussion of important factors that could cause actual results to differ materially from the results described in or implied by the forward-looking statements contained in the following discussion and analysis.*

### OVERVIEW

We are a pharmaceutical company focused on developing and commercializing products that have the potential to transform the way therapy is delivered, advance patient care and reduce healthcare costs. Our proprietary platform is designed to enable the subcutaneous administration of therapies that have previously been limited to intravenous, or IV, delivery. By moving delivery away from the high-cost healthcare settings typically required for IV administration, we believe our technology reduces overall healthcare costs and advances the quality and convenience of care. Our lead product candidate, Furoscix, consists of our novel subcutaneous formulation of furosemide delivered via our sc2Wear Infusor and is under development for treatment of worsening, or decompensated, heart failure outside of the inpatient setting. We filed a new drug application, or NDA, for Furoscix, with the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, or FDA, in August 2017. The FDA notified us in October 2017 that it had accepted our NDA for review and assigned us a June 23, 2018 Prescription Drug User Fee Act, or PDUFA, date which is the goal date for the FDA to complete its review of our NDA. We believe Furoscix, if approved by the FDA, would allow heart failure patients to receive IV-strength diuresis with earlier discharge from, or potentially without admission to, the high-cost hospital setting.

Since our inception in February 2013, we have devoted substantially all of our resources to organizing and staffing our company, business planning, raising capital, planning for commercialization, and conducting discovery, research and development activities for our product candidates. We do not have any products approved for sale and have not generated any revenue from product sales. We have funded our operations to date primarily with proceeds from the sale of preferred stock and borrowings under convertible notes and a term loan. As of September 30, 2017, we had received net cash proceeds of \$56.7 million from sales of our preferred stock, net cash proceeds of \$13.5 million from sales of convertible notes and net proceeds of \$9.7 million from borrowings under our term loan.

For the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2016, our net loss was \$10.5 million and \$24.4 million, respectively, and for the nine months ended September 30, 2017, our net loss was \$16.9 million. We have not been profitable since inception, and as of September 30, 2017, our accumulated deficit was \$60.1 million. We expect to continue to incur net losses for the foreseeable future as we commercialize our products in the United States, including building our sales and marketing organization, continue research and development efforts, and seek regulatory approval for new product candidates and product enhancements. We will need additional funding to pay expenses relating to our operating activities, including selling, general and administrative expenses and research and development expenses. Adequate funding may not be available to us on acceptable terms, or at all. Our failure to obtain sufficient funds on acceptable terms when needed could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations or financial condition.

### COMPONENTS OF OUR RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

#### **Research and Development Expenses**

Research and development, or R&D, expenses consist of the cost of engineering, clinical trials, regulatory and medical affairs and quality assurance associated with developing our proprietary technology and product candidates. R&D expenses consist primarily of:

- employee-related expenses, including salaries, benefits, travel expense and stock-based compensation expense;
- cost of outside consultants who assist with technology development, regulatory affairs, clinical trials and medical affairs, and quality assurance;

## Table of Contents

- cost of clinical trial activities performed by third parties; and
- cost of facilities and supplies used for internal research and development and clinical activities.

We expense R&D costs as incurred. Given the emphasis to date on our lead product candidate Furoscix, our R&D expenses have not been allocated on a program-specific basis. In the future, we expect R&D expenses to increase in absolute dollars as we continue to develop new products and enhance existing products and technologies. We anticipate that our expenses will increase significantly as we:

- continue to advance our pipeline programs beyond Furoscix;
- continue our current research and development activity;
- seek to identify additional research programs and additional product candidates;
- initiate preclinical testing and clinical trials for any product candidates we identify and develop, maintain, expand and protect our intellectual property portfolio; and
- hire additional research, clinical and scientific personnel.

### General and Administrative Expenses

General and administrative, or G&A, expenses consist of employee-related expenses, including salaries, benefits, travel expense and stock-based compensation expense for personnel in executive, finance, facility operations and administrative functions. Other G&A expenses include promotional activities, marketing, conferences and trade shows, professional services fees, including legal, audit and tax fees, insurance costs, general corporate expenses and allocated facilities-related expenses. We expect to grow our sales and marketing force significantly in the near future in preparation for the commercial launch of Furoscix in the United States. As a result, we expect G&A expenses to significantly increase for the foreseeable future as we expand our sales and marketing infrastructure to drive and support anticipated growth and due to the additional legal, accounting, insurance and other expenses associated with becoming a public company.

## RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

### Comparison of Nine Months Ended September 30, 2016 and 2017

The following table summarizes our results of operations for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2017:

(in thousands)	NINE MONTHS ENDED SEPTEMBER 30		INCREASE (DECREASE)
	2016	2017	
<b>Statements of operations data:</b>			
Operating expenses:			
Research and development	\$ 8,839	\$ 10,615	\$ 1,776
General and administrative	5,111	6,113	1,002
Total operating expenses	<u>13,950</u>	<u>16,728</u>	<u>2,778</u>
Loss from operations	(13,950)	(16,728)	2,778
Other income	11	82	71
Interest income	3	170	167
Interest expense	(5,123)	(461)	(4,662)
Net loss	<u><u>\$ (19,059)</u></u>	<u><u>\$ (16,937)</u></u>	<u><u>\$ (2,122)</u></u>

*Research and development expenses.* R&D expenses increased \$1.8 million to \$10.6 million during the nine months ended September 30, 2017, compared to \$8.8 million during the nine months ended September 30, 2016. This increase was primarily attributable to a \$0.6 million increase related to contract services for device engineering, a \$1.0 million increase in regulatory consulting costs, a \$0.1 million increase in packaging costs related to clinical trials and development and a \$0.7 million increase in employee-related expenses associated with additional headcount during the nine months ended September 30, 2017. This increase was partially offset by a \$0.6 million decrease in outsourced clinical and medical affairs activity.

## [Table of Contents](#)

*General and administrative expenses.* G&A expenses increased \$1.0 million to \$6.1 million during the nine months ended September 30, 2017, compared to \$5.1 million during the nine months ended September 30, 2016. This increase was primarily attributable to a \$1.1 million increase in employee-related expenses associated with additional headcount and recruiting, a \$0.3 million increase in consulting and professional services due to the expansion of our commercial organization and a \$0.2 million increase in strategic and information technology consulting during the nine months ended September 30, 2017. This increase was partially offset by a \$0.6 million decrease in market research and tradeshow.

*Other income.* Other income increased \$71,000 to \$82,000 during the nine months ended September 30, 2017, compared to \$11,000 during the nine months ended September 30, 2016. This increase was primarily attributable foreign exchange gains due to increased activity denominated in foreign currency combined with foreign currency fluctuations.

*Interest income.* Interest income increased \$167,000 to \$170,000 during the nine months ended September 30, 2017, compared to \$3,000 during the nine months ended September 30, 2016. This increase was primarily attributable to higher cash balances during the nine months ended September 30, 2017 following our Series B preferred stock financing in December 2016. We expect interest income to increase in the foreseeable future as we anticipate cash proceeds from this offering.

*Interest expense.* Interest expense decreased \$4.7 million from the nine months ended September 30, 2016 to \$0.5 million during the nine months ended September 30, 2017. This decrease was primarily attributable to the conversion of convertible notes issued in January 2016 to Series A preferred stock in August 2016. We expect interest expense to increase due to the \$10.0 million loan entered into in May 2017 with Solar Capital Ltd. and Silicon Valley Bank.

### **Comparison of the Years Ended December 31, 2015 and 2016**

The following table summarizes our results of operations for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2016:

(in thousands)	YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31,		INCREASE (DECREASE)
	2015	2016	
<b>Statements of operations data:</b>			
Operating expenses:			
Research and development	\$ 8,267	\$ 11,856	\$ 3,589
General and administrative	2,577	6,054	3,477
Total operating expenses	<u>10,844</u>	<u>17,910</u>	<u>7,066</u>
Loss from operations	(10,844)	(17,910)	7,066
Fair value adjustments to Series A purchase rights	394	—	(394)
Other (expense) income	(68)	38	106
Interest income	—	7	7
Interest expense	—	(6,512)	6,512
Net loss	<u>\$(10,518)</u>	<u>\$(24,377)</u>	<u>\$ 13,859</u>

*Research and development expenses.* R&D expenses increased \$3.6 million to \$11.9 million during the year ended December 31, 2016, compared to \$8.3 million during the year ended December 31, 2015. This increase was primarily attributable to a \$2.8 million increase in device engineering costs related to the sc2Wear Infusor, an increase of \$0.4 million in clinical trial supplies, an increase of \$0.4 million in employee-related expenses associated with additional headcount, and an increase of \$0.2 million in quality assurance consulting. These increases were offset by a decrease in pharmaceutical development costs of \$0.2 million.

*General and administrative expenses.* G&A expenses increased \$3.5 million to \$6.1 million during the year ended December 31, 2016, compared to \$2.6 million during the year ended December 31, 2015. This increase was primarily attributable to a \$1.8 million increase in employee-related expenses associated with additional headcount and recruiting, a \$1.0 million increase in outsourced services to support the expansion of our commercial organization, a \$0.1 million increase in tradeshow and symposiums and a \$0.5 million increase in legal fees.

## [Table of Contents](#)

*Fair value adjustments to Series A purchase rights.* Fair value adjustments to Series A purchase rights decreased \$0.4 million to \$0 during the year ended December 31, 2016, compared to \$0.4 million during the year ended December 31, 2015. This decrease was due to the exercise of the Series A purchase rights in April 2015.

*Other (expense) income.* Other income increased \$106,000 to \$38,000 during the year ended December 31, 2016, compared to an expense of \$68,000 during the year ended December 31, 2015. This increase was primarily attributable to foreign exchange gains due to increased activity denominated in foreign currency combined with foreign currency fluctuations.

*Interest income.* Interest income increased \$7,000 to \$7,000 during the year ended December 31, 2016, compared to \$0 during the year ended December 31, 2015. This increase was primarily attributable to higher cash balances following our Series B preferred stock financing in December 2016.

*Interest expense.* Interest expense increased \$6.5 million to \$6.5 million during the year ended December 31, 2016. The increase in interest expense was attributable to non-cash interest related to convertible notes issued and converted into shares of our Series A preferred stock in August 2016.

## **LIQUIDITY AND CAPITAL RESOURCES**

As of September 30, 2017, we had unrestricted cash of \$31.8 million and an accumulated deficit of \$60.1 million. Our primary sources of capital have been private placements of preferred stock and the incurrence of debt. To date, we have received net cash proceeds of \$56.7 million from sales of our preferred stock, and \$13.5 million in net proceeds from convertible notes payable. Additionally, in May 2017 we incurred \$10.0 million of debt under a loan and security agreement with Solar Capital Ltd. and Silicon Valley Bank.

We expect to incur substantial additional expenditures in the next twelve months to support our ongoing activities and the commercial launch of Furoscix, if approved, in the United States. We believe existing unrestricted cash along with the proceeds from this offering is sufficient to fund these operations for at least 24 months following this offering. We expect our costs and expenses to increase in the future as we prepare for and, if approved, commence U.S. commercialization of Furoscix, including the development of a direct sales force, and as we continue to make substantial expenditures on research and development, including to increase our manufacturing capacity and for conducting clinical trials of our product candidates. Additionally, we expect to incur additional costs as a result of operating as a public company. Our future capital requirements will depend on many factors, including:

- the costs and expenses of establishing our U.S. sales and marketing infrastructure;
- the degree of success we experience in commercializing Furoscix, if approved;
- the revenue generated by sales of Furoscix, if approved and other products that may be approved;
- the pricing and reimbursement of Furoscix, if approved and of other product candidates that may be approved;
- the costs, timing and outcomes of clinical trials and regulatory reviews associated with our product candidates;
- the costs and timing of developing variations of our sc2Wear Infusor and, if necessary, obtaining FDA approval of such variations;
- the emergence of competing or complementary technological developments;
- the extent to which Furoscix, if approved, is adopted by the healthcare community;
- the number and types of future products we develop and commercialize;
- the costs of preparing, filing and prosecuting patent applications and maintaining, enforcing and defending intellectual property-related claims; and
- the extent and scope of our general and administrative expenses.

Additional financing may not be available on a timely basis on terms acceptable to us, or at all. We may raise funds in equity, royalty-based or debt financings following our initial public offering or enter into additional credit facilities in order to access funds for our capital needs. If we raise additional funds through further issuances of equity or convertible debt securities, our existing stockholders could suffer significant dilution in their percentage ownership

## [Table of Contents](#)

of our company, and any new equity securities we issue could have rights, preferences and privileges senior to those of holders of our common stock. If we raise additional funds through royalty-based financing arrangements, we will agree to relinquish rights to potentially valuable future revenue streams and may agree to covenants that restrict our operations or strategic flexibility. Any debt financing obtained by us in the future would cause us to incur additional debt service expenses and could include restrictive covenants relating to our capital raising activities and other financial and operational matters, which may make it more difficult for us to obtain additional capital and pursue business opportunities. If we are unable to obtain adequate financing or financing on terms satisfactory to us when we require it, we may terminate or delay the development of one or more of our products, delay clinical trials necessary to market our products, or delay establishment or expansion of sales and marketing capabilities or other activities necessary to commercialize our products.

### **Loan and Security Agreement**

In May 2017, we entered into a \$10.0 million loan and security agreement, or the 2017 Loan Agreement, with Solar Capital Ltd. and Silicon Valley Bank.

The interest rate under the 2017 Loan Agreement is LIBOR plus 8.45%, and there is an interest-only period until November 30, 2018, followed by a 30-month principal and interest period. Pursuant to the 2017 Loan Agreement, we provided a first priority security interest in all existing and after-acquired assets, excluding intellectual property, owned by us.

As of September 30, 2017, unpaid borrowings under the 2017 Loan Agreement totaled \$10.0 million. For the nine months ended September 30, 2017, we recorded \$78,000 related to the amortization of debt discount associated with the 2017 Loan Agreement.

The 2017 Loan Agreement allows us to voluntarily prepay all (but not less than all) of the outstanding principal at any time. A prepayment premium of 3% or 1% through the one year anniversary and thereafter, respectively, would be assessed on the outstanding principal. A final payment fee of \$250,000 is due upon the earlier to occur of the maturity date of the 2017 Loan Agreement or prepayment of such borrowings.

In an event of default under the 2017 Loan Agreement, the interest rate will be increased by 5% and the balance under the loan may become immediately due and payable at the option of the lenders.

We entered into an exit fee agreement in connection with the 2017 Loan Agreement which provides for a payment to the lenders upon the occurrence of an exit event, as defined in the agreement, including an initial public offering, equal to 4% of the loan commitment, or \$400,000.

The 2017 Loan Agreement includes restrictions on, among other things, our ability to incur additional indebtedness, change the name or location of our business, merge with or acquire other entities, pay dividends or make other distributions to holders of our capital stock, make certain investments, engage in transactions with affiliates, create liens, sell assets or pay subordinated debt.

## **CASH FLOWS**

The following table summarizes our sources and uses of cash for each of the periods presented:

(in thousands)	YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31,		NINE MONTHS ENDED SEPTEMBER 30,	
	2015	2016	2016	2017
Net cash (used in) provided by:				
Operating activities	\$ (9,640)	\$ (15,455)	\$ (10,203)	\$ (16,741)
Investing activities	(17)	(9)	(9)	(190)
Financing activities	8,017	53,173	12,534	9,666
Net (decrease) increase in cash and restricted cash	<u>\$ (1,640)</u>	<u>\$ 37,709</u>	<u>\$ 2,322</u>	<u>\$ (7,265)</u>

***Net Cash Used in Operating Activities***

During the nine months ended September 30, 2017, net cash used in operating activities was \$16.7 million, consisting primarily of a net loss of \$16.9 million and an increase in net operating assets of \$0.5 million. This was offset by non-cash charges of \$0.7 million. The increase in net operating assets consisted primarily of an increase in deferred financing costs, offset by an increase in accrued expenses related to employee-related costs. The non-cash charges primarily consisted of depreciation, stock-based compensation expense and non-cash interest expense related to amortization of debt discount associated with the 2017 Loan Agreement.

During the nine months ended September 30, 2016, net cash used in operating activities was \$10.2 million, consisting primarily of a net loss of \$19.1 million, offset by a decrease in net operating assets of \$3.0 million and non-cash charges of \$5.9 million. The decrease in net operating assets consisted primarily of an increase in accrued expenses and accounts payable related to device engineering costs, pharmaceutical development, employee-related costs, and the expansion of our commercial organization. The non-cash charges primarily consisted of depreciation, stock-based compensation expense and non-cash interest expense related to convertible notes payable.

During the year ended December 31, 2016, net cash used in operating activities was \$15.5 million, consisting primarily of a net loss of \$24.4 million, offset by a decrease in net operating assets of \$1.5 million and non-cash charges of \$7.4 million. The decrease in net operating assets primarily consisted of increased accruals for pharmaceutical development and accounts payable for clinical trials, device engineering costs, the expansion of our commercial organization, and legal costs associated with our Series B preferred stock financing. The non-cash charges primarily consisted of depreciation, stock-based compensation expense and non-cash interest expense related to convertible notes payable.

During the year ended December 31, 2015, net cash used in operating activities was \$9.6 million, consisting primarily of a net loss of \$10.5 million, offset by a decrease in net operating assets of \$0.9 million. The decrease in net operating assets was primarily attributable to increased accruals for device engineering costs and employee-related costs.

***Net Cash Used in Investing Activities***

During the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2016, and the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2017, net cash used in investing activities consisted of purchases of property and equipment.

***Net Cash Provided by Financing Activities***

During the nine months ended September 30, 2017, net cash provided by financing activities was \$9.7 million, consisting primarily of net proceeds of \$9.7 million from borrowings under the 2017 Loan Agreement.

During the nine months ended September 30, 2016, net cash provided by financing activities was \$12.5 million, consisting primarily of net proceeds of \$12.5 million from convertible notes payable.

During the year ended December 31, 2016, net cash provided by financing activities was \$53.2 million, consisting primarily of net proceeds of \$40.6 million from the issuance of Series B convertible preferred stock and net proceeds of \$12.5 million from convertible notes payable.

During the year ended December 31, 2015, net cash provided by financing activities was \$8.0 million, consisting of net proceeds of \$8.0 million from the issuance of Series A convertible preferred stock.

**OFF-BALANCE SHEET ARRANGEMENTS**

We currently have no off-balance sheet arrangements.

**CONTRACTUAL OBLIGATIONS**

The following table summarizes our contractual obligations as of December 31, 2016 and the effects that such obligations are expected to have on our liquidity and cash flows in future periods.

(in thousands)	PAYMENTS DUE BY PERIOD				
	TOTAL	LESS THAN 1 YEAR	1-3 YEARS	3-5 YEARS	MORE THAN 5 YEARS
Operating lease obligations (1)	\$ 427	\$ 90	\$ 197	\$ 140	\$ —
Total	\$ 427	\$ 90	\$ 197	\$ 140	\$ —

(1) Consists of obligations under a multi-year, non-cancelable building lease for our facility in Lexington, Massachusetts. The lease expires on December 31, 2022.

In June 2017, we entered into a multi-year agreement to lease office space in Burlington, Massachusetts under an operating lease agreement. Our contractual commitments under the lease total \$2.1 million. Payments under the contract are expected to commence in late 2017, four months following possession of the premises.

We have drawn down an aggregate of \$10.0 million from our 2017 Loan Agreement, as of September 30, 2017. Our contractual commitments under the 2017 Loan Agreement as of September 30, 2017 consist of an aggregate of \$13.0 million in repayment obligations, inclusive of related interest amounts, the \$400,000 exit fee and the \$250,000 final fee. See “—Loan and Security Agreement” for additional information regarding the 2017 Loan Agreement.

We enter into contracts in the normal course of business with clinical trial sites and manufacturing organizations and with vendors for preclinical studies, research supplies and other services and products for operating purposes. These contracts generally provide for termination after a notice period, and, therefore, are cancelable contracts and not included in the table above.

**CRITICAL ACCOUNTING POLICIES AND ESTIMATES**

Management’s discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations is based on our financial statements, which have been prepared in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles, or U.S. GAAP. The preparation of these financial statements requires us to make estimates and assumptions for the reported amounts of assets, liabilities, revenue, expenses and related disclosures. Our estimates are based on our historical experience and on various other factors that we believe are reasonable under the circumstances, the results of which form the basis for making judgments about the carrying value of assets and liabilities that are not readily apparent from other sources. Actual results may differ from these estimates under different assumptions or conditions and any such differences may be material.

While our significant accounting policies are more fully described in the notes to our financial statements appearing elsewhere in this prospectus, we believe the following discussion addresses our most critical accounting policies, which are those that are most important to our financial condition and results of operations and require our most difficult, subjective and complex judgments.

**Stock-Based Compensation Expense**

We have historically maintained our 2014 Stock Incentive Plan, or the Incentive Plan, to provide long-term incentive for employees, consultants and members of our board of directors. The Incentive Plan allows for the issuance of non-statutory and incentive stock options to employees and non-statutory stock options to consultants and non-employee directors.

We are required to determine the fair value of equity incentive awards and recognize compensation expense for all equity incentive awards, including employee stock options. We recognize this expense over the requisite service period. In addition, we recognize stock-based compensation expense in the statements of operations based on awards expected to vest and, therefore, the amount of expense has been reduced for estimated forfeitures. We use the straight-line method for expense attribution.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The valuation model we used for calculating the fair value of awards for stock-based compensation expense is the Black-Scholes option-pricing model, or the Black-Scholes model. The Black-Scholes model requires us to make assumptions and judgments about the variables used in the calculation, including:

- *Expected term.* We do not believe we are able to rely on our historical exercise and post-vesting termination activity to provide accurate data for estimating the expected term for use in determining the fair value-based measurement of our options. Therefore, we have opted to use the "simplified method" for estimating the expected term of options, which is the average of the weighted-average vesting period and contractual term of the option.
- *Expected volatility.* Since there has been no public market for our common stock and lack of company specific historical volatility, we have determined the share price volatility for options granted based on an analysis of the volatility of a peer group of publicly traded companies. In evaluating similarity, we consider factors such as stage of development, risk profile, enterprise value and position within the industry.
- *Risk-free interest rate.* The risk-free interest rate is based on the U.S. Treasury yield in effect at the time of the grant for zero-coupon U.S. Treasury notes with remaining terms similar to the expected term of the options.
- *Dividend rate.* We assumed the expected dividend to be zero as we have never paid dividends and have no current plans to do so.
- *Expected forfeiture rate.* We are required to estimate forfeitures at the time of grant, and revise those estimates in subsequent periods if actual forfeitures differ from those estimates. We use historical data to estimate pre-vesting option forfeitures and record share-based compensation expense only for those awards that are expected to vest.
- *Service period.* We amortize all stock-based compensation over the requisite service period of the awards, which is generally the same as the vesting period of the awards. We amortize the stock-based compensation cost on a straight-line basis over the expected service periods.
- *Fair value of common stock.* As there has been no public market for our common stock to date, the estimated fair value of our common stock has been determined by our board of directors as of the date of each option grant, with input from management, considering our most recently available third-party valuations of common stock and our board of directors' assessment of additional objective and subjective factors that it believed were relevant and which may have changed from the date of the most recent valuation through the date of the grant. These third-party valuations were performed in accordance with the guidance outlined in the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants' Accounting and Valuation Guide, *Valuation of Privately-Held-Company Equity Securities Issued as Compensation*. Our common stock valuations were prepared using the hybrid method, which used market approaches to estimate our enterprise value. The hybrid method is a probability-weighted expected return method, or PWERM, where the equity value in one or more of the scenarios is calculated using an option-pricing method, or OPM. The OPM treats common stock and preferred stock as call options on the total equity value of a company, with exercise prices based on the value thresholds at which the allocation among the various holders of a company's securities changes. Under this method, the common stock has value only if the funds available for distribution to stockholders exceeded the value of the preferred stock liquidation preferences at the time of the liquidity event, such as a strategic sale or a merger. The PWERM is a scenario-based methodology that estimates the fair value of common stock based upon an analysis of future values for the company, assuming various outcomes. The common stock value is based on the probability-weighted present value of expected future investment returns considering each of the possible outcomes available as well as the rights of each class of stock. The future value of the common stock under each outcome is discounted back to the valuation date at an appropriate risk-adjusted discount rate and probability weighted to arrive at an indication of value for the common stock. Third-party valuations were performed at various dates, which resulted in valuations of our common stock of \$10.42 per share as of December 31, 2015, \$8.84 as of March 6, 2016, \$5.39 as of August 31, 2016, \$3.81 per share as of December 31, 2016, \$4.96 per share as of June 30, 2017 and \$5.89 per share as of August 31, 2017. In addition to considering the results of these third-party valuations, our board of directors considered various objective and subjective factors to

## [Table of Contents](#)

determine the fair value of our common stock as of each grant date, which may be a date later than the most recent third-party valuation date, including:

- the prices at which we sold shares of preferred stock and the superior rights and preferences of the preferred stock relative to our common stock at the time of each grant;
- the progress of our research and development programs, including the status of preclinical studies and planned clinical trials for our product candidates;
- our stage of development and commercialization and our business strategy;
- external market conditions affecting the pharmaceutical and biotechnology industries, and trends within the biotechnology industry;
- our financial position, including cash on hand, and our historical and forecasted performance and operating results;
- the lack of an active public market for our common stock and our preferred stock;
- the likelihood of achieving a liquidity event, such as an initial public offering, or IPO, or a sale of our company in light of prevailing market conditions; and
- the analysis of IPOs and the market performance of similar companies in the biopharmaceutical industry.

The assumptions underlying these valuations represent management's best estimates, which involve inherent uncertainties and the application of management judgment. As a result, if factors or expected outcomes change and we use significantly different assumptions or estimates, our stock-based compensation expense could be materially different.

### **Options Granted**

The following table sets forth by grant date the number of shares subject to options granted between January 1, 2016 and the date of this prospectus, the per share exercise price of the options, the fair value of common stock per share on each grant date, and the per share estimated fair value of the options:

<b>GRANT DATE</b>	<b>NUMBER OF SHARES SUBJECT TO OPTIONS GRANTED</b>	<b>PER SHARE EXERCISE PRICE OF OPTIONS</b>	<b>FAIR VALUE OF COMMON STOCK PER SHARE ON GRANT DATE</b>	<b>PER SHARE ESTIMATED FAIR VALUE OF OPTIONS</b>
March 16, 2016	148,323	\$ 8.84	\$ 8.84	\$ 6.42
May 31, 2016	90,526	\$ 8.84	\$ 8.84	\$ 6.86
June 7, 2016	1,392	\$ 8.84	\$ 8.84	\$ 6.68
July 6, 2016	6,963	\$ 8.84	\$ 8.84	\$ 6.67
September 9, 2016	7,659	\$ 5.39	\$ 5.39	\$ 4.02
March 7, 2017	511,297	\$ 3.81	\$ 3.81	\$ 2.69
April 17, 2017	186,380	\$ 3.81	\$ 3.81	\$ 2.62
June 27, 2017	6,475	\$ 3.81	\$ 3.81	\$ 2.73
October 15, 2017	124,437	\$ 5.89	\$ 5.89	\$ 4.23

For stock awards after the completion of this offering, our board of directors intends to determine the fair value of each share of underlying common stock based on the closing price of our common stock as reported on the date of grant.

The intrinsic value of all outstanding options as of the date of this prospectus was \$10.7 million based on the estimated fair value of our common stock of \$14.00 per share, which is the initial public offering price per share of our common stock in this offering.

If factors change and we employ different assumptions, stock-based compensation expense may differ significantly from what we have recorded in the past. If there are any modifications or cancellations of the underlying unvested securities, we may be required to accelerate, increase or cancel any remaining unearned stock-based compensation expense. To the extent that our assumptions are incorrect, the amount of stock-based compensation recorded will change.

### **Determination of Offering Price**

We and our underwriters determined the initial public offering price per share of \$14.00. In comparison, our estimate of the fair value of our common stock was \$3.81 per share at June 27, 2017, which was determined by our board of directors with the assistance of a third-party valuation of our common stock as of December 31, 2016, and \$5.89 per share at October 15, 2017, which was determined by our board of directors with the assistance of a third-party valuation of our common stock as of August 31, 2017. These valuations utilized a hybrid of probability-weighted expected return method, or PWERM, and option pricing method, or OPM. The valuation for our June 2017 option grants attributed a 15% probability to an initial public offering by June 30, 2017, a 25% probability to an initial public offering by September 30, 2018 and a 60% probability of no initial public offering, and reflected a discount for lack of marketability of 10%, 18% and 20%, respectively, for the foregoing scenarios. The valuation for our October 2017 option grants attributed a 20% probability to an initial public offering by December 15, 2017, a 25% probability to an initial public offering by March 31, 2018 and a 55% probability of no initial public offering, and reflected a discount for lack of marketability of 8%, 11% and 19%, respectively, for the foregoing scenarios. In addition to quantitative analysis from third-party valuations of our common stock, we also considered macro-economic and market conditions, including our subjective assessment of market conditions for initial public offerings of companies similarly situated to ours and our subjective assessment as to the likelihood of successfully executing an initial public offering in the coming months, among other factors.

We note that, as is typical in initial public offerings, the initial public offering price per share for this offering was not derived using a formal determination of fair value, but was determined based upon discussions between us and the underwriters. Among the factors considered in setting the initial public offering price per share were prevailing market conditions and estimates of our business potential, the general condition of the securities market and the market prices of, and demand for, publicly-traded common stock of generally comparable companies.

In addition, we believe the difference in value reflected between the initial public offering price per share and the determination of the fair value of the our common stock on June 27, 2017 and October 15, 2017 is primarily the result of the following factors:

- In August 2017, we submitted our NDA for Furoscix to the FDA.
- In August 2017, we confidentially submitted and, subsequently, on October 23, 2017, we publicly filed, the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part.
- In September 2017, we applied for the listing of our common stock on The Nasdaq Global Market and, subsequently, in November 2017, we were accepted, subject to notice of issuance, for listing on The Nasdaq Global Select Market.
- In September and October 2017, we conducted several dozen “testing the waters” meetings with prospective investors and received favorable feedback, as a result of which we elected to continue with this offering.
- Between June 2017 and October 2017, at least 9 biotechnology companies successfully completed initial public offerings, suggesting a potentially favorable market for companies similar to ours in pursuing and completing initial public offerings.
- In August 2017, two companies with wearable drug-device delivery combination products received notice within 60 days of filing their respective NDAs that the FDA officially refused to accept such NDAs for review. On October 27, 2017, we received our “74-day letter” from the FDA which confirmed that the FDA formally accepted our NDA for review and assigned our NDA a PDUFA date of June 23, 2018.
- The valuation used to support the fair value of the grants in June 2017 contains multiple scenarios, including an initial public offering by June 30, 2017 and an initial public offering by September 30, 2018, to which probability weightings of 15% and 25% were assigned, respectively. The valuation used to support the fair value of the grants in October 2017 also contained multiple scenarios, including an initial public offering by December 15, 2017 and an initial public offering by March 31, 2018, to which probability weightings of 20% and 25% were assigned. The consideration of different scenarios accounts for some but not all of the difference between the initial public offering price per share for this offering and the fair value of our common stock at the recent grant dates.

## [Table of Contents](#)

- The valuation used to support the fair value of the grants in June 2017 and October 2017 took into account the uncertainty surrounding an initial public offering in terms of the likelihood of success, timing and price. The initial public offering price per share for this offering necessarily assumes that this offering has occurred and that a public market for our common stock has been created, and therefore excludes any discount for lack of marketability of our common stock. The fair value of our common stock in June 2017 and October 2017 reflected discounts for lack of marketability, ranging from 10% to 20% and 8% to 19% (depending on the scenarios), respectively.
- Our currently outstanding convertible preferred stock has substantial economic rights and preferences superior to our common stock. The initial public offering price per share assumes the conversion of all of our outstanding convertible preferred stock to common stock upon the completion of this offering and the corresponding elimination of such superior economic rights and preferences.
- The proceeds of a successful initial public offering would substantially strengthen our balance sheet by increasing our cash and cash equivalents. Additionally, the completion of this offering would provide us with access to the public company debt and equity markets and a lower cost of capital following the public offering, and is expected to increase the attractiveness of our equity as a currency to raise capital, compensate employees and other strategic transactions. These projected improvements in our financial position influenced the initial public offering price per share.
- The price that investors are willing to pay in this offering may take into account other factors that have not been expressly considered in prior valuations of our common stock, but are significant to investors in their own subjective and qualitative assessment of our company, and thus may not be objectively determinable or quantifiable under the above-described valuation models.
- In the public markets, we believe there are investors who may apply more qualitative valuation criteria to certain of our assets than the above-described valuation methods applied in the historical valuations of our common stock.

### **Research and Development Expenses**

As part of the process of preparing our financial statements, we are required to estimate our accrued R&D expenses as of each balance sheet date. This process involves reviewing open contracts and purchase orders, communicating with our personnel to identify services that have been performed on our behalf and estimating the level of service performed and the associated cost incurred for the service when we have not yet been invoiced or otherwise notified of the actual cost. The majority of our service providers invoice us monthly in arrears for services performed or when contractual milestones are met. We make estimates of our accrued expenses as of each balance sheet date based on facts and circumstances known to us at that time. We periodically confirm the accuracy of our estimates with the service providers and make adjustments if necessary. The significant estimates in our accrued R&D expenses include the costs incurred for services performed by our vendors in connection with R&D activities for which we have not yet been invoiced.

We base our expenses related to R&D activities on our estimates of the services received and efforts expended pursuant to quotes and contracts with vendors that conduct R&D on our behalf. The financial terms of these agreements are subject to negotiation, vary from contract to contract and may result in uneven payment flows. There may be instances in which payments made to our vendors will exceed the level of services provided and result in a prepayment of the R&D expense. In accruing service fees, we estimate the time period over which services will be performed and the level of effort to be expended in each period. If the actual timing of the performance of services or the level of effort varies from our estimate, we adjust the accrual or prepaid accordingly. Advance payments for goods and services that will be used in future R&D activities are expensed when the activity has been performed or when the goods have been received rather than when the payment is made.

Although we do not expect our estimates to be materially different from amounts actually incurred, if our estimates of the status and timing of services performed differ from the actual status and timing of services performed, it could result in us reporting amounts that are too high or too low in any particular period. To date, there has been no material differences between our estimates of such expenses and the amounts actually incurred.

### **Valuation of Derivative Liability**

In May 2017, we entered into an exit agreement in connection with the 2017 Loan Agreement, which provides for a payment to the lenders upon the occurrence of an exit event, as defined in the agreement, including an initial public offering. We classify the exit payment obligation as a liability on our balance sheet because it represents a contingent payment obligation that is not clearly and closely related to the host instrument and meets the definition of a derivative. The derivative liability was initially recorded at fair value upon execution of the 2017 Loan Agreement and is subsequently remeasured to fair value at each reporting date. Changes in the fair value of the derivative liability are recognized as a component of other income (expense), net in the statement of operations and comprehensive loss. Changes in the fair value of the derivative liability will continue to be recognized until an exit event occurs.

The fair value of the derivative liability recognized in connection with the 2017 Loan Agreement was determined based on significant inputs not observable in the market, which represents a Level 3 measurement within the fair value hierarchy. The fair value of the derivative liability was determined using the PWERM, which considered as inputs the timing and probability of occurrence of an exit event, the amount of the payment; and the risk-free discount rate reflecting the expected risk profile for each of the potential settlement scenarios. We determined that the change in the fair value of the derivative liability from the date of issuance through September 30, 2017 was not material.

### **JOBS ACT ACCOUNTING ELECTION**

In April 2012, the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012, or JOBS Act, was enacted. Section 107 of the JOBS Act provides that an emerging growth company can take advantage of an extended transition period for complying with new or revised accounting standards. Thus, an emerging growth company can delay the adoption of certain accounting standards until those standards would otherwise apply to private companies. We have elected not to avail ourselves of this extended transition period and, as a result, we will adopt new or revised accounting standards on the relevant dates on which adoption of such standards is required for other public companies. This election is irrevocable.

### **NEW ACCOUNTING PRONOUNCEMENTS**

From time to time, new accounting pronouncements are issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board, or FASB, or other standard setting bodies that are adopted by us as of the specified effective date. Unless otherwise discussed, we believe that the impact of recently issued standards that are not yet effective will not have a material impact on our financial position or results of operations upon adoption.

A description of recently issued accounting pronouncements that may potentially impact our financial position and results of operations is disclosed in Note 2 to our financial statements appearing at the end of this prospectus.

### **QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES ABOUT MARKET RISK**

We are exposed to market risks related to changes in foreign currency exchange rates and interest rates.

We contract with vendors in foreign countries. As such, we have exposure to adverse changes in exchange rates of foreign currencies, principally the Swiss franc and the Euro, associated with our foreign transactions. We believe this exposure to be immaterial. We currently do not hedge against this exposure to fluctuations in exchange rates.

Our exposure to market risk also relates to interest rate sensitivity, which is affected by changes in the general level of U.S. interest rates. As of September 30, 2017, our aggregate outstanding indebtedness was \$10.0 million, which bears interest at the rate equal to LIBOR plus 8.45%. Due to the short-term duration of our indebtedness, an immediate 100 basis point change in interest rates would not have a material effect on the fair market value of our debt instruments.

## BUSINESS

### OVERVIEW

We are a pharmaceutical company focused on developing and commercializing products that have the potential to transform the way therapy is delivered, advance patient care and reduce healthcare costs. Our proprietary platform is designed to enable the subcutaneous administration of therapies that have previously been limited to intravenous, or IV, delivery. By moving delivery away from the high-cost healthcare settings typically required for IV administration, we believe our technology reduces overall healthcare costs and advances the quality and convenience of care. Our lead product candidate, Furoscix, consists of our novel subcutaneous formulation of furosemide delivered via our sc2Wear Infusor and is under development for treatment of worsening, or decompensated, heart failure outside of the inpatient setting. We filed a new drug application, or NDA, for Furoscix, with the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, or FDA, in August 2017. The FDA notified us in October 2017 that it had accepted our NDA for review and assigned us a June 23, 2018 Prescription Drug User Fee Act, or PDUFA, date which is the goal date for the FDA to complete its review of our NDA.

Treatment costs associated with heart failure patients represents \$123 billion, or 33%, of annual Medicare Part A and B spending, and decompensated heart failure is one of the most common causes of hospital admissions and readmissions in patients age 65 and over, according to data from the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services. Each year, there are approximately three million heart failure hospitalization events in the United States, leading to an estimated 15 million patient days in the hospital.

Management of fluid retention, or edema, to avoid decompensation is the primary concern for heart failure specialists and patients. When these efforts fail and patients begin to retain excess fluid, they are admitted to the hospital for more intensive diuresis, via IV administration of a loop diuretic. Furosemide represents over 90% of the IV loop diuretics utilized. Once a patient is stabilized, hospitals must decide between keeping the patient hospitalized for further diuresis, which results in high costs to the hospital, or discharging the patient so they may resume their normal lives and continue diuresis at home. In many instances, patients are discharged before diuresis is complete and must be readmitted to the hospital when their oral diuretic is not effective at home. Between 25% to 30% of Medicare patients are readmitted to the hospital for heart failure within 30 days of discharge, resulting in increased healthcare costs and potential penalties for the hospital.

We believe Furoscix, if approved by the FDA, would allow heart failure patients to receive IV-strength diuresis with earlier discharge from, or potentially without admission to, the high-cost hospital setting. Reduced readmission rates, earlier patient discharge, and prevention of hospital admissions would result in reducing the estimated 15 million days patients with heart failure spend in the hospital each year. By decreasing the number of days in the hospital, we believe we can drive significant cost savings to payers and hospitals, with Medicare saving up to \$1.5 billion annually for every 10% of heart failure patients transitioned out of the inpatient setting according to our estimates and analyses of Medicare data.

Furoscix is designed to be applied to a patient's abdomen for subcutaneous administration by patients and caregivers outside of the hospital setting. We license the piston pump technology for our sc2Wear Infusor from Sensile. Our license agreement with Sensile grants us the exclusive worldwide right to develop, commercialize and sell our sc2Wear Infusor in a defined field, which includes formulations of certain generic cardiovascular and infectious disease therapies (including antibiotics) for subcutaneous administration. Under our license agreement with Sensile, we control the manufacturing and packaging of the components, which we have outsourced to third-party manufacturers. Our sc2Wear Infusor is protected by Sensile's patent portfolio.

We are also leveraging our subcutaneous formulation expertise and delivery technology to develop a suite of additional product candidates that we believe can significantly decrease the cost of treatment by moving treatment away from the hospital setting and can improve patient quality of life by eliminating the need for IV catheters. We have conducted additional development work utilizing our sc2Wear Infusor to deliver ceftriaxone, a parenteral cephalosporin that is not available in an oral formulation. Based on IMS Health data, each year there are 15 million outpatient days in the United States of ceftriaxone therapy to treat various types of infections, including pneumonia, urinary tract infections, and Lyme Disease. Subcutaneous administration of ceftriaxone represents an opportunity to reduce costs to the overall health care system and improve the quality of care by reducing the complications and serious health risks associated with IV catheters and increasing patient mobility and convenience. We have

## [Table of Contents](#)

conducted a pharmacokinetic study with subcutaneous ceftriaxone and intend to conduct additional clinical trials to advance its development, including a planned study in 2019 to evaluate skin safety after subcutaneous administration. We expect to submit an NDA for subcutaneous ceftriaxone in 2020.

Beyond furosemide and ceftriaxone, we aim to leverage our subcutaneous formulation expertise and delivery technology to develop and seek approval of additional drug candidates. We intend to conduct feasibility work on additional antibiotics and evaluate other product candidates.

### **OUR STRATEGY**

Our goal is to improve the delivery paradigm for important, lifesaving medicines. We strive to reduce costs and improve patient quality of life by allowing for administration of therapies in lower cost settings with increased convenience and comfort for patients. Key elements of our strategy to achieve this goal are to:

- *Obtain FDA approval for our lead product candidate, Furoscix.* The FDA notified us in October 2017 that it had accepted our NDA for review and assigned us a June 23, 2018 PDUFA date. We intend to pursue the approval of this NDA.
- *Commercialize Furoscix in the United States.* We believe that we can effectively commercialize Furoscix, if approved, in the United States with a specialty sales force of approximately 40 representatives initially. We intend to target the highest volume hospitals and clinics, initially concentrating on those institutions that collectively account for 40% of all IV furosemide administered to heart failure patients. If we establish Medicare Part D coverage and achieve successful uptake in our initial target market, we intend to expand our commercial sales force.
- *Leverage our proprietary and licensed technology and the Furoscix sales force to develop and commercialize additional branded product candidates for treatment of cardiovascular and infectious diseases.* We plan to identify, develop and commercialize product candidates that we believe allow us to demonstrate value to patients and the healthcare system and that have large market potential. We intend to identify opportunities where existing pharmaceutical products currently require IV delivery in expensive care settings and where utilizing our proprietary technology could significantly reduce costs and improve quality of care for patients. We plan to leverage our sales force and Medicare-focused account teams that we are building to commercialize Furoscix, if approved, and for the launch of additional branded products.
- *Establish commercial collaborations outside the United States for our product candidates, if approved.* We plan to establish collaborations to commercialize our products, if approved by the relevant regulatory authorities, outside of the United States. We may also engage third-party intermediaries to sell and distribute our branded products, if approved, to hospitals and healthcare providers in foreign markets and thereby expand our global footprint and customer landscape.

### **FUROSCIX TO TREAT DECOMPENSATED HEART FAILURE**

#### **Market Size and Opportunity**

Heart failure affects 10.5 million adults globally in the G7 countries and approximately 6.5 million adults in the United States. Furthermore, the American Heart Association projects that heart failure will affect more than eight million adults by 2030, representing one in every 33 Americans. Medical costs associated with treatment of heart failure patients consumes 33%, or \$123 billion, of the total annual Medicare Part A and B spending.

Heart failure is a chronic disease resulting from impairment of the heart's ability to pump blood and can be caused by a number of factors, including congenital conditions, history of heart attack, arrhythmias and complications of other chronic conditions such as diabetes and hypertension. Patients with heart failure are prone to retain water and salt, or fluid, in their blood stream and other tissues. Initially, a modest increase in water and salt retention and increased blood volume helps improve the pumping efficiency of the failing heart. However, as fluid accumulates beyond a useful level, heart pumping efficiency begins to diminish, and edema occurs. When fluid accumulates in the lungs, this causes breathing difficulty and compromises oxygen delivery to the patient's tissues. This state of acute worsening of heart failure symptoms due to excessive fluid retention is referred to as decompensated heart failure.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Management of fluid retention to avoid decompensation is a primary concern of heart failure specialists and patients. Today, there are only two treatment options to manage excess fluid levels: oral loop diuretics, and IV diuresis delivered in an inpatient setting over several days.

Heart failure patients are commonly prescribed an oral loop diuretic to promote ongoing discharge of excess fluid through urination, or diuresis. Loop diuretics, which promote increased excretion of salt and water by the kidney into the urine and reduce the fluid volume load on the heart, are the mainstay of treatment and prevention of edema in patients with heart failure. Oral furosemide, a loop diuretic, is the market leader for the day-to-day management of edema in patients with heart failure, accounting for approximately 85% of the oral diuretics prescribed annually in the United States.

Even when following a regular oral loop diuretic regimen, patients with heart failure regularly experience episodes of decompensated heart failure. These episodes can be triggered by various physiological factors, some as simple as salty meals or a patient skipping doses of oral furosemide to avoid excessive urination at inconvenient times. Patients and physicians aim to prevent these episodes by monitoring for early signs of edema, such as swelling ankles, weight gain, breathing difficulty or decreased urination. At the onset of a decompensated heart failure event, physicians commonly increase the dose of the patient's oral diuretic or add another oral diuretic in an effort to eliminate excess fluid levels. Because of the reduced bioavailability of oral doses due to edema in the gastrointestinal tract and consequent decreased absorption of the drug into the blood stream, oral loop diuretics are often insufficient to treat decompensated heart failure. This progressive accumulation of fluid overwhelms the failing heart, and the patient is eventually admitted to the hospital for treatment of the decompensated heart failure with IV diuresis.

There are approximately 3 million heart failure hospitalizations annually in the United States resulting in an estimated 15 million days of hospitalization. More than 90% of these patients require diuresis through use of an IV loop diuretic during their inpatient stay. Furosemide represents 92% of the IV loop diuretics that are utilized. Based on IMS Drug Distribution Data, 17.6 million 80mg equivalent IV Furosemide doses are utilized annually in the United States. Additionally, there are approximately 900,000 clinician office visits annually for diuretic treatment of edema that do not result in a hospital admission, resulting in a total of four million annual heart failure events. In addition, we believe the average patient will use four Furoscix units per episode.

### **Managing Decompensation**

Decompensation is the primary cause for patient admission to the acute care setting among adult patients with heart failure. An analysis of 585 heart failure admissions published in the American Journal of Critical Care found that 59% of admissions are attributed directly to excessive sodium retention leading to volume overload. Patients suffering from an acute-decompensation event can develop worsening symptoms rapidly and a multiday hospital admission for a more aggressive diuretic treatment with IV furosemide is almost always required to manage the decompensation. IV furosemide is universally recommended in international guidelines, including the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association's Guideline for the Management of Heart Failure, for the treatment of edema in patients with decompensated heart failure.

### **Cost of Hospital Admission**

Medical costs associated with treatment of heart failure patients consumes 33%, or \$123 billion, of the total annual Medicare Part A and B spending. Milliman, an independent consulting firm, conducted an analysis that we commissioned to quantify the cost of treatment to Medicare for decompensated heart failure events. Based on that analysis, we estimate that 79.4% of heart failure events were treated in an inpatient setting, at an average allowed Medicare cost of \$11,840 per admission and incurred an additional \$9,140 on average in the 30-day period after discharge; 11.3% of heart failure events were treated in an emergency department (without admission), at an average cost of \$1,208 per visit; 6.1% of heart failure events were treated in an observation unit (without admission), at an average cost of \$3,189 per stay; and 3.2% of heart failure events were treated in a physician office or clinic, at an average cost of \$467 per visit.

In addition, patient admissions for treatment result in high costs to the hospital. Patients who are admitted to the hospital for heart failure remain in the hospital setting for an average of 5.2 days per episode, exceeding the 3.9 day stay that is reimbursed under Medicare's Diagnosis Related Group, or DRG, payment guidelines. Based on the Milliman analysis of Medicare data, we estimate that 56% of in-patient admissions exceed three days, resulting in a

## [Table of Contents](#)

net loss for hospitals. According to Kaiser and Becker's hospital data, the average in-patient cost per day ranges from \$1,800 to \$2,400. Therefore, based on an estimated midpoint of \$2,000 per day in in-patient costs, we estimate that hospitals lose an average of \$2,600 for the 1.3 days of inpatient heart failure admission not covered by DRG payment guidelines.

Hospitalization also exposes patients to risks of infection and additional complications intrinsic to the hospital setting. Approximately 722,000 healthcare-associated infections occur in the United States annually, with 75,000 patients dying from healthcare-associated infections during their hospitalizations. The economic impact of patient healthcare-associated infections has been estimated to range from \$35.7 billion to \$45 billion per year. Transitioning treatment outside of the hospital setting could reduce morbidity, mortality and costs associated with healthcare-associated infections.

Additionally, patients treated with IV furosemide in the hospital setting are largely confined to their rooms with limited movement and predominantly remain in the hospital bed during admission. Restricting patients to sedentary activities for extended inpatient treatment of acute decompensated heart failure severely restricts activities of daily living and significantly reduces patient quality of life.

### **Cost of Hospital Readmission**

Effective treatment of acute decompensation events can currently be administered only by IV-strength diuresis in the hospital or acute care settings. Thus, the majority of patients who today require IV-strength diuresis can only receive the care they need in the hospital.

Patients hospitalized for decompensated heart failure are often discharged from the hospital before diuresis is complete and transitioned to oral loop diuretics, such as oral furosemide, to continue diuresis. However, persistent edema in the gut can reduce absorption of oral furosemide into the bloodstream, which means that oral furosemide is often insufficient to fully resolve the edema. Between 25% and 30% of Medicare patients admitted to the hospital for heart failure are readmitted for a decompensation event within 30 days of discharge resulting in additional payments from Medicare. Based on the Milliman analysis, we estimate that the heart failure population represents 41% of the total Medicare population admissions and 53% of the total Medicare population readmissions.

In an attempt to reduce the costs associated with this cycle of decompensated heart failure events, the Center for Medicare and Medicaid Services has included heart failure as one of the six conditions subject to readmission penalties. Today, hospitals face penalties of up to 3% of future Medicare reimbursement payments if readmission rates are deemed excessive. An estimated 79% of hospitals received readmission penalties in the first half of fiscal year 2017 for heart failure and other qualifying conditions, representing a projected \$528 million of penalties, compared to \$420 million in 2016.

Quality initiatives aimed at improving the care of heart failure patients have been introduced by the Center for Medicare and Medicaid Services. For example, under the Quality Payment Program, Medicare has introduced new payment models for heart failure treatment. Both the Merit Based Incentive Payment System and Alternative Payment Models are aimed at controlling healthcare costs by providing hospitals and clinics lump-sum or bundled payments for heart failure treatments over a specified time period.

We believe that these Medicare initiatives demonstrate a significant unmet need for heart failure treatments that could deliver the economic benefit of treatment in the outpatient setting and shift the management of heart failure away from expensive and inconvenient hospital facilities. More specifically, we believe shifting diuresis treatment from inpatient to outpatient settings of care can be accomplished and has the potential to decrease current readmission rates, reduce the length of hospital admissions, and prevent admission for patients in earlier stages of decompensation.

### **Our Solution—Furoscix**

We developed Furoscix to address the unmet need for subcutaneous administration of IV-strength diuresis outside of the hospital. Our novel formulation of furosemide was designed with a physiologic pH level to avoid the burning and discomfort associated with subcutaneous delivery of the current alkaline IV furosemide formulation.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Furoscix consists of this novel formulation of furosemide for subcutaneous administration with our wearable, portable sc2Wear Infusor for the treatment of edema in patients with heart failure. Furoscix is delivered subcutaneously through a small, 27-gauge needle, which has been observed in our clinical studies to date to provide comparable diuresis to IV furosemide with good tolerability.

We believe that, if approved, Furoscix has the potential to provide a safe, effective and more convenient solution that will enable IV-strength diuresis outside of the high-cost hospital setting, thereby reducing the number of days a heart failure patient remains in the hospital. We believe we can reduce the estimated 15 million days per year that heart failure patients spend in the hospital by decreasing current readmission rates, reducing the average length of stay, and reducing admission rates for patients with mild edema. According to our estimates and analyses of Medicare data, for every 10% of heart failure patients that are managed outside of the inpatient setting, Medicare could save up to \$1.5 billion annually.

Subcutaneous delivery has the potential to reduce healthcare costs in the following ways:

- *Reduce patient readmission:* We believe Furoscix, if approved, could reduce the incidence of readmission for heart failure patients by providing IV-strength diuresis in the home environment upon discharge. Hospitals frequently discharge heart failure patients before diuresis is complete and transition them back to oral furosemide. Persistent edema reduces absorption of the oral furosemide, rendering it ineffective. As a result, patients are often readmitted to the hospital to again receive IV furosemide to complete diuresis. We believe Furoscix can break this cycle by providing IV-strength diuresis to patients upon discharge and reducing the high rate of patient readmissions for decompensated heart failure events.
- *Reduce patient length of stay:* We believe Furoscix, if approved, could reduce the average in-hospital length of stay for heart failure patients, thereby reducing the hospitals' economic loss attributable to extended patient admission. Our market research suggests that 46% of physicians believe they can reduce the length of stay for heart failure patients by one to two days if IV-strength diuresis could be achieved outside of the hospital setting following discharge. Transitioning from inpatient IV therapy to outpatient Furoscix would allow these patients to be discharged for continued IV-strength diuresis outside the hospital setting, potentially expediting hospital discharge and reducing the associated costs to the hospital. Currently, a hospital will lose an average of approximately \$2,600 per Medicare heart failure admission, which represents the difference between the costs associated with the average 5.2 days of admission (utilizing an average \$2,000 daily cost of a hospital stay according to The Henry J. Kaiser Family Foundation) and the costs covered by Medicare for the 3.9 patient admission days covered as a DRG payment. If administration of Furoscix outside the hospital could reduce the length of stay by 1.3 days, it would eliminate this difference.
- *Reduce hospital admission rates:* We believe Furoscix, if approved, could in certain instances avoid a hospitalization altogether, by providing IV-strength diuresis in an outpatient setting such as the physician office, heart failure clinic or at home. Patients would have the opportunity to receive Furoscix from healthcare providers in physician offices, outpatient clinics, and at home, without necessitating hospital admission. Each patient admission to the hospital averages \$11,840 in payments to the hospital, 90% of which are paid by Medicare and 10% of which are paid by the patient. As a result, patients with chronic heart failure would have access to Furoscix at the onset of decompensation when their oral dosage begins to fail and could obtain treatment without presenting to the hospital.

Further, through subcutaneous delivery of IV-strength furosemide, we believe we can improve patients' quality of life by providing treatment with minimal interruption of daily living. Rather than restricting the patient to a stationary environment for an IV therapy, the wearable design of our Furoscix product candidate could potentially promote patient mobility by delivering furosemide for up to five hours while the patient resumes normal daily activities outside of the hospital. Evidence also supports that in-home care for patients with heart failure may prolong life expectancy and improve quality of life by facilitating access to the patient's care support system. Based on our market research, we believe that patients and physicians would embrace Furoscix, if approved, if it improved patient outcomes and quality of life.

## Clinical Development of Furoscix

### Our Subcutaneous Formulation of Furosemide

In total, the Furoscix clinical development program consisted of 400 subjects across all clinical and human factor studies. To date, 127 patients have been administered our subcutaneous formulation of furosemide in our clinical studies. Based on the overall observations and outcomes of these studies, we believe that Furoscix has the potential to be used to treat edema with a similar profile to IV furosemide and it has been administered by patients, care givers and healthcare practitioners in clinical and home environments.

We have completed numerous studies during the development of Furoscix, including two pivotal clinical studies, four exploratory clinical studies, eight studies to shape its design, referred to as formative human factor studies, and four studies to measure or validate its usability, referred to as summative human factor studies. In clinical studies, 101 subjects received our subcutaneous formulation of furosemide via the sc2Wear Infusor, and 26 subjects received our subcutaneous formulation of furosemide delivered via the B. Braun Perfusor Space Infusion Pump, or B. Braun Pump, a large, three-pound commercial pump used in operating rooms and emergency care settings. In the summative human factor studies, 41 heart failure patients, 39 caregivers and 52 healthcare practitioners were evaluated to determine their ability to prepare, administer, activate and complete infusions with the sc2Wear Infusor.

We held a pre-NDA meeting with the FDA on June 1, 2017 and we submitted an NDA for our lead product candidate, Furoscix, in August 2017. The FDA notified us in October 2017 that it had accepted our NDA for review and assigned us a June 23, 2018 PDUFA date.

### Pharmacokinetic/Pharmacodynamic (PK/PD) Study

We conducted a pivotal, randomized, open-label crossover study from April to September 2015 to assess the relative bioavailability of our novel formulation of furosemide and IV furosemide in 17 patients with heart failure who were experiencing decompensation. In this study, our subcutaneous formulation of furosemide was delivered via the B. Braun Pump. This study also evaluated diuresis and the excretion of sodium over eight hours and 24 hours post-dosing as the pharmacodynamic endpoints.

#### Treatment arms

In this study, our reference treatment was IV furosemide with two bolus injections of 40 mg dosed over two minutes, two hours apart. Our test treatment was subcutaneous administration of our novel furosemide formulation with 80 mg infused subcutaneously, with 30 mg over the first hour followed by 12.5 mg per hour over the subsequent four hours.

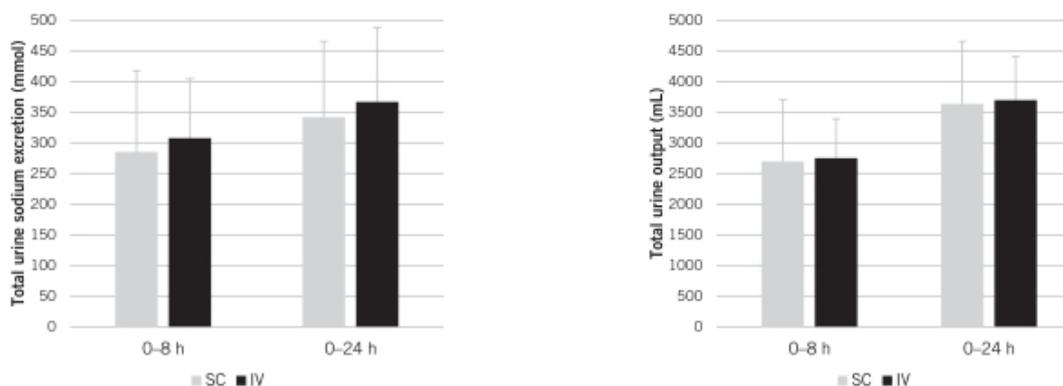
#### Comparative pharmacokinetic results

This study demonstrated bioequivalence in the concentration of drug delivered over time based upon the area under the curve, or AUC, between our subcutaneous formulation of furosemide and IV furosemide. Although the maximum concentration, or C<sub>max</sub>, of furosemide achieved was four-fold higher with IV injection compared to subcutaneous infusion, the bioavailability of subcutaneous infusion relative to intravenous injection was 99.6%, with a 90% confidence interval of 94.8% to 104.8%, thus meeting the FDA's defined bioequivalence criteria limit of 80% to 125%. We believe that the difference in C<sub>max</sub> between IV injection and subcutaneous furosemide is attributable to the two bolus IV injections administered at the initiation of IV therapy. Nevertheless, the longer period of administration for our subcutaneous formulation resulted in similar bioavailability profiles of the two routes of administration over time. The following table presents the comparative pharmacokinetics demonstrated in this study between our subcutaneous formulation of furosemide compared to IV furosemide as illustrated by the similar profiles for area under the curve and half life of the two formulations:

ROUTE: DOSE	C <sub>max</sub> (ng/mL)	AUC <sub>t</sub> (ng×hr/mL)	t <sub>1/2</sub> (hr)	AUC <sub>∞</sub> (ng×hr)
Subcutaneous: 30 mg infused over the first hour followed by 12.5 mg per hour for the subsequent 4 hours (total dose: 80 mg)	2040±449	13000±4000	3.16±0.911	13100±4010
Intravenous: 40 mg bolus x 2 doses separated by 120 minutes (total dose: 80 mg)	8580±2540	13000±4050	2.55±0.339	13200±4170

*Comparative pharmacodynamic results*

The total urine sodium excretion and urine output were comparable between our subcutaneous formulation of furosemide and IV furosemide. The following graphs reflect the comparative mean total urine sodium excretion and urine output:



**Phase 3 Product Design Clinical Validation (PDCV) Study**

In October 2016, we conducted a Phase 3, open-label, single-arm, single-dose study as a clinical validation of the use of Furoscix in 74 adult heart failure patients at five clinical sites in the United States. Six of these patients were ultimately excluded from the study due to activator interruptions, and one patient was excluded due to truncated infusion, resulting in a modified intention to treat, or MITT, population of 67 patients that completed the five-hour infusion period.

In this study, our novel formulation of furosemide was subcutaneously administered using our sc2Wear Infusor with a preset dosage of 30 mg furosemide over the first hour, then 12.5 mg per hour for the subsequent four hours.

*Primary Endpoints*

The primary objective of this study was to evaluate the on-body performance of Furoscix, defined as the absence of major product and major system related failures leading to inadequate delivery of drug product (performance criteria of <sup>3</sup> 95% passage rate with 95% confidence) in the MITT population.

In the MITT population, 63 of 67 (94%) Furoscix infusions were free from major system-related failure, with a 95% confidence interval of 85% to 98%. As such, this study did not meet the FDA's prespecified performance criteria. All patients in the MITT population, however, achieved furosemide concentrations above the pre-defined target therapeutic threshold. In the four cases in which Furoscix administered dose fell below the predefined criteria of 80 mg (10 mL) ± 10%, only one was determined to be due to a dispensing failure, which resulted in the delivery of 67 mg of furosemide instead of the 72 mg minimum dose specification. The three other dispensing failures were determined to be caused by an undetected, incomplete filling of the sc2Wear Infusor, likely due to user errors, as the three incomplete fillings observed in these devices were not able to be reproduced during bench testing. When the sc2Wear Infusor was filled adequately, 63 of 64 (98%) Furoscix infusions were within the prespecified performance criteria, with a 95% confidence interval of 92% to 100%.

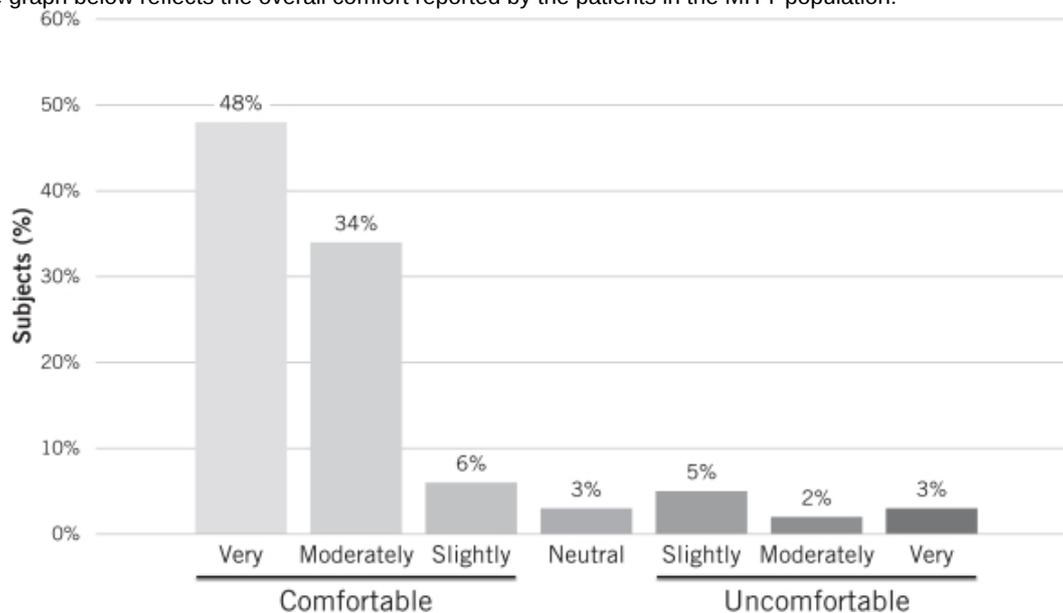
We discussed these data with the FDA at a pre-NDA meeting, held on June 1, 2017, and presented the results of a completed human factors study in which the frequency of undetected fill errors was 0%, as a result of our improvements to the quick reference guide and instructions for use. As part of our NDA submission, the FDA requested that a high-level safety assurance case be submitted just prior to the NDA submission and that certain updated risk analyses be submitted concurrently with our NDA. Although the PDCV study did not meet the prespecified endpoint, during the meeting, the FDA requested that our NDA include an assessment of the data generated from all of our studies, and stated that our NDA appeared capable of supporting a review. In connection with the NDA that we submitted to the FDA in August 2017, we submitted the materials that we believe are responsive to the requests that the FDA made at our pre-NDA meeting. We reported to the FDA that we believe

[Table of Contents](#)

Furoscix will be used as designed by patients, caregivers and healthcare professionals in the clinic and in the home, even by first-time users, as supported by our observations that risk control measures such as our training videos, customer help line, and warning labels were sufficient in reducing the possibility of user errors to an acceptable level. In addition, we represented in our submission that the FDA may deem overall residual risks acceptable because furosemide is generally considered safe and effective due to its long history of use in the U.S., Furoscix will not be indicated for emergency situations, any under-dosing or error in treatment would be readily detectable due to the noticeable pharmacological response of furosemide, and the sources of residual risk in administering Furoscix are limited to non-critical tasks that we believe do not pose a serious health hazard to users or the patient. We also submitted a safety assurance case that the design of Furoscix may be deemed safe for its intended use because we believe Furoscix is adequately defined, its design is adequately verified and validated, the risks associated with Furoscix and its system hazards have been identified and mitigated.

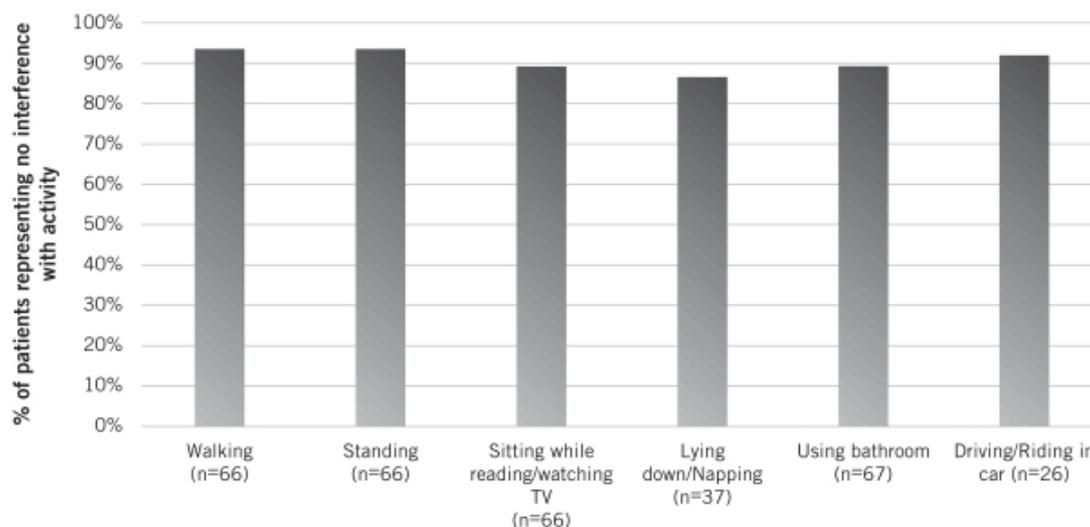
*Secondary Analysis*

The study also included secondary tolerability endpoints, including a comfort of wear questionnaire that was completed one hour after completion of Furoscix infusion. The graph below reflects the overall comfort reported by the patients in the MITT population:



## [Table of Contents](#)

In addition, administration of Furoscix was found to have only minimal impact on participants' daily living activities, which included walking, standing, sitting, lying down/napping, using the bathroom, or driving/riding in a car. Between 86% and 94% of participants who answered the questionnaire reported that Furoscix did not interfere with the activities reflected in the graph below:



### *Safety Analysis*

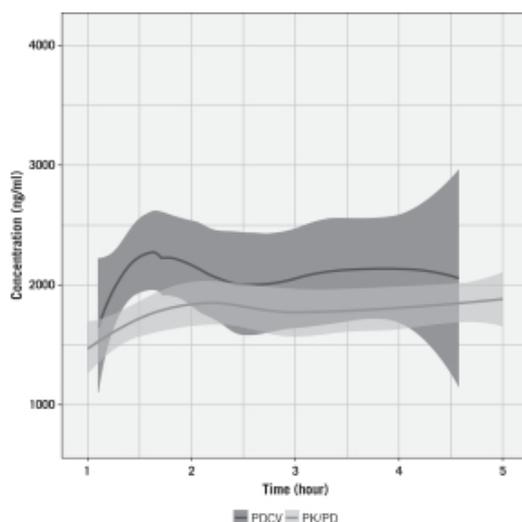
We observed no needle insertion failures, dislodgements or leaks. The most frequently observed adverse events were local skin effects, such as reddening, or erythema, bruising and pain, which were mild or moderate in severity. No patients reported infections at the infusion site. One serious adverse event was observed and determined by the investigator not to be related to Furoscix. The event was a single episode of ventricular tachycardia, or quickening of the patient's heart rate, that occurred five days after completion of the study. The event occurred in a patient with a history of prior episodes of ventricular tachycardia.

### ***Post-Hoc Comparative Analysis to Bridge the Pharmacokinetics from the PK/PD Study and Plasma Concentrations from the PDCV Study***

The B. Braun Pump was used for subcutaneous administration of our subcutaneous formulation of furosemide in the PK/PD study and our sc2Wear Infusor was used to administer our subcutaneous formulation of furosemide in the PDCV study. Based on a pharmacokinetic bridging analysis conducted between the PK/PD and PDCV studies, comparable furosemide systemic exposures and subsequently comparable diuresis would be expected to be achieved when our subcutaneous furosemide formulation is administered via the sc2Wear Infusor compared to the B. Braun Pump.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The same 80 mg dose and dosing regimen of 30 mg dosed over the first hour followed by 12.5 mg/hour for the subsequent four hours, was used in both studies. Mean furosemide concentrations and the representative 95% confidence intervals obtained during the five-hour infusion from the two studies are represented in the figure below:



Overall, between the first and fifth hours, the plasma furosemide concentrations were higher and more variable in the PDCV study compared to the PK/PD study, partly due to the unmatched timepoints. However, between the second and fifth hours the furosemide concentrations were similar between the two studies. The higher concentrations observed in the PDCV study were lower than the  $C_{max}$  observed in the IV doses in the PK/PD study, which we believe is relevant to regulatory safety assessments of Furoscix.

### **Human Factors Summary**

Based on results from eight formative and four summative human factors studies that we conducted from Fall 2015 to Spring 2017 to evaluate ability to independently fill the sc2Wear Infusor pump, apply the pump to the delivery site, commence infusion and confirm the completion of infusion, we believe heart failure patients, caregivers and healthcare practitioners will be able to operate Furoscix, if approved, in a home environment, clinical setting or medical facility.

A total of 83 and 132 representative users participated in formative and summative usability testing, respectively. Results from each study led to refinements to the device, packaging, instructions for use, quick reference guide and training video components to improve instructional formatting, illustrations, and descriptions.

### **Investigator Sponsored Study**

In February 2016, an open label, randomized study of 40 patients was initiated to evaluate urine output and adverse events of our subcutaneous formulation of furosemide administered subcutaneously via B. Braun Pump compared to IV furosemide in patients with decompensated heart failure presenting to the John's Hopkins Heart Failure Bridge Clinic. In this study, subjects randomized to receive our subcutaneous formulation of furosemide were administered a single, 80 mg dose subcutaneously over five hours and patients randomized to IV furosemide received a single dose intravenously equivalent to their oral maintenance dose up to a maximum dose of 160 mg. The mean dose of IV furosemide that was administered was 123+47 mg and 58% received the maximum 160 mg dose. The primary endpoint of the study was to evaluate urine output after six hours. From the results of this study, the investigator concluded that treatment with our subcutaneous formulation of furosemide resulted in equivalent diuresis and weight loss and was well tolerated compared to IV furosemide in patients with decompensated heart failure presenting to an outpatient heart failure clinic. There was one adverse event, an episode of hypokalemia, which is a drop in a subject's potassium levels, observed in a subject who received our subcutaneous formulation of furosemide. In this subject, the serum potassium level at baseline was 4.1 milliequivalents per liter, or mEq/L and dropped to 3.3 mEq/L after subcutaneous infusion of furosemide, which is slightly below the normal range of 3.5 mEq/L to 5.0 mEq/L. There were no serious adverse events reported.

### **Ongoing Studies**

A two phase, multicenter study sponsored by the Duke Clinical Research Institute and funded by the National Heart, Lung and Blood Institute is currently ongoing. A pilot study designed to evaluate the safety and feasibility of subcutaneous delivery of furosemide in patients with acute heart failure in the hospital and outpatient setting is active and recruiting patients. A randomized evaluation of 300 patients to determine the impact of early discharge with continued diuresis with home administration of Furoscix compared to IV furosemide on clinical outcome and hospital length of stay in patients admitted to the hospital with worsening heart failure will commence after the completion of the pilot study. We anticipate that results from this study will be available in the first half of 2019.

We also intend to support additional investigator sponsored studies and initiate Phase 4 studies with Furoscix to evaluate the efficacy, safety, patient acceptance and health economics and outcomes research in 2018 and beyond.

### **Commercialization**

If we successfully obtain regulatory approval, we plan to commercialize Furoscix in the United States by building and utilizing our own commercial infrastructure. We currently intend to focus our commercial efforts initially on the United States market, which we believe represents the largest market opportunity for Furoscix. In addition, we plan to establish collaborations with third-party intermediaries outside of the United States to distribute our products in foreign markets, if approved by the relevant foreign regulatory authorities.

We believe that we can effectively commercialize Furoscix, if approved, in the United States with an initial specialty sales force of approximately 40 representatives. We intend to initially pursue a highly-concentrated target market, which consists of 350 hospitals and clinics that, collectively, account for 40% of all IV furosemide administered to heart failure patients based on current IMS Drug Distribution Data. We also plan to target the top ten Medicare Part D plans, which cover 80% of Medicare Part D patients. We conducted payer research on 14 payers, representing 22 to 29 million total Medicare lives. We found that reducing length of stay, reducing readmissions and increasing patient comfort were ranked as important potential attributes of Furoscix by the health plans and pharmacy benefit managers that were surveyed.

We intend to build a highly focused commercial infrastructure focused on distribution, promotion and customer support to our key hospital targets. Our target physician call points within these hospitals will include heart failure specialists, cardiologists, emergency room doctors and heart failure nurse practitioners. To date, our market research with 309 healthcare professionals has indicated that 93% of our target physicians would adopt Furoscix, if approved, with 80% intending to adopt Furoscix in the first six months of product availability. Furthermore, within the prescriber group of heart failure specialists, cardiologists and nurse practitioners that we intend to target at launch, the intent to adopt is 93%, 96% and 94%, respectively, and 89%, 88% and 86%, respectively, of those prescribers intend to adopt in the first six months of product availability. Based on our market research, healthcare professionals perceive the top advantages of Furoscix, if approved, as the ability to treat in the home setting, prevention of hospitalization, and avoidance of IV placement, while the lowest perceived barriers to adoption identified in the survey were the preference to monitor in a hospital setting, current medications are sufficient and hospital guidelines or protocols. In addition, based on a last two patient exercise conducted in our quantitative market research with healthcare professionals, when given the option to change their prior treatment choice to Furoscix, if approved, 65% of healthcare practitioners in a clinic setting and 46% in a hospital setting would have prescribed our product candidate. We expect to supplement our sales force with representatives in the medical science, nursing, and reimbursement fields to support the proper training and utilization of Furoscix.

As part of our commercialization strategy, we plan to educate hospitals, healthcare practitioners, patients and caregivers of the benefits of Furoscix and its proper use. We plan to work with national associations, such as the American Heart Association, hospital networks, and individual hospitals to update treatment and discharge guidelines to include subcutaneous furosemide in treatment plans. These guidelines are intended to provide information to hospitals and healthcare practitioners regarding treatment of heart failure patients with subcutaneous furosemide.

Advocacy groups, patients and caregivers are active and vocal in the heart failure space. We intend to continue to engage these advocacy groups to provide awareness around worsening heart failure and the ability to treat edema outside of the hospital setting.

## [Table of Contents](#)

We expect to package Furoscix, if approved, as both a starter and refill kit, which may present opportunities under both Medicare Part B and D reimbursement pathways. Hospital outpatient departments, clinics, and physician offices would be able to train and initially place Furoscix for the patient and may be reimbursed for these services under Medicare Part B so long as certain criteria are met. Inpatients transitioning out of the hospital who require additional days of treatment may obtain Furoscix refill kits outside of the acute care setting. In April 2016, we held a meeting with CMS, at which CMS stated that coverage and reimbursement of Furoscix may be available under Medicare Part D as a transition of care drug. By educating patients on the proper use of Furoscix shortly after discharge followed by a face-to-face visit, health care professionals can ensure proper training, initiate treatment at the point of care, and ensure that patients can receive additional days of treatment in the home setting.

### **OUR PLATFORM AND OTHER PIPELINE PROGRAMS**

We have completed clinical trials and submitted an NDA for Furoscix, and believe that our sc2Wear subcutaneous drug delivery system has the potential to be used to administer additional existing drugs, specifically in the cardiovascular and infectious disease areas. If approved, administration of drug product candidates with our sc2Wear Infusor may overcome many of the common issues with IV therapy, such as high costs associated with hospital admission, complications of IV line placement and disruption of daily living activities.

#### **Our Pipeline Programs**

Beyond our initial focus on heart failure, our strategy is to apply our proprietary technology for the development of additional product candidates where, if approved, effective and convenient subcutaneous therapy may benefit patients, caregivers and payers.

- *scFurosemide*: Our lead product candidate, Furoscix, consists of our proprietary subcutaneous formulation of furosemide delivered via our sc2Wear Infusor for diuresis in heart failure patients outside of the acute care setting. We have completed two pivotal clinical studies, four exploratory clinical studies, and 12 human factor studies for Furoscix. We filed an NDA for Furoscix with the FDA in August 2017 and, if the NDA is approved by the FDA, which we expect to potentially occur in mid-2018 based on the June 23, 2018 PDUFA date assigned to us, we expect to commercially launch Furoscix within 90 days of such approval.
- *scCeftriaxone*: We have filed an investigational new drug application, or IND, for scCeftriaxone, an antibiotic currently used intravenously for the treatment of infections caused by gram-positive and gram-negative organisms. To date, we have completed a PK study for scCeftriaxone and plan to conduct an additional key Phase 3 study in 2019 to support an expected NDA filing in 2020.
- *scCarbapenem*: We have completed several IND-enabling studies for our scCarbapenem program, an antibiotic currently used intravenously for the treatment of infections caused by gram-negative organisms.

#### **Ceftriaxone**

Many patients with an infection requiring IV antibiotics are admitted to the hospital, and a portion of these patients will require subsequent outpatient treatment with IV administration requiring insertion of a PICC line catheter. Ceftriaxone is a parenteral antibiotic commonly used to treat various types of infections, including pneumonia, bone and joint infections, blood stream infections, urinary tract infections and Lyme Disease. According to 2015 data from Arlington Medical Resources, ceftriaxone is the second most utilized antibiotic in the hospital setting and second most utilized IV antibiotic at hospital discharge. Based on Option Care data from August 2016, ceftriaxone represents the largest segments of antibiotics prescribed in the outpatient setting, accounting for 19% of all outpatient prescriptions. Each year, there are approximately 15 million outpatient days of ceftriaxone therapy in the United States based on IMS Health data, with 50% of outpatient ceftriaxone administered to Medicare patients who do not have coverage for home infusion services and frequently must drive to a hospital clinic, emergency room or physician office or be admitted to a skilled nursing facility or hospital to receive IV antibiotics. Subcutaneous antibiotics, including ceftriaxone, have the potential to reduce the length of hospital stay by facilitating transition of care and eliminate the risks of complications from long term IV catheters. They also would provide a level of convenience and independence to patients and caregivers with a reduction in the economic burden to payers, particularly in Medicare, by reducing payments for outpatient infusion services.

## [Table of Contents](#)

After the submission of the IND we conducted a randomized, partially blinded crossover study of 18 patients to evaluate the PK and bioavailability of a commercial formulation of ceftriaxone administered subcutaneously as compared to IV administration. In this study, we observed that the bioavailability of subcutaneous ceftriaxone was 108% of that of IV ceftriaxone. In a PD model based on subcutaneous pharmacokinetics observed in this study, the T>MIC for the first 24 hours for the ceftriaxone 1-gram subcutaneous infusion was observed to be not inferior to the 1-gram IV infusion (98.5% vs 100%). The most common adverse event observed with subcutaneous ceftriaxone administration was pain with a median pain score of two on a scale of zero to ten (with zero being no pain and ten being the worst possible pain). There were no serious adverse events reported in this study.

We intend to conduct additional studies to evaluate optimal delivery for ceftriaxone and to evaluate the skin safety of ceftriaxone administered subcutaneously with our proprietary sc2Wear Infusor. If results from our clinical program for subcutaneous ceftriaxone are positive, we expect to be in a position to submit an NDA for this drug-device combination product candidate in 2020.

### **Additional Product Programs**

We are leveraging our proprietary technology and know-how for use in other clinical settings where subcutaneous delivery can improve IV treatments to develop a suite of product candidates for treatment of cardiovascular and infectious diseases that, like Furoscix and ceftriaxone, we believe can decrease the cost of treatment by moving treatment out of the hospital setting and eliminating the need for IV catheters. We expect to pursue the development of a subcutaneous carbapenem to treat infections caused by gram-negative infections and have completed initial feasibility work on a potential candidate. We also intend to identify other opportunities in the cardiovascular and infectious disease areas where subcutaneous delivery can improve patient treatment and reduce healthcare costs. We intend to evaluate market criteria to systematically choose potential product programs for our pipeline. We plan to look for product candidates that we believe allow us to clearly demonstrate value to patients and the healthcare system and that have large market potential and a concentrated specialty physician prescribing base. We expect to leverage our Furoscix sales force to promote additional products that we develop and commercialize.

### **Our Expertise in Subcutaneous Drug Development**

We developed Furoscix to have a physiologic pH that allows for subcutaneous administration with reduced discomfort to the patient. We believe we are the only pharmaceutical company to utilize a buffering agent to reformulate furosemide at a lower pH that has been well tolerated when administered subcutaneously in clinical trials. We believe an opportunity exists to leverage our drug formulation expertise in converting other IV-based therapies within our licensed therapeutic areas to formulations suitable for subcutaneous delivery.

In addition, through our development and NDA submission of Furoscix we have gained significant experience in subcutaneous infusion device development and regulatory strategy for 505(b)(2) and combination products. Our delivery technology along with our device development expertise will allow us to efficiently modify our current device design to deliver future drug product candidates. Future product candidates will be focused on the conversion of existing IV products and will follow the 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway. The 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway along with our expertise in combination product development will provide efficiency in the development and subsequent approval of our future product candidates.

### **Our sc2Wear Infusor**

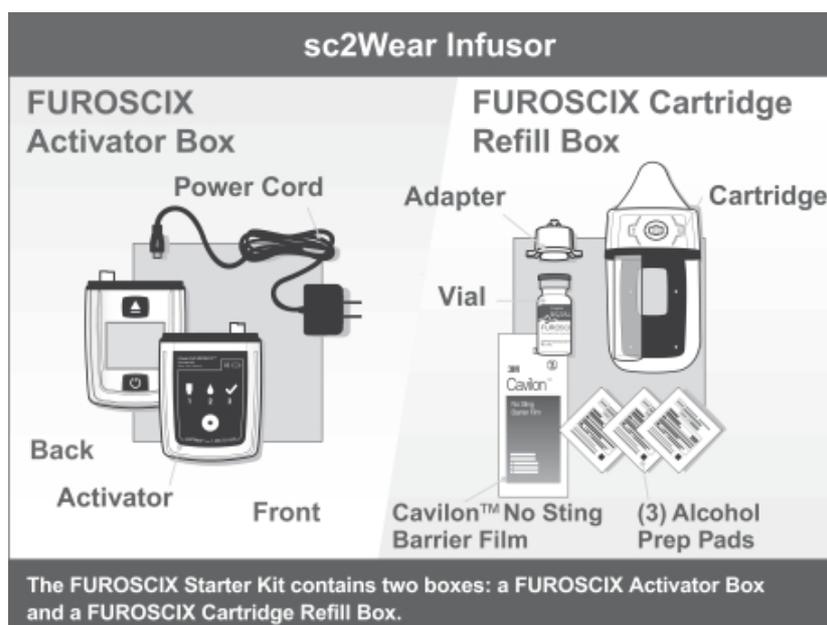
Our sc2Wear Infusor is based on the SenseCore single-use, rotary micro-piston pump, which we license from Sensile. The sc2Wear Infusor is a two-component system, consisting of a reusable activator and a disposable cartridge. The disposable, single-use cartridge contains all patient-contacting and drug-contacting components, including the micro-piston pump, an automatic needle insertion and retraction mechanism, a fluid reservoir barrel and a base plate and an adhesive backing that holds the system onto the patient's skin for subcutaneous administration of medications. The reusable activator includes visual and audible indicators for ease of use and administration.

The sc2Wear Infusor is applied to the patient's abdomen. When the device is activated, the pump propels the medication through a fluid path and delivers the drug formulation through a thin, 27-gauge needle into the patient's subcutaneous tissue. Our subcutaneous delivery system can be worn while patients perform typical daily life activities during that time, which we believe allows patients to receive treatment with minimal interference with their daily routine.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Each rotation of the piston pump corresponds to a 10 µL administration of drug formulation. The activator can be programmed to allow for delivery of a precise dosage of a drug to obtain a given pharmacokinetic profile. The dosage is pre-programmed and cannot be altered by the user or healthcare provider.

The figures below illustrate the primary components of the sc2Wear Infusor.



### **MANUFACTURE OF OUR PRODUCT CANDIDATES**

We use a network of qualified suppliers or contract manufacturing organizations, or CMOs, to produce, manufacture, sterilize and assemble the component parts of our product candidates, including Furoscix. Our suppliers produce these component parts to our designs and specifications. Certain processes utilized in the manufacture and test of our product candidates have been verified and validated as required by the FDA and other regulatory bodies. The manufacturing facilities of our suppliers are subject to periodic inspection by the FDA and certain corresponding

## [Table of Contents](#)

state agencies, and we regularly audit our suppliers' processes to ensure conformity with the specifications, policies and procedures for our product candidates.

We currently produce Furoscix for use in our clinical trials and stability studies only. We believe that our current third-party manufacturers have capacity for potential commercialization of Furoscix, if approved, in quantities sufficient to meet our expected commercial needs, and to accommodate the manufacturing of materials for future clinical trials of other potential product programs that we may identify for our product pipeline.

In preparation of the potential commercial launch of Furoscix, if approved, we plan to automate the manufacture and assembly of both the single-use and multi-use component parts of our sc2Wear Infusor by our existing third-party suppliers. We expect that this automation will further increase our capacity to manufacture commercial-size batches of Furoscix sufficient to meet projected peak global demand.

## **INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY**

### **Proprietary protection**

Our commercial success depends in part on our ability to obtain and maintain proprietary protection for our drug candidates, manufacturing and process discoveries and other know-how, to operate without infringing the proprietary rights of others, and to prevent others from infringing on our proprietary rights. We and our partners have been building and continue to build our intellectual property portfolio relating to our product candidates and technology. Our policy is to seek to protect our proprietary position by, among other methods, filing U.S. and certain foreign patent applications related to our proprietary technology, inventions and improvements that are important to the development and implementation of our business. We also intend to rely on trade secrets, know-how, continuing technological innovation, and potential in-licensing opportunities to develop and maintain our proprietary position. We cannot be sure that patents will be granted with respect to any of our pending patent applications or with respect to any patent applications filed by us in the future, nor can we be sure that any of our existing patents or any patents that may be granted to us or our partners in the future will be commercially useful in protecting our technology.

### **Patent rights**

Patent life determination depends on the date of filing of the application and other factors as promulgated under the patent laws. In most countries, including the United States, the patent term is generally 20 years from the earliest claimed filing date of a non-provisional patent application in the applicable country.

### ***scFurosemide formulation***

As of October 31, 2017, we own a patent family directed to the composition of matter of our subcutaneous formulation for furosemide and methods of treating edema, hypertension and heart failure using the formulation of furosemide. This patent family includes one pending U.S. patent application for which we recently received a notice of allowance for method of treatment claims, one pending patent application in each of Canada, China, Europe and Japan, and nine pending patent applications in other countries outside of the United States. Patents that issue from this patent family are generally expected to expire in 2034, excluding any additional term for patent term adjustment.

### ***Tri- and bi-phasic dosing regimens for time-dependent antibiotics***

As of September 30, 2017, we own a patent family directed to methods of treating infections and other diseases using a tri-phasic or a bi-phasic dosing regimen of a time-dependent antibiotic, which methods can include subcutaneous delivery via a micropump or patch pump device. This patent family includes one pending U.S. patent application, one pending patent application in Europe, and one pending patent application in another country outside of the United States. Patents that issue from this patent family are generally expected to expire in 2035, excluding any additional term for patent term adjustment.

### **Trade secret and other protection**

In addition to patented intellectual property, we also rely on trade secrets and proprietary know-how to protect our technology and maintain our competitive position, especially when we do not believe that patent protection is appropriate or can be obtained. Our policy is to require each of our employees, consultants and advisors to execute a confidentiality and inventions assignment agreement before beginning their employment, consulting or advisory relationship with us. The agreements generally provide that the individual must keep confidential and not disclose to other parties any confidential information developed or learned by the individual during the course of the individual's

## [Table of Contents](#)

relationship with us except in limited circumstances. These agreements generally also provide that we shall own all inventions conceived by the individual in the course of rendering services to us.

### **Other intellectual property rights**

We file trademark applications and pursue registrations in the United States and abroad when appropriate. We own U.S. Registration No. 4851675 for the mark SCPHARMACEUTICALS for pharmaceutical preparations and substances for the treatment of cardiovascular and cardiopulmonary diseases and disorders. We also own pending trademark applications for scPharmaceuticals, sc2Wear, and Furoscix in the United States and the EU for use in connection with our pharmaceutical research and development as well as products, as well as trade names that could be used with our potential products. The USPTO has allowed the following trademark applications which are awaiting Statements of Use: scPharmaceuticals (Class 5 house-mark; Class 10 medical devices); Furoscix (Class 5 cardiovascular); and sc2Wear (Class 10 medical devices). The EU has Published the following trademark applications: scPharmaceuticals (Class 5 cardiovascular; Class 5 infectious disease; Class 5 pharmaceuticals); Furoscix (Class 5 cardiovascular); and sc2Wear (Class 10 medical devices).

From time to time, we may find it necessary or prudent to obtain licenses from third-party intellectual property holders.

### **Sensile License Agreement**

In June 2015, we entered into a license agreement with Sensile Medical AG and its former affiliates, Sensile Holding AG and Sensile Patent AG, which we refer to collectively as Sensile, through which we have been granted, except as described below, an exclusive worldwide license under certain intellectual property rights owned or controlled by Sensile, to develop, commercialize and sell a drug-device combination product for subcutaneous administration in a defined field, which includes generic loop diuretics, certain generic therapies for cardiovascular indications, and certain generic infectious disease therapies, including antibiotics. Sensile has also granted us an exclusive worldwide manufacturing license to permit us, or an alternative supplier, to make the drug-device combination product described above, which we have outsourced to third-party manufacturers. Under the license agreement, we have been licensed a patent portfolio of over ten patent families directed to drug pump technology, at least three families of which are applicable to our sc2Wear Infusor. These three families include certain granted patents and pending patent applications in the United States and foreign jurisdictions, including Australia, Brazil, Canada, China, certain European countries, Hong Kong, India, Israel, Japan, Mexico, Russia, Singapore, South Africa, and South Korea. Patents in these three families will begin expiring in the 2024 to 2026 time frame, with certain patent rights extending from 2027 to 2030 and possibly 2034, subject to payment of annuity and maintenance fees and further subject to possible patent term extension. We own the improvements resulting from the development activities, whether by us or by Sensile, related to the drugs and the product or components thereof. Sensile owns the improvements resulting from development activities related to the device and its manufacturing process which are not specific to the device.

We are subject to diligence obligations to achieve certain milestones set forth in the license agreement. For example, we are required to commence commercial sales of an approved product for loop diuretics within twelve months after obtaining regulatory approval in such country or region. In addition, if we obtain regulatory approval of a product in the United States, we are required to submit that product for regulatory approval in the European Union within twelve months, and all other countries within 24 months after the first commercial sale of such product in the United States. The license agreement also requires us to secure FDA approval of the product within 24 months after our submission of an NDA which, in the case of Furoscix, we submitted in August 2017. In the event that we fail to comply with these diligence obligations, we may lose exclusivity in the field of loop diuretics under the license.

As consideration for the license, we are required to pay a low- to mid-single digit fee on certain components within the product that are sold to a third party or used in clinical trials. In addition, we are required to pay a low- to mid-single digit royalty on net sales of products covered by the license. Such royalty obligations cease with respect to the geographies or products for which we lose exclusivity, or in the event that Sensile materially breaches an obligation.

Either we or Sensile may terminate the license agreement if the other party commits a material breach and fails to cure such breach within 90 days after written notice, or upon the bankruptcy, insolvency, dissolution or winding up of the other party. In addition, we may terminate the license agreement for any reason, upon 60 days' prior written notice.

## COMPETITION

Our industry is characterized by rapidly advancing technologies, intense competition and a strong emphasis on proprietary products. We face competition and potential competition from a number of sources, including pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies, generic drug companies, drug delivery companies and academic and research institutions. We believe the key competitive factors that will affect the development and commercial success of our product candidates include ease of administration and convenience of dosing, therapeutic efficacy, safety and tolerability profiles and cost. Many of our potential competitors have substantially greater financial, technical and human resources than we do, as well as more experience in the development of product candidates, obtaining FDA and other regulatory approvals of products, and the commercialization of those products. Consequently, our competitors may develop similar products for the treatment of heart failure or for other indications we may pursue in the future, and such competitors' products may be more effective, better tolerated and less costly than our product candidates. Our competitors may also be more successful in manufacturing and marketing their products than we are. We will also face competition in recruiting and retaining qualified personnel and establishing clinical trial sites and patient enrollment in clinical trials.

## GOVERNMENT REGULATION

### *United States Drug Development*

In the United States, the FDA regulates drugs, medical devices and combinations of drugs and devices, or combination products, under the federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, or FDCA, and its implementing regulations. Drugs are also subject to other federal, state and local statutes and regulations. The process of obtaining regulatory approvals and the subsequent compliance with appropriate federal, state, local and foreign statutes and regulations require the expenditure of substantial time and financial resources. Failure to comply with the applicable U.S. requirements at any time during the product development process, approval process or after approval, may subject an applicant to administrative or judicial sanctions. These sanctions could include, among other actions, the FDA's refusal to approve pending applications, withdrawal of an approval, a clinical hold, untitled or warning letters, requests for voluntary product recalls or withdrawals from the market, product seizures, total or partial suspension of production or distribution injunctions, fines, refusals of government contracts, restitution, disgorgement, or civil or criminal penalties. Any agency or judicial enforcement action could have a material adverse effect on us.

Our product candidates are subject to regulation as combination products, which means that they are composed of both a drug product and device product. If marketed individually, each component would be subject to different regulatory pathways and reviewed by different Centers within the FDA. A combination product, however, is assigned to a Center that will have primary jurisdiction over its regulation based on a determination of the combination product's primary mode of action, which is the single mode of action that provides the most important therapeutic action. In the case of our product candidates, the primary mode of action is attributable to the drug component of the product, which means that the FDA's Center for Drug Evaluation and Research has primary jurisdiction over the premarket development, review and approval of our product candidates. Accordingly, we plan to investigate our products through the IND framework and seek approval through the NDA pathway. Based on our discussions with the FDA to date, we do not anticipate that the FDA will require a separate medical device authorization for the device, but this could change during the course of its review of any marketing application that we may submit. The process required by the FDA before a drug may be marketed in the United States generally involves the following:

- completion of extensive pre-clinical laboratory tests, animal studies and formulation studies in accordance with applicable regulations, including the FDA's Good Laboratory Practice regulations;
- submission to the FDA of an IND, which must become effective before human clinical trials may begin;
- performance of adequate and well-controlled human clinical trials in accordance with an applicable IND and other clinical study related regulations, sometimes referred to as good clinical practices, or GCPs, to establish the safety and efficacy of the proposed drug for its proposed indication;
- submission to the FDA of an NDA;
- satisfactory completion of an FDA pre-approval inspection of the manufacturing facility or facilities at which the product, or components thereof, are produced to assess compliance with the FDA's current good manufacturing practice requirements, or cGMP;

## Table of Contents

- potential FDA audit of the clinical trial sites that generated the data in support of the NDA; and
- FDA review and approval of the NDA prior to any commercial marketing or sale.

Once a pharmaceutical product candidate is identified for development, it enters the pre-clinical testing stage. Pre-clinical tests include laboratory evaluations of product chemistry, toxicity, formulation and stability, as well as animal studies. An IND sponsor must submit the results of the pre-clinical tests, together with manufacturing information, analytical data and any available clinical data or literature, to the FDA as part of the IND. The sponsor must also include a protocol detailing, among other things, the objectives of the initial clinical trial, the parameters to be used in monitoring safety and the effectiveness criteria to be evaluated if the initial clinical trial lends itself to an efficacy evaluation. Some pre-clinical testing may continue even after the IND is submitted. The IND automatically becomes effective 30 days after receipt by the FDA, unless the FDA raises concerns or questions related to a proposed clinical trial and places the trial on a clinical hold within that 30-day period. In such a case, the IND sponsor and the FDA must resolve any outstanding concerns before the clinical trial can begin. Clinical holds also may be imposed by the FDA at any time before or during clinical trials due to safety concerns or non-compliance, and may be imposed on all drug products within a certain class of drugs. The FDA also can impose partial clinical holds, for example, prohibiting the initiation of clinical trials of a certain duration or for a certain dose.

All clinical trials must be conducted under the supervision of one or more qualified investigators in accordance with GCP regulations. These regulations include the requirement that all research subjects provide informed consent in writing before their participation in any clinical trial. Further, an institutional review board, or IRB, must review and approve the plan for any clinical trial before it commences at any institution, and the IRB must conduct continuing review and reapprove the study at least annually. An IRB considers, among other things, whether the risks to individuals participating in the clinical trial are minimized and are reasonable in relation to anticipated benefits. The IRB also approves the information regarding the clinical trial and the consent form that must be provided to each clinical trial subject or his or her legal representative and must monitor the clinical trial until completed.

Each new clinical protocol and any amendments to the protocol must be submitted for FDA review, and to the IRBs for approval. Protocols detail, among other things, the objectives of the clinical trial, dosing procedures, subject selection and exclusion criteria, and the parameters to be used to monitor subject safety.

Human clinical trials are typically conducted in three sequential phases that may overlap or be combined:

- Phase 1. The product is initially introduced into a small number of healthy human subjects or patients and tested for safety, dosage tolerance, absorption, metabolism, distribution and excretion and, if possible, to gain early evidence on effectiveness. In the case of some products for severe or life-threatening diseases, especially when the product is suspected or known to be unavoidably toxic, the initial human testing may be conducted in patients.
- Phase 2. Involves clinical trials in a limited patient population to identify possible adverse effects and safety risks, to preliminarily evaluate the efficacy of the product for specific targeted diseases and to determine dosage tolerance and optimal dosage and schedule.
- Phase 3. Clinical trials are undertaken to further evaluate dosage, clinical efficacy and safety in an expanded patient population at geographically dispersed clinical trial sites. These clinical trials are intended to establish the overall risk/benefit relationship of the product and provide an adequate basis for product labeling.

Post-approval trials, sometimes referred to as Phase 4 clinical trials, may be conducted after initial marketing approval. These studies are used to gain additional experience from the treatment of patients in the intended therapeutic indication. In certain instances, the FDA may mandate the performance of Phase 4 trials. Companies that conduct certain clinical trials also are required to register them and post the results of completed clinical trials on a government-sponsored database, such as ClinicalTrials.gov in the United States, within certain timeframes. Failure to do so can result in fines, adverse publicity and civil and criminal sanctions.

Progress reports detailing the results of the clinical trials, among other information, must be submitted at least annually to the FDA, and written IND safety reports must be submitted to the FDA and the investigators for serious

## [Table of Contents](#)

and unexpected adverse events, findings from other studies that suggest a significant risk to humans exposed to the product, findings from animal or in vitro testing that suggest a significant risk to human subjects, and any clinically important increase in the rate of a serious suspected adverse reaction over that listed in the protocol or investigator brochure. Phase 1, Phase 2 and Phase 3 clinical trials may not be completed successfully within any specified period, if at all. The FDA or the clinical trial sponsor may suspend or terminate a clinical trial at any time on various grounds, including a finding that the research subjects or patients are being exposed to an unacceptable health risk. Similarly, an IRB can suspend or terminate approval of a clinical trial at its institution if the clinical trial is not being conducted in accordance with the IRB's requirements or if the product has been associated with unexpected serious harm to patients. Additionally, some clinical trials are overseen by an independent group of qualified experts organized by the clinical trial sponsor, known as a data safety monitoring board or committee. This group provides authorization for whether a trial may move forward at designated check points based on access to certain data from the study. The clinical trial sponsor may also suspend or terminate a clinical trial based on evolving business objectives and/or competitive climate.

Concurrent with clinical trials, companies usually complete additional animal studies and must also develop additional information about the chemistry and physical characteristics of the product and finalize a process for manufacturing the product in commercial quantities in accordance with cGMP requirements. The manufacturing process must be capable of consistently producing quality batches of the product candidate and, among other things, the manufacturer must develop methods for testing the identity, strength, quality and purity of the final product. Additionally, appropriate packaging must be selected and tested and stability studies must be conducted to demonstrate that the product candidate does not undergo unacceptable deterioration over its shelf life.

### ***NDA and FDA Review Process***

The results of product development, pre-clinical studies and clinical trials, along with descriptions of the manufacturing process, analytical tests conducted on the drug, proposed labeling and other relevant information, are submitted to the FDA as part of an NDA for a new drug, requesting approval to market the product. The submission of an NDA is subject to the payment of a substantial user fee, and the sponsor of an approved NDA is also subject to an annual program user fee; although a waiver of such fee may be obtained under certain limited circumstances. For example, the agency will waive the application fee for the first human drug application that a small business or its affiliate submits for review.

The FDA reviews all NDAs submitted before it accepts them for filing and may request additional information rather than accepting an NDA for filing. The FDA typically makes a decision on accepting an NDA for filing within 60 days of receipt. The decision to accept the NDA for filing means that the FDA has made a threshold determination that the application is sufficiently complete to permit a substantive review. Under the goals and policies agreed to by the FDA under the Prescription Drug User Fee Act, or PDUFA, the FDA's goal to complete its substantive review of a standard NDA and respond to the applicant is ten months from the receipt of the NDA. The FDA does not always meet its PDUFA goal dates, and the review process is often significantly extended by FDA requests for additional information or clarification and may go through multiple review cycles.

After the NDA submission is accepted for filing, the FDA reviews the NDA to determine, among other things, whether the proposed product is safe and effective for its intended use, and whether the product is being manufactured in accordance with cGMPs to assure and preserve the product's identity, strength, quality and purity. The FDA may refer applications for novel drug products or drug products which present difficult questions of safety or efficacy to an advisory committee, typically a panel that includes clinicians and other experts, for review, evaluation and a recommendation as to whether the application should be approved and under what conditions. The FDA is not bound by the recommendations of an advisory committee, but it considers such recommendations carefully when making decisions. The FDA will likely re-analyze the clinical trial data, which could result in extensive discussions between the FDA and us during the review process. The review and evaluation of an NDA by the FDA is extensive and time consuming and may take longer than originally planned to complete, and we may not receive a timely approval, if at all.

Before approving an NDA, the FDA will conduct a pre-approval inspection of the manufacturing facilities for the new product to determine whether they comply with cGMPs. The FDA will not approve the product unless it determines that the manufacturing processes and facilities are in compliance with cGMP requirements and adequate to assure consistent production of the product within required specifications. In addition, before approving an NDA, the FDA

## [Table of Contents](#)

may also audit data from clinical trials to ensure compliance with GCP requirements. After the FDA evaluates the application, manufacturing process and manufacturing facilities, it may issue an approval letter or a Complete Response Letter. An approval letter authorizes commercial marketing of the drug with specific prescribing information for specific indications. A Complete Response Letter indicates that the review cycle of the application is complete and the application will not be approved in its present form. A Complete Response Letter usually describes all the specific deficiencies in the NDA identified by the FDA. The Complete Response Letter may require additional clinical data and/or an additional pivotal Phase 3 clinical trial(s), and/or other significant and time-consuming requirements related to clinical trials, nonclinical studies or manufacturing. If a Complete Response Letter is issued, the applicant may either resubmit the NDA, addressing all the deficiencies identified in the letter, or withdraw the application. Even if such data and information are submitted, the FDA may ultimately decide that the NDA does not satisfy the criteria for approval. Data obtained from clinical trials are not always conclusive, and the FDA may interpret data differently than we interpret the same data.

There is no assurance that the FDA will ultimately approve a product for marketing in the United States, and we may encounter significant difficulties or costs during the review process. If a product receives marketing approval, the approval may be significantly limited to specific diseases and dosages or the indications for use may otherwise be limited, which could restrict the commercial value of the product. Further, the FDA may require that certain contraindications, warnings or precautions be included in the product labeling or may condition the approval of the NDA on other changes to the proposed labeling, development of adequate controls and specifications, or a commitment to conduct post-market testing or clinical trials and surveillance to monitor the effects of approved products. For example, the FDA may require Phase 4 clinical trials to further assess drug safety and effectiveness and may require testing and surveillance programs to monitor the safety of approved products that have been commercialized. The FDA may also place other conditions on approvals including the requirement for a risk evaluation and mitigation strategy, or REMS, to assure the safe use of the drug. If the FDA concludes a REMS is needed, the sponsor of the NDA must submit a proposed REMS; the FDA will not approve the NDA without an approved REMS, if required. A REMS could include medication guides, physician communication plans, or elements to assure safe use, such as restricted distribution methods, patient registries and other risk minimization tools. Any of these limitations on approval or marketing could restrict the commercial promotion, distribution, prescription or dispensing of products. Product approvals may be withdrawn for non-compliance with regulatory requirements or if problems occur following initial marketing.

### **505(b)(2) Approval Process**

Section 505(b)(2) of the FDCA provides an alternate regulatory pathway for the FDA to approve a new product and permits reliance for such approval on published literature or an FDA finding of safety and effectiveness for a previously approved drug product. Specifically, section 505(b)(2) permits the filing of an NDA where one or more of the investigations relied upon by the applicant for approval were not conducted by or for the applicant and for which the applicant has not obtained a right of reference. The applicant may rely upon published literature and/or the FDA's findings of safety and effectiveness for a previously approved drug. Typically, 505(b)(2) applicants must perform additional trials to support the change from the previously approved drug and to further demonstrate the new product's safety and effectiveness. The FDA may then approve the new product candidate for all or some of the labeled indications for which the referenced product has been approved, as well as for any new indication sought by the section 505(b)(2) applicant.

Our subcutaneous formulation of furosemide is based upon an already approved version of furosemide in oral and IV formulations, rather than a new chemical entity product candidate. Accordingly, we expect to be able to submit a 505(b)(2) application that relies on FDA's prior findings of safety and effectiveness for previously-approved oral and/or IV furosemide in our clinical development plans and our NDA submission.

### **Regulation of Combination Products in the United States**

Certain products may be comprised of components, such as drug components and device components, that would normally be regulated under different types of regulatory authorities, and frequently by different centers at the FDA. These products are known as combination products. Specifically, under regulations issued by the FDA, a combination product may be:

- a product comprised of two or more regulated components that are physically, chemically, or otherwise combined or mixed and produced as a single entity;
- two or more separate products packaged together in a single package or as a unit and comprised of drug and device products, device and biological products, or biological and drug products;
- a drug, or device, or biological product packaged separately that according to its investigational plan or proposed labeling is intended for use only with an approved individually specified drug, or device, or biological product where both are required to achieve the intended use, indication, or effect and where upon approval of the proposed product the labeling of the approved product would need to be changed, e.g., to reflect a change in intended use, dosage form, strength, route of administration, or significant change in dose; or
- any investigational drug, or device, or biological product packaged separately that according to its proposed labeling is for use only with another individually specified investigational drug, device, or biological product where both are required to achieve the intended use, indication, or effect.

Under the FDCA and its implementing regulations, the FDA is charged with assigning a center with primary jurisdiction, or a lead center, for review of a combination product. The designation of a lead center generally eliminates the need to receive approvals from more than one FDA component for combination products, although it does not preclude consultations by the lead center with other components of FDA. The determination of which center will be the lead center is based on the "primary mode of action" of the combination product. Thus, if the primary mode of action of a drug-device combination product is attributable to the drug product, the FDA center responsible for premarket review of the drug product would have primary jurisdiction for the combination product. The FDA has also established an Office of Combination Products to address issues surrounding combination products and provide more certainty to the regulatory review process. That office serves as a focal point for combination product issues for agency reviewers and industry. It is also responsible for developing guidance and regulations to clarify the regulation of combination products, and for assignment of the FDA center that has primary jurisdiction for review of combination products where the jurisdiction is unclear or in dispute.

A combination product with a drug primary mode of action generally would be reviewed and approved pursuant to the drug approval processes under the FDCA. In reviewing the NDA or 505(b)(2) application for such a product, however, FDA reviewers in the drug center could consult with their counterparts in the device center to ensure that the device component of the combination product met applicable requirements regarding safety, effectiveness, durability and performance. In addition, under FDA regulations, combination products are subject to cGMP requirements applicable to both drugs and devices, including the Quality System, or QS, regulations applicable to medical devices.

Drug-device combination products present unique challenges for competitors seeking approval of Abbreviated New Drug Applications, or ANDA, for generic versions of combination products. Generally, FDA reviews both the drug and device constituents of a proposed generic product to determine whether it is the same as the innovator product, including whether the basic design and operating principles of the device component are the same and whether minor differences require significant differences in labeling for safe and effective use. If FDA determines that the device component of the proposed generic product is not the same in terms of performance and critical design, or that the labeling is not the same, it generally will not approve the ANDA. Likewise, if FDA determines that certain clinical studies, such as clinical usability or human factors studies, are necessary to demonstrate the safety and/or effectiveness of the device component, FDA generally will not accept or approve an ANDA for a combination product and will instead require the submission of a full NDA or 505(b)(2) application.

#### **Post-Marketing Requirements**

Any products for which we receive FDA approval are subject to continuing regulation by the FDA, including, among other things, monitoring and recordkeeping activities, reporting to the applicable regulatory authorities of adverse

## [Table of Contents](#)

events with the product, providing the regulatory authorities with updated safety and efficacy information, and product sampling and distribution requirements in accordance with the Prescription Drug Marketing Act, a part of the FDCA. Moreover, each component of a combination product retains their regulatory status (as a drug or device, for example) and is subject to the requirements established by the FDA for that type of component. The FDA strictly regulates labeling, advertising, promotion and other types of information on products that are placed on the market.

Prescription drug advertising is subject to federal, state and foreign regulations. In the United States, the FDA regulates prescription drug promotion and advertising, including direct-to-consumer advertising. Prescription drug promotional materials must be submitted to the FDA in conjunction with their first use. In addition, a pharmaceutical company must comply with restrictions on promoting drugs for uses or in patient populations that are not described in the drug's approved labeling (known as "off-label use"), limitations on industry-sponsored scientific and educational activities, and requirements for promotional activities involving the internet. Although physicians may prescribe legally available drugs for off-label uses, manufacturers typically may not market or promote such off-label uses.

In the United States, once a product is approved, its manufacture is subject to comprehensive and continuing regulation by the FDA. The FDA regulations require that combination products be manufactured in specific approved facilities and in accordance with cGMPs applicable to drugs and devices, including certain QS requirements. We rely, and expect to continue to rely, on third parties for the production of clinical and commercial quantities of our products in accordance with cGMP regulations. cGMP regulations require among other things, quality control and quality assurance as well as the corresponding maintenance of records and documentation and the obligation to investigate and correct any deviations from cGMP. Drug manufacturers and other entities involved in the manufacture and distribution of approved drugs are required to register their establishments with the FDA and certain state agencies, and are subject to periodic unannounced inspections by the FDA and certain state agencies for compliance with cGMPs and other laws. Accordingly, manufacturers must continue to expend time, money, and effort in the area of production and quality control to maintain cGMP compliance. These regulations also impose certain organizational, procedural and documentation requirements with respect to manufacturing and quality assurance activities. NDA holders using contract manufacturers, laboratories or packagers are responsible for the selection and monitoring of qualified firms, and, in certain circumstances, qualified suppliers to these firms. These firms and, where applicable, their suppliers are subject to inspections by the FDA at any time, and the discovery of violative conditions, including failure to conform to cGMPs, could result in enforcement actions that interrupt the operation of any such facilities or the ability to distribute products manufactured, processed or tested by them. Discovery of problems with a product after approval may result in restrictions on a product, manufacturer, or holder of an approved NDA, including, among other things, recall or withdrawal of the product from the market.

The FDA also may require post-marketing testing, known as Phase 4 testing, REMS and surveillance to monitor the effects of an approved product or place conditions on an approval that could restrict the distribution or use of the product. Discovery of previously unknown problems with a product or the failure to comply with applicable FDA requirements can have negative consequences, including adverse publicity, judicial or administrative enforcement, untitled or warning letters from the FDA, mandated corrective advertising or communications with doctors, and civil or criminal penalties, among others. Newly discovered or developed safety or effectiveness data may require changes to a product's approved labeling, including the addition of new warnings and contraindications, and may require the implementation of other risk management measures. Also, new government requirements, including those resulting from new legislation, may be established, or the FDA's policies may change, which could delay or prevent regulatory approval of our products under development and impact approved products already on the market.

### **Other Regulatory Matters**

The distribution of pharmaceutical products is subject to additional requirements and regulations, including extensive record-keeping, licensing, storage and security requirements intended to prevent the unauthorized sale of pharmaceutical products.

The failure to comply with regulatory requirements subjects firms to possible legal or regulatory action. Depending on the circumstances, failure to meet applicable regulatory requirements can result in criminal prosecution, fines or other penalties, injunctions, voluntary recall, seizure of products, total or partial suspension of production, denial or withdrawal of product approvals, exclusion from federal healthcare programs, or refusal to allow a firm to enter into

## [Table of Contents](#)

supply contracts, including government contracts. In addition, even if a firm complies with FDA and other requirements, new information regarding the safety or effectiveness of a product could lead the FDA to modify or withdraw product approval. Prohibitions or restrictions on sales or withdrawal of future products marketed by us could materially affect our business in an adverse way.

Changes in regulations, statutes or the interpretation of existing regulations could impact our business in the future by requiring, for example: (i) changes to our manufacturing arrangements; (ii) additions or modifications to product labeling; (iii) the voluntary recall or discontinuation of our products; or (iv) additional record-keeping requirements. If any such changes were to be imposed, they could adversely affect the operation of our business.

### ***Orphan Designation and Exclusivity***

The FDA may grant orphan drug designation to drugs intended to treat a rare disease or condition that affects fewer than 200,000 individuals in the United States. Alternatively, orphan drug designation may be available if the disease or the condition affects more than 200,000 individuals in the United States and there is no reasonable expectation that the cost of developing and making the drug for this type of disease or condition will be recovered from sales in the United States.

Orphan drug designation entitles a party to financial incentives such as opportunities for grant funding towards clinical trial costs, tax advantages, and user-fee waivers. In addition, if a product is the first to receive FDA approval of the indication for which it has orphan designation, the product is entitled to orphan drug exclusivity, which means the FDA may not approve any other application to market the same drug for the same indication for a period of seven years, except in limited circumstances, such as a showing of clinical superiority over the product with orphan exclusivity.

### ***U.S. Marketing Exclusivity***

Market exclusivity provisions under the FDCA can also delay the submission or the approval of certain marketing applications, including 505(b)(2) applications. The FDA provides three years of marketing exclusivity for an NDA (including a 505(b)(2) application), or supplement to an existing NDA, if new clinical investigations, other than bioavailability studies, that were conducted or sponsored by the applicant are deemed by the FDA to be essential to the approval of the application. Three-year exclusivity is typically awarded to innovative changes to a previously-approved drug product, such as new indications, dosage forms or strengths. This three-year exclusivity covers only the modification for which the drug received approval on the basis of the new clinical investigations and does not prohibit the FDA from approving applications for drugs that do not have the innovative change, such as generic copies of the original, unmodified drug product. Three-year exclusivity blocks approval of 505(b)(2) applications and ANDAs but will not delay the submission or approval of a full NDA. However, an applicant submitting a full NDA would be required to conduct or obtain a right of reference to all of the nonclinical studies and adequate and well-controlled clinical trials necessary to demonstrate safety and effectiveness. Orphan drug exclusivity, as described below, may offer a seven-year period of marketing exclusivity, except in certain circumstances. Pediatric exclusivity is another type of regulatory market exclusivity in the United States. Pediatric exclusivity, if granted, adds six months to existing exclusivity periods and patent terms. This six-month exclusivity, which runs from the end of other exclusivity protection and patent terms, may be granted based on the voluntary completion of a pediatric trial in accordance with an FDA-issued "Written Request" for such a trial.

### ***European Orphan Designation and Exclusivity***

In the European Union, the EMA's Committee for Orphan Medicinal Products, or COMP, grants orphan drug designation to promote the development of products that are intended for the diagnosis, prevention or treatment of life-threatening or chronically debilitating conditions that affect not more than five in 10,000 persons in the European Union Community, or when, without incentives, it is unlikely that sales of such products in the European Union would be sufficient to justify the necessary investment in developing the products. Additionally, orphan drug designation is only available where no satisfactory method of diagnosis, prevention, or treatment of the condition has been authorized (or the product would be a significant benefit to those affected).

In the European Union, orphan drug designation entitles a party to financial incentives such as reduction of fees or fee waivers and 10 years of market exclusivity is granted following medicinal product approval. This period may be reduced to six years if the orphan drug designation criteria are no longer met, including where it is shown that the

product is sufficiently profitable not to justify maintenance of market exclusivity. Market exclusivity would not prevent the approval of a similar drug that is shown to be safer, more effective or otherwise clinically superior.

**Other Healthcare Laws and Compliance Requirements**

In addition to FDA restrictions on the marketing of pharmaceutical products and medical devices, we may be subject to various federal and state laws targeting fraud and abuse in the healthcare industry. These laws may impact, among other things, our proposed sales, marketing and education programs. In addition, we may be subject to patient privacy regulation by both the federal government and the states in which we conduct our business. The laws that may affect our ability to operate include:

- the federal Anti-Kickback Statute, which prohibits, among other things, knowingly and willfully soliciting, receiving, offering or paying any remuneration (including any kickback, bribe, or rebate), directly or indirectly, overtly or covertly, in cash or in kind, to induce, or in return for, either the referral of an individual, or the purchase, lease, order or recommendation of any good, facility, item or service for which payment may be made, in whole or in part, under a federal healthcare program, such as the Medicare and Medicaid programs; a person or entity does not need to have actual knowledge of the federal Anti-Kickback Statute or specific intent to violate it to have committed a violation. In addition, the government may assert that a claim including items or services resulting from a violation of the federal Anti-Kickback Statute constitutes a false or fraudulent claim for purposes of the federal False Claims Act or federal civil money penalties statute;
- federal civil and criminal false claims laws and civil monetary penalties laws, such as the federal False Claims Act, which impose criminal and civil penalties and authorize civil whistleblower or qui tam actions, against individuals or entities for, among other things: knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, to the federal government, claims for payment that are false or fraudulent; making, using or causing to be made or used, a false statement or record material to a false or fraudulent claim or obligation to pay or transmit money or property to the federal government; or knowingly concealing or knowingly and improperly avoiding or decreasing an obligation to pay money to the federal government;
- the anti-inducement law, which prohibits, among other things, the offering or giving of remuneration, which includes, without limitation, any transfer of items or services for free or for less than fair market value (with limited exceptions), to a Medicare or Medicaid beneficiary that the person knows or should know is likely to influence the beneficiary's selection of a particular supplier of items or services reimbursable by a federal or state governmental program;
- the federal Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, or HIPAA, which created new federal criminal statutes that prohibit knowingly and willfully executing, or attempting to execute, a scheme to defraud any healthcare benefit program or obtain, by means of false or fraudulent pretenses, representations, or promises, any of the money or property owned by, or under the custody or control of, any healthcare benefit program, regardless of the payer (e.g., public or private) and knowingly and willfully falsifying, concealing or covering up by any trick or device a material fact or making any materially false statements in connection with the delivery of, or payment for, healthcare benefits, items or services relating to healthcare matters; similar to the federal Anti-Kickback Statute, a person or entity does not need to have actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it in order to have committed a violation;
- HIPAA, as amended by the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act of 2009, and their respective implementing regulations, which impose requirements on certain covered healthcare providers, health plans, and healthcare clearinghouses as well as their respective business associates that perform services for them that involve the use, or disclosure of, individually identifiable health information, relating to the privacy, security and transmission of individually identifiable health information;
- the federal false statements statute, which prohibits knowingly and willfully falsifying, concealing or covering up a material fact or making any materially false statement in connection with the delivery of or payment for healthcare benefits, items or services;
- the federal transparency requirements under the Affordable Care Act, including the provision commonly referred to as the Physician Payments Sunshine Act, which requires manufacturers of drugs, devices, biologics and medical supplies for which payment is available under Medicare, Medicaid or the Children's Health Insurance Program to report annually to the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services

## [Table of Contents](#)

information related to payments or other transfers of value made to physicians (defined to include doctors, dentists, optometrists, podiatrists and chiropractors) and teaching hospitals, as well as ownership and investment interests held by the physicians described above and their immediate family members;

- federal government price reporting laws, which require us to calculate and report complex pricing metrics in an accurate and timely manner to government programs; and
- federal consumer protection and unfair competition laws, which broadly regulate marketplace activities and activities that potentially harm consumers.

Additionally, we are subject to state and non-U.S. equivalents of each of the healthcare laws described above, among others, some of which may be broader in scope and may apply regardless of the payer. Many U.S. states have adopted laws similar to the federal Anti-Kickback Statute, some of which apply to the referral of patients for healthcare services reimbursed by any source, not just governmental payers, including private insurers. In addition, some states have passed laws that require pharmaceutical companies to comply with the April 2003 Office of Inspector General Compliance Program Guidance for Pharmaceutical Manufacturers and/or the Pharmaceutical Research and Manufacturers of America's Code on Interactions with Healthcare Professionals. Several states also impose other marketing restrictions or require pharmaceutical companies to make marketing or price disclosures to the state. There are ambiguities as to what is required to comply with these state requirements and if we fail to comply with an applicable state law requirement we could be subject to penalties. Finally, there are state and non-U.S. laws governing the privacy and security of health information, many of which differ from each other in significant ways and often are not preempted by HIPAA, thus complicating compliance efforts.

Because of the breadth of these laws and the narrowness of the statutory exceptions and safe harbors available, it is possible that some of our business activities could be subject to challenge under one or more of such laws.

Violations of fraud and abuse laws may be punishable by criminal and/or civil sanctions, including penalties, fines, imprisonment and/or exclusion or suspension from federal and state healthcare programs such as Medicare and Medicaid and debarment from contracting with the U.S. government. In addition, private individuals have the ability to bring actions on behalf of the U.S. government under the federal False Claims Act as well as under the false claims laws of several states.

Neither the U.S. government nor the U.S. courts have provided definitive guidance on the application of fraud and abuse laws to our business. Law enforcement authorities are increasingly focused on enforcing these laws, and it is possible that some of our practices may be challenged under these laws. Efforts to ensure that our current and future business arrangements with third parties, and our business generally, will comply with applicable healthcare laws and regulations will involve substantial costs. It is possible that governmental authorities will conclude that our business practices, including our arrangements with physicians and other healthcare providers, some of whom receive stock options as compensation for services provided, may not comply with current or future statutes, regulations, agency guidance or case law involving applicable fraud and abuse or other healthcare laws and regulations. If any such actions are instituted against us, and we are not successful in defending ourselves or asserting our rights, those actions could have a significant impact on our business, including the imposition of civil, criminal and administrative penalties, damages, disgorgement, monetary fines, imprisonment, possible exclusion from participation in Medicare, Medicaid and other federal healthcare programs, contractual damages, reputational harm, diminished profits and future earnings, and curtailment of our operations, any of which could adversely affect our ability to operate our business and our results of operations. In addition, the approval and commercialization of any of our drug candidates outside the United States will also likely subject us to non-U.S. equivalents of the healthcare laws mentioned above, among other non-U.S. laws.

If any of the physicians or other healthcare providers or entities with whom we expect to do business with are found to be not in compliance with applicable laws, they may be subject to criminal, civil or administrative sanctions, including exclusions from government funded healthcare programs, which may also adversely affect our business.

### **Healthcare Reform**

A primary trend in the U.S. healthcare industry and elsewhere is cost containment. Government authorities and other third-party payers have attempted to control costs by limiting coverage and the amount of reimbursement for particular medical products. For example, in March 2010, the Affordable Care Act was enacted, which, among other

## [Table of Contents](#)

things, increased the minimum Medicaid rebates owed by most manufacturers under the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program; introduced a new methodology by which rebates owed by manufacturers under the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program are calculated for drugs that are inhaled, infused, instilled, implanted or injected; extended the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program to utilization of prescriptions of individuals enrolled in Medicaid managed care plans; imposed mandatory discounts for certain Medicare Part D beneficiaries as a condition for manufacturers' outpatient drugs coverage under Medicare Part D; subjected drug manufacturers to new annual fees based on pharmaceutical companies' share of sales to federal healthcare programs; imposed a new federal excise tax on the sale of certain medical devices; created a new Patient Centered Outcomes Research Institute to oversee, identify priorities in and conduct comparative clinical effectiveness research, along with funding for such research; created the Independent Payment Advisory Board, which, if impaneled, would have authority to recommend certain changes to the Medicare program that could result in reduced payments for prescription drugs; and established the a Center for Medicare Innovation at the CMS to test innovative payment and service delivery models to lower Medicare and Medicaid spending.

Since its enactment, there have been judicial and Congressional challenges to numerous provisions of the Affordable Care Act. In January 2017, President Trump signed an Executive Order directing federal agencies with authorities and responsibilities under the Affordable Care Act to waive, defer, grant exemptions from, or delay the implementation of any provision of the Affordable Care Act that would impose a fiscal or regulatory burden on states, individuals, healthcare providers, health insurers, or manufacturers of pharmaceuticals or medical devices. The U.S. House of Representatives passed legislation known as the American Health Care Act of 2017 in May, 2017. More recently, the Senate Republicans introduced and then updated a bill to replace the Affordable Care Act known as the Better Care Reconciliation Act of 2017. The Senate Republicans also introduced legislation to repeal the Affordable Care Act without companion legislation to replace it, and a "skinny" version of the Better Care Reconciliation Act of 2017. Each of these measures was rejected by the full Senate. Congress will likely consider other legislation to replace elements of the Affordable Care Act. We continue to evaluate the effect that the Affordable Care Act and its possible repeal and replacement could have on our business.

In addition, the Budget Control Act of 2011 and the Bipartisan Budget Act of 2015 led to aggregate reductions of Medicare payments to providers of up to 2% per fiscal year that will remain in effect through 2025 unless additional Congressional action is taken. Further, on January 2, 2013, the American Taxpayer Relief Act was signed into law, which, among other things, reduced Medicare payments to several types of providers, including hospitals, imaging centers and cancer treatment centers, and increased the statute of limitations period for the government to recover overpayments to providers from three to five years. More recently, there has been heightened governmental scrutiny over the manner in which manufacturers set prices for their marketed products, which have resulted in several recent Congressional inquiries and proposed bills designed to, among other things, bring more transparency to product pricing, review the relationship between pricing and manufacturer patient programs, and reform government program reimbursement methodologies for pharmaceutical products. Individual states in the United States have also become increasingly active in passing legislation and implementing regulations designed to control pharmaceutical product pricing, including price or patient reimbursement constraints, discounts, restrictions on certain product access and marketing cost disclosure and transparency measures, and, in some cases, designed to encourage importation from other countries and bulk purchasing.

We expect that additional foreign, federal and state healthcare reform measures will be adopted in the future, any of which could limit the amounts that federal and state governments will pay for healthcare products and services, which could result in limited coverage and reimbursement and reduced demand for our products, once approved, or additional pricing pressures.

### **Coverage and Reimbursement**

Significant uncertainty exists as to the coverage and reimbursement status of any product candidate for which we obtain regulatory approval. In the United States and markets in other countries, sales of any product candidates for which we receive regulatory approval for commercial sale will depend, in part, on the availability of coverage and reimbursement from third-party payers. Third-party payers include government authorities, managed care providers, private health insurers and other organizations. The process for determining whether a payer will provide coverage for a product may be separate from the process for setting the reimbursement rate that the payer will pay for the

## [Table of Contents](#)

product. Third-party payers may limit coverage to specific products on an approved list, or formulary, which might not include all of the FDA-approved products for a particular indication. A decision by a third-party payer not to cover our product candidates could reduce physician utilization of our products once approved and have a material adverse effect on our sales, results of operations and financial condition. Moreover, a payer's decision to provide coverage for a product does not imply that an adequate reimbursement rate will be approved. Adequate third-party reimbursement may not be available to enable us to maintain price levels sufficient to realize an appropriate return on our investment in product development.

In addition, coverage and reimbursement for products can differ significantly from payer to payer. One third-party payer's decision to cover a particular medical product or service does not ensure that other payers will also provide coverage for the medical product or service, or will provide coverage at an adequate reimbursement rate. As a result, the coverage determination process will require us to provide scientific and clinical support for the use of our products to each payer separately and will be a time-consuming process.

Third-party payers are increasingly challenging the price and examining the medical necessity and cost-effectiveness of medical products and services, in addition to their safety and efficacy. In order to obtain and maintain coverage and reimbursement for any product, we may need to conduct expensive clinical trials in order to demonstrate the medical necessity and cost-effectiveness of such product, in addition to the costs required to obtain regulatory approvals. Our products may not be considered medically necessary or cost-effective. If third-party payers do not consider a product to be cost-effective compared to other available therapies, they may not cover the product as a benefit under their plans or, if they do, the level of payment may not be sufficient to allow a company to sell its products at a profit.

Outside of the United States, the pricing of pharmaceutical products and medical devices is subject to governmental control in many countries. For example, in the European Union, pricing and reimbursement schemes vary widely from country to country. Some countries provide that products may be marketed only after a reimbursement price has been agreed. Some countries may require the completion of additional studies that compare the cost-effectiveness of a particular therapy to currently available therapies or so-called health technology assessments, in order to obtain reimbursement or pricing approval. Other countries may allow companies to fix their own prices for products, but monitor and control product volumes and issue guidance to physicians to limit prescriptions. Efforts to control prices and utilization of pharmaceutical products and medical devices will likely continue as countries attempt to manage healthcare expenditures.

### **Employees**

As of September 30, 2017, we had 28 employees, including six in commercial operations, five in research and development, 11 in clinical and medical affairs, regulatory affairs and quality assurance and six in finance, general administrative and executive administration. 26 employees are full time employees and two are part time employees. None of our employees are represented by a labor union or are parties to a collective bargaining agreement and we believe that our employee relations are good.

### **Facilities**

Our principal executive offices are located in a 13,066 square foot facility in Burlington, Massachusetts. The term of the lease for our facility extends through November 2022. Our facility houses our research and development, sales, marketing, finance and administrative activities. We believe that our current facilities are adequate to meet our needs for the foreseeable future and that suitable additional space will be available as and when needed.

### **Legal Proceedings**

We are not currently a party to any material legal proceedings.

**MANAGEMENT**

The following table sets forth the name, age and position of each of our executive officers and directors, as of the date of this prospectus:

<u>NAME</u>	<u>AGE</u>	<u>POSITION</u>
<b>Executive Officers</b>		
John H. Tucker	54	President, Chief Executive Officer and Director
Abraham Ceesay	39	Chief Operating Officer
Troy Ignelzi	50	Chief Financial Officer
<b>Non-Employee Directors</b>		
Mette Kirstine Agger (1)(2)	52	Director
Dorothy Coleman (1)	55	Director
Abhay Gandhi (3)	53	Director
Jack A. Khattar (2)	56	Director
Kush M. Parmar M.D., Ph.D. (1)(2)	36	Director
Leonard D. Schaeffer (3)	72	Director
Jonathan Silverstein	50	Director
<b>Director Nominee</b>		
Klaus Veitinger (3)	55	Director Nominee

(1) Member of the audit committee

(2) Member of the compensation committee

(3) Member of the nominating and corporate governance committee

**Executive Officers**

*John H. Tucker* has been our Chief Executive Officer since January 2017, and has also served on our board of directors since that time. Prior to that, from 2016 to 2017, Mr. Tucker served as chief executive officer of Algal Scientific. Before Algal Scientific, from 2014 to 2016, Mr. Tucker served as chief executive officer of Alcresta, a developer of enzyme-based products for patients with acute and chronic diseases. Prior to Alcresta, from late 2013 to April 2014 Nelson Bach U.S., Mr. Tucker, Mr. Tucker worked at Nelson Bach U.S. as chief executive officer of its North American business. Prior to that, he served as senior vice president and chief commercial officer of Incline Therapeutics, a hospital-focused specialty pharmaceutical company, from 2012 until the company was purchased by The Medicines Company in January of 2013. Mr. Tucker continued in his role at The Medicines Company through the transition into late 2013. Mr. Tucker joined Incline from AMAG Pharmaceuticals, a pharmaceutical company developing products that treat adults with iron deficiency anemia, where he was senior vice president, Commercial Operations in 2012. Prior to AMAG Pharmaceuticals, from 2007 to 2011, Mr. Tucker served as president, U.S. Operations at Basilea Pharmaceuticals, a multinational specialty biopharmaceutical company. Prior to Basilea, from 2002 to 2007, Mr. Tucker was executive vice president, Sales and Marketing at Indevus Pharmaceuticals, a specialty pharmaceutical company. Mr. Tucker also previously served at ALZA, a global pharmaceutical company, and at Johnson & Johnson, including as senior director of trade relations, government sales and senior care. Mr. Tucker holds a B.A. from Plymouth State College and an M.B.A. from New Hampshire College. We believe Mr. Tucker is qualified to serve on our board of directors because of his extensive and broad range of experience in business and healthcare product development, including previous experience growing companies in the pharmaceutical industry.

*Abraham Ceesay* joined our company in March 2016 as Chief Operating Officer. Before that, Mr. Ceesay served as Vice President, Sales, Marketing, and Commercial Operations at Keryx Biopharmaceuticals, a biopharmaceutical company focused on renal disease, from 2014 to 2016. Prior to his career at Keryx, Mr. Ceesay served at Ironwood Pharmaceuticals, a drug manufacturer, as vice president, Marketing, from 2010 to 2014. Prior to that, from 2002 to 2010, Mr. Ceesay served at Genzyme/Sanofi, a biotechnology company, initially as a field sales specialist and ultimately as the Director, Renal Global Marketing. Mr. Ceesay holds a B.S. in Health Education & Physiology from Ithaca College, and an M.B.A. from Suffolk University's Sawyer School of Management.

*Troy Ignelzi* has been our Chief Financial Officer since March 2016. Prior to that, Mr. Ignelzi provided consulting services to us in February and March 2016. Mr. Ignelzi previously served as a member of the executive leadership

## [Table of Contents](#)

teams at Juventas Therapeutics, a privately held biotechnology company, from 2014 to 2016. From 2013 to 2014, Mr. Ignelzi served as senior vice president – Operations & BD of Pharmalex, a regulatory affairs consulting company. Prior to Pharmalex, Mr. Ignelzi was vice president – Business Development at Esperion Therapeutics, a public pharmaceutical company, from 2009 to 2013. Mr. Ignelzi served as Vice President, BD & Strategic Planning at Insys Therapeutics, a specialty pharmaceutical company from 2007 to 2009. Previously, Mr. Ignelzi had served as a specialty senior sales representatives at Eli Lilly & Co., a pharmaceutical company, from February 2002 to August 2005. Mr. Ignelzi holds a B.S. in Accounting from Ferris State University.

### **Non-Employee Directors**

*Mette Kirstine Agger* has served as a member of our board of directors since March 2014. Since 2009, Ms. Agger has served as a managing partner of Lundbeckfonden Ventures, a life science venture fund. Prior to that, Ms. Agger co-founded 7TM Pharma A/S, a biotech company engaged in therapeutic drug discovery and development, in 2000, and served as its chief executive officer from founding to 2009. Prior to founding 7TM Pharma, Ms. Agger was part of the management team of NeuroSearch A/S, a drug research and development company. Ms. Agger serves on numerous boards of both in private and public companies, including Klifo, a pharmaceutical consulting company, Cydan Development, an orphan drug startup accelerator, Imara, a sickle cell disease focused drug company, Psioxus, an immuno-oncolytic virus company, Thesan Pharmaceuticals, a biopharmaceutical company focused on skin disorder therapies, Trevi Therapeutics, a late-stage clinical development company, and Veloxis, an emerging specialty pharmaceutical company. Ms. Agger graduated with an M.Sc. in Biology from the University of Copenhagen and has an M.B.A. from Henley Business School University of Reading. We believe Ms. Agger is qualified to serve on our board of directors because of her industry experience, intellectual property knowledge and her experience of serving on the board of directors for several biopharmaceutical and medtech companies.

*Dorothy Coleman* has served as a member of our board of directors since March 2015. Ms. Coleman has been the executive vice president and chief financial officer for Excellus BlueCross BlueShield and its parent corporation, The Lifetime Healthcare Companies, each a health insurance provider, since 2011. Before that, from 2009 to 2011, Ms. Coleman was chief financial officer of Blue Cross and Blue Shield of Rhode Island. Ms. Coleman holds certified public accountant licenses in New York and Arizona. She has a B.S. in Accounting from the University of Phoenix. She received her M.B.A. from the University of Rochester Simon School of Business. We believe Ms. Coleman is qualified to serve on our board of directors because of her financial expertise, industry experience and her experience working with insurance providers.

*Abhay Gandhi* has served as a member of our board of directors since December 2016. Since 2016, Mr. Gandhi has led North American Business of Sun Pharmaceutical Ltd., or Sun Pharma, a specialty generic pharmaceutical company, as its chief executive officer. Mr. Gandhi joined Sun Pharma in its marketing function in 1995 and has spent over two decades in various executive roles there, including president – marketing & sales from 2012 to 2013, and chief executive officer – India & Sub-Continent Business from 2013 until 2016. Mr. Gandhi holds a B.S. in Chemistry from Mumbai University with an M.B.A. from the Narsee Monjee Institute of Management Studies and Diploma in Finance from the Institute of Chartered Financial Analysts of India. We believe that Mr. Gandhi is qualified to serve on our board of directors because of his financial expertise and his industry experience.

*Jack A. Khattar* has served as a member of our board of directors since June 2016. Mr. Khattar founded Supernus Pharmaceuticals (Nasdaq:SUPN) in 2005, and has served as its president, chief executive officer, secretary and director since then. From 1999 to 2005, Mr. Khattar served in various positions during that time as a board member, president and chief executive officer of Shire Laboratories Inc., the drug delivery subsidiary of Shire plc. From 1999 to 2004, he also served as a member of Shire plc's Executive Committee. Prior to that, Mr. Khattar served as an executive officer and the chairman of the Management Committee at CIMA Labs Inc., a drug delivery company where he was also responsible for business development, corporate alliances and strategic planning. Prior to joining CIMA in 1995, Mr. Khattar held several marketing and business development positions at Merck & Co., Novartis, Playtex and Kodak in various locations, including the United States, Europe and the Middle East. Mr. Khattar served on the board of Rockville Economic Development, Inc. from 2003 until 2013. He currently serves on the board of directors of Prevacus, Inc., a privately-held development stage biotechnology company. Mr. Khattar earned his degrees in Marketing with a B.B.A. from American University of Beirut and an M.B.A. from the Wharton School of the University of Pennsylvania. We believe that Mr. Khattar's leadership, executive,

## [Table of Contents](#)

managerial, business and pharmaceutical company experience, along with his more than 25 years of industry experience in the development and commercialization of pharmaceutical products and drug delivery technologies, qualify him to be a director.

*Kush M. Parmar, M.D., Ph.D.* has served as a member of our board of directors since March 2014. Dr. Parmar is a Partner at 5AM Ventures, an early stage venture capital firm focused on the life sciences, where he has been since 2012. Before joining 5AM, from 2002 to 2010, he was at Harvard Medical School, where he was an NIH-sponsored M.D./Ph.D. physician scientist fellow in the joint Harvard-MIT Health Sciences and Technology Program. Dr. Parmar currently serves as a director on the boards of Arvinas (since 2013), Audentes (since 2013), CycloPorters (since 2016), and Homolgy (since 2015). He previously served as board observer for Envoy (acquired by Takeda) and Achaogen (Nasdaq: AKAO). He is a member of the scientific advisory board of the Grace Wilsey Foundation and is a fellow of the society of Kauffman fellows. Before joining 5AM, Dr. Parmar completed clinical clerkships at the Massachusetts General & Brigham and Women's Hospitals, attended courses at Harvard Business School and consulted for an oncology startup. He also founded a non-profit international development organization, the Cruz Blanca Initiative. He holds an A.B. in Molecular Biology and Medieval Studies from Princeton University, a Ph.D in Experimental Pathology from Harvard University, and an M.D. from Harvard Medical School. We believe that Dr. Parmar's experience in the life sciences industry, his experience a venture capitalist and senior executive, as well as his service on the boards of directors of numerous companies provide him with the qualifications to serve as a director of our company.

*Leonard D. Schaeffer* has served as a member of our board of directors since 2014. He has served as a partner of North Bristol Partners LLC, a privately held consulting company, since 2006. From 2007 to 2011, Mr. Schaeffer served as the Chairman of the Board of Surgical Care Affiliates, LLC, then a privately held company operating a national network of ambulatory surgical centers and surgical hospitals. Mr. Schaeffer formerly served as chairman of the board of WellPoint, Inc. (now Anthem, Inc.), then the largest health insurance company in the United States, chairman and chief executive officer of WellPoint Health Networks Inc. and chairman and chief executive officer of Blue Cross California and as a director of Allergan, Inc., a publicly traded specialty pharmaceutical company, from 1993 to 2011, and as a director of Amgen, Inc., a publicly traded biotechnology company, from 2004 to 2013. Mr. Schaeffer now serves on the boards of Walgreens Boots Alliance, a publicly traded pharmaceutical manufacturing, wholesale and distribution holding company. While serving in the federal government from 1978 to 1980, Mr. Schaeffer was Administrator of the Health Care Financing Administration (now CMS) and was responsible for the United States Medicare and Medicaid programs. Mr. Schaeffer was named the Judge Widney Professor and Chair at the University of Southern California in 2007 and serves on the boards of the Brookings Institution, the RAND Corporation, the University of Southern California, and on the Board of Fellows of Harvard Medical School. He is a member of the Institute of Medicine of the National Academy of Sciences. Mr. Schaeffer earned his A.B. in Economics from Princeton University. We believe that Mr. Schaeffer is qualified to serve on our board of directors because of his industry experience and his decades long track record of serving on in leadership positions on various boards.

*Jonathan Silverstein* has served as a member of our board of directors since December 2016. Mr. Silverstein is currently a general partner at OrbiMed, a healthcare investment firm, where he has worked since December 1998. Previously, Mr. Silverstein was a director of life sciences in the investment banking department at Sumitomo Bank. Mr. Silverstein serves on the board of directors of Glaukos Corporation and Ascendis Pharma A/S. Mr. Silverstein also serves on the boards of directors of several private companies. Mr. Silverstein holds a B.A. from Denison University and a J.D. and M.B.A. from the University of San Diego. We believe that Mr. Silverstein's strategic development and capital markets experience qualifies him to serve on our board of directors. Mr. Silverstein has informed us that he intends to resign from our board of directors subject to and effective upon the completion of this offering.

### **Director Nominee**

*Klaus Veitinger, M.D., Ph.D.* is a nominee for appointment to our board of directors, and such appointment will be effective upon completion of this offering. Dr. Veitinger has served as a Venture Partner with OrbiMed since 2007. During his prior 16-year pharmaceutical career, Dr. Veitinger held senior management positions in drug development, licensing and business development, strategic planning and M&A, as well as general management. Most recently Dr. Veitinger was a Member of the Executive Board of Schwarz Pharma AG and the Chief Executive Officer of Schwarz Pharma Inc. with responsibility for the U.S. and Asia businesses culminating in the ultimate sale

## [Table of Contents](#)

of the Schwarz Group. Dr. Veitinger has served on the boards of public companies and currently serves on the boards of several private companies in the life sciences sector. For seven years he was a Director of PhRMA. Dr. Veitinger received his medical degree and his doctorate (Ph.D.) from the University of Heidelberg. He earned his M.B.A. at INSEAD in France. We believe that Dr. Veitinger is qualified to serve on our board of directors due to his management and investment experience in the life sciences sector and medical and scientific background.

### **Composition of Our Board of Directors**

Our board of directors currently consists of eight members, each of whom is a member pursuant to the board composition provisions of our current certificate of incorporation and agreements with our stockholders. These board composition provisions will terminate upon the completion of this offering. Upon the termination of these provisions, there will be no further contractual obligations regarding the election of our directors. Our nominating and corporate governance committee and our board of directors may therefore consider a broad range of factors relating to the qualifications and background of nominees. Our nominating and corporate governance committee's and our board of directors' priority in selecting board members is identification of persons who will further the interests of our stockholders through their established record of professional accomplishment, the ability to contribute positively to the collaborative culture among board members, knowledge of our business, understanding of the competitive landscape, professional and personal experiences and expertise relevant to our growth strategy. Our directors hold office until their successors have been elected and qualified or until the earlier of their resignation or removal. Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and amended and restated bylaws that will become effective upon the closing of this offering also provide that our directors may be removed only for cause by the affirmative vote of the holders of at least two-thirds of the votes that all our stockholders would be entitled to cast in an annual election of directors, and that any vacancy on our board of directors, including a vacancy resulting from an enlargement of our board of directors, may be filled only by vote of a majority of our directors then in office.

### **Director Independence**

Our board of directors has determined that all members of the board of directors, including our director nominee, Dr. Veitinger, but excluding Mr. Tucker, are independent directors, including for purposes of the rules of The Nasdaq Global Market and the Securities and Exchange Commission, or SEC. In making such independence determination, our board of directors considered the relationships that each non-employee director has with us and all other facts and circumstances that our board of directors deemed relevant in determining their independence, including the beneficial ownership of our capital stock by each non-employee director. In considering the independence of the directors listed above, our board of directors considered the association of our directors with the holders of more than 5% of our common stock. Upon the completion of this offering, we expect that the composition and functioning of our board of directors and each of our committees will comply with all applicable requirements of The Nasdaq Global Select Market and the rules and regulations of the SEC. There are no family relationships among any of our directors or executive officers. Mr. Tucker is not independent director under these rules because he is an executive officer of our company.

### **Staggered Board**

In accordance with the terms of our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and our amended and restated bylaws that will become effective upon the closing of this offering, our board of directors will be divided into three staggered classes of directors and each will be assigned to one of the three classes. At each annual meeting of the stockholders, a class of directors will be elected for a three-year term to succeed the directors of the same class whose terms are then expiring. The terms of the directors will expire upon the election and qualification of successor directors at the annual meeting of stockholders to be held during the years 2018 for Class I directors, 2019 for Class II directors and 2020 for Class III directors.

- Our Class I directors will be Ms. Coleman, Mr. Gandhi and Mr. Schaeffer;
- Our Class II directors will be Ms. Agger and Dr. Parmar; and
- Our Class III directors will be Mr. Tucker, Mr. Khattar and Dr. Veitinger.

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and amended and restated bylaws that will become effective upon the closing of this offering will provide that the number of our directors shall be fixed from time to time by a resolution of the majority of our board of directors.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The division of our board of directors into three classes with staggered three-year terms may delay or prevent stockholder efforts to effect a change of our management or a change in control.

### **Board Leadership Structure and Board's Role in Risk Oversight**

Currently, we do not have a chairman of the board. In connection with this offering, we are planning to establish a role of the chairman of the board, to be initially filled by Mr. Khattar, and we plan to keep this role separated from the role of Chief Executive Officer following the completion of this offering. We believe that separating these positions will allow our Chief Executive Officer to focus on our day-to-day business, while allowing a chairman of the board to lead the board of directors in its fundamental role of providing advice to and independent oversight of management. Our board of directors recognizes the time, effort and energy that the Chief Executive Officer is required to devote to his position in the current business environment, as well as the commitment required to serve as our chairman, particularly as the board of directors' oversight responsibilities continue to grow. While our amended and restated by-laws and corporate governance guidelines do not require that our chairman and Chief Executive Officer positions be separate, our board of directors believes that having separate positions will be the appropriate leadership structure for us following the completion of this offering and demonstrates our commitment to good corporate governance.

Risk is inherent with every business, and how well a business manages risk can ultimately determine its success. We face a number of risks, including risks relating to our financial condition, development and commercialization activities, operations, strategic direction and intellectual property as more fully discussed in the section entitled "Risk Factors" appearing elsewhere in this prospectus. Management is responsible for the day-to-day management of risks we face, while our board of directors, as a whole and through its committees, has responsibility for the oversight of risk management. In its risk oversight role, our board of directors has the responsibility to satisfy itself that the risk management processes designed and implemented by management are adequate and functioning as designed.

The role of the board of directors in overseeing the management of our risks is conducted primarily through committees of the board of directors, as disclosed in the descriptions of each of the committees below and in the charters of each of the committees. The full board of directors (or the appropriate board committee in the case of risks that are under the purview of a particular committee) discusses with management our major risk exposures, their potential impact on us, and the steps we take to manage them. When a board committee is responsible for evaluating and overseeing the management of a particular risk or risks, the chairman of the relevant committee reports on the discussion to the full board of directors during the committee reports portion of the next board meeting. This enables the board of directors and its committees to coordinate the risk oversight role, particularly with respect to risk interrelationships.

### **Committees of Our Board of Directors**

Our board of directors has established an audit committee, a compensation committee and a nominating and corporate governance committee, each of which will operate pursuant to a charter adopted by our board of directors effective upon the effectiveness of the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part. Upon the effectiveness of the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, the composition and functioning of all of our committees comply with all applicable requirements of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, Nasdaq and SEC rules and regulations.

#### **Audit Committee**

Ms. Coleman, Ms. Agger and Dr. Parmar serve on the audit committee, which is chaired by Ms. Coleman. Our board of directors has determined that each member of the audit committee is "independent" for audit committee purposes as that term is defined in the rules of the SEC and the applicable Nasdaq rules, and each has sufficient knowledge in financial and auditing matters to serve on the audit committee. Our board of directors has designated Ms. Coleman as an "audit committee financial expert," as defined under the applicable rules of the SEC. The audit committee's responsibilities include:

- appointing, approving the compensation of, and assessing the independence of our independent registered public accounting firm;

## Table of Contents

- pre-approving auditing and permissible non-audit services, and the terms of such services, to be provided by our independent registered public accounting firm;
- reviewing the overall audit plan with our independent registered public accounting firm and members of management responsible for preparing our financial statements;
- reviewing and discussing with management and our independent registered public accounting firm our annual and quarterly financial statements and related disclosures as well as critical accounting policies and practices used by us;
- coordinating the oversight and reviewing the adequacy of our internal control over financial reporting;
- establishing policies and procedures for the receipt and retention of accounting-related complaints and concerns;
- recommending based upon the audit committee's review and discussions with management and our independent registered public accounting firm whether our audited financial statements shall be included in our Annual Report on Form 10-K;
- monitoring the integrity of our financial statements and our compliance with legal and regulatory requirements as they relate to our financial statements and accounting matters;
- preparing the audit committee report required by SEC rules to be included in our annual proxy statement;
- reviewing all related person transactions for potential conflict of interest situations and approving all such transactions; and
- reviewing quarterly earnings releases.

### **Compensation Committee**

Mr. Khattar, Ms. Agger and Dr. Parmar serve on the compensation committee, which is chaired by Mr. Khattar. Our board of directors has determined that each member of the compensation committee is "independent" as defined in the applicable Nasdaq rules. The compensation committee's responsibilities include:

- annually reviewing and recommending to the board of directors the corporate goals and objectives relevant to the compensation of our Chief Executive Officer;
- evaluating the performance of our Chief Executive Officer in light of such corporate goals and objectives and based on such evaluation (i) reviewing and determining the cash compensation of our Chief Executive Officer and (ii) reviewing and approving grants and awards to our Chief Executive Officer under equity-based plans;
- reviewing and approving the cash compensation of our other executive officers;
- reviewing and establishing our overall management compensation, philosophy and policy;
- overseeing and administering our compensation and similar plans;
- evaluating and assessing potential and current compensation advisors in accordance with the independence standards identified in the applicable Nasdaq rules;
- reviewing and approving our policies and procedures for the grant of equity-based awards;
- reviewing and recommending to the board of directors the compensation of our directors;
- preparing our compensation committee report if and when required by SEC rules;
- reviewing and discussing annually with management our "Compensation Discussion and Analysis," if and when required, to be included in our annual proxy statement; and
- reviewing and approving the retention or termination of any consulting firm or outside advisor to assist in the evaluation of compensation matters.

### **Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee**

Dr. Veitinger, Mr. Gandhi and Mr. Schaeffer serve on the nominating and corporate governance committee, which is chaired by Dr. Veitinger. Our board of directors has determined that each member of the nominating and corporate governance committee is "independent" as defined in the applicable Nasdaq rules. The nominating and corporate governance committee's responsibilities include:

- developing and recommending to the board of directors criteria for board and committee membership;
- establishing procedures for identifying and evaluating board of director candidates, including nominees recommended by stockholders;

## Table of Contents

- reviewing the composition of the board of directors to ensure that it is composed of members containing the appropriate skills and expertise to advise us;
- identifying individuals qualified to become members of the board of directors;
- recommending to the board of directors the persons to be nominated for election as directors and to each of the board's committees;
- developing and recommending to the board of directors a code of business conduct and ethics and a set of corporate governance guidelines; and
- overseeing the evaluation of our board of directors and management.

Our board of directors may from time to time establish other committees.

### **Compensation Committee Interlocks and Insider Participation**

None of the members of our compensation committee has at any time during the prior three years been one of our officers or employees. None of our executive officers currently serves, or in the past fiscal year has served, as a member of the board of directors or compensation committee of any entity that has one or more executive officers serving on our board of directors or compensation committee.

### **Corporate Governance**

We have adopted, effective upon the effectiveness of the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, a written code of business conduct and ethics that applies to our directors, officers and employees, including our principal executive officer, principal financial officer, principal accounting officer or controller, or persons performing similar functions. A current copy of the code is posted on the investor relations section of our website, which is located at [www.scpharmaceuticals.com](http://www.scpharmaceuticals.com). If we make any substantive amendments to, or grant any waivers from, the code of business conduct and ethics for any officer or director, we will disclose the nature of such amendment or waiver on our website or in a current report on Form 8-K.

**EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION****Executive Compensation Overview**

As an emerging growth company, we have opted to comply with the executive compensation disclosure rules applicable to “smaller reporting companies,” as such term is defined in the rules promulgated under the Securities Act. This section provides an overview of the compensation awarded to, earned by, or paid to our principal executive officer for fiscal year 2016, and our next two most highly compensated executive officers in respect of their service to our company for our fiscal year ended December 31, 2016. We refer to these individuals as our 2016 named executive officers. Our 2016 named executive officers are:

- Pieter Muntendam, M.D., our President and Chief Executive Officer as of December 31, 2016;
- Abraham Ceesay, our Chief Operating Officer; and
- Troy Ignelzi, our Chief Financial Officer.

John Tucker replaced Dr. Muntendam as our President and Chief Executive Officer on January 30, 2017.

Our executive compensation program is based on a pay for performance philosophy. Compensation for our executive officers is composed primarily of the following main components: base salary; bonus; and equity incentives in the form of options. Our executive officers, like all full-time employees, are eligible to participate in our health and welfare benefit plans. As we transition from a private company to a publicly traded company, we intend to evaluate our compensation values and philosophy and compensation plans and arrangements as circumstances require.

**2016 Summary Compensation Table**

The following table sets forth information regarding compensation awarded to, earned by, or paid to our 2016 named executive officers for services rendered to us in all capacities during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2016.

NAME AND PRINCIPAL POSITION	YEAR	SALARY (\$)	BONUS (\$) <sup>(1)</sup>	OPTION AWARDS (\$) <sup>(2)</sup>	ALL OTHER COMPENSATION (\$) <sup>(3)</sup>	TOTAL (\$)
	Pieter Muntendam, M.D., <i>Former President and Chief Executive Officer</i> (4)	2016	371,935	—	931,192	10,130
Abraham Ceesay, <i>Chief Operating Officer</i> (5)	2016	291,723	100,000	535,383	—	927,106
Troy Ignelzi, <i>Chief Financial Officer</i> (6)	2016	255,758	—	401,942	71,077	728,777

(1) The amount included for Mr. Ceesay reflects a signing bonus he received in connection with the start of his employment with us. The signing bonus was paid in two equal installments, with the first installment paid 90 days following his start date, and the final installment paid 180 days following his start date.

(2) Amounts reflect the grant date fair value of option awards granted or modified in 2016 in accordance with the Financial Accounting Standards Board’s Accounting Standards Codification Topic 718, or ASC 718. Such grant date fair value does not take into account any estimated forfeitures related to service-vesting conditions. For information regarding assumptions underlying the valuation of equity awards, see Note 2 to our financial statements and the discussion under “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations—Critical Accounting Policies and Estimates—Stock-based Compensation Expense” included elsewhere in this prospectus. These amounts do not correspond to the actual value that may be recognized by the 2016 named executive officers upon vesting of applicable awards.

(3) Represents for Dr. Muntendam, company matching contributions under our 401(k) plan equal to \$10,130. Represents for Mr. Ignelzi, company matching contributions under our 401(k) plan equal to \$8,400 and reimbursement for commuting expenses related to travel between Mr. Ignelzi’s home office and our headquarters in Massachusetts equal to \$37,927 in 2016. Also included for Mr. Ignelzi are amounts paid to him pursuant to a consulting agreement with us, dated February 4, 2016, equal to \$24,750 for consultant services to us prior to the start of his employment with us.

(4) On February 3, 2017, Dr. Muntendam entered into a Separation Agreement and a Consulting Agreement with us, pursuant to which Dr. Muntendam transitioned from his role as President and Chief Executive Officer to a consultant to our company.

(5) Mr. Ceesay commenced his employment with us in March 2016.

(6) Mr. Ignelzi commenced his employment with us in March 2016.

## **Narrative to the 2016 Summary Compensation Table**

### **Base Salary**

We use base salaries to recognize the experience, skills, knowledge and responsibilities required of all our employees, including our 2016 named executive officers. Base salaries are reviewed annually, typically in connection with our annual performance review process, and adjusted from time to time to realign salaries with market levels after taking into account individual responsibilities, performance and experience. None of our 2016 named executive officers is currently party to an employment agreement or other agreement or arrangement that provides for automatic or scheduled increases in base salary.

### **Annual Bonus**

We do not have a formal performance-based bonus plan. Our employment agreements with our 2016 named executive officers provide that the executive may be eligible to earn an annual performance bonus of up to a target percentage of the executive's base salary, as described further below under the section entitled "—Employment Arrangements and Severance Agreements with our Chief Executive Officer and our 2016 Named Executive Officers". From time to time, our board of directors or compensation committee may approve annual bonuses for our named executive officers based on individual performance, company performance or as otherwise determined appropriate. Our board of directors determined that no annual bonuses would be made to our 2016 named executive officers in 2016.

### **Equity Compensation**

Although we do not have a formal policy with respect to the grant of equity incentive awards to our executive officers, or any formal equity ownership guidelines applicable to them, we believe that equity grants provide our executives with a strong link to our long-term performance, create an ownership culture and help to align the interests of our executives and our stockholders. In addition, we believe that equity grants with a time-based vesting feature promote executive retention because this feature incentivizes our executive officers to remain in our employment during the vesting period. Accordingly, our board of directors periodically reviews the equity incentive compensation of our named executive officers and from time to time may grant equity incentive awards to them in the form of stock options.

We typically grant stock option awards at the start of employment to each executive and our other employees. We award our stock options on the date our board of directors approves the grant. We set the option exercise price and grant date fair value based on our per-share estimated valuation on the date of grant. For grants in connection with initial employment, vesting begins on the initial date of employment. To date, we have not maintained a practice of granting additional equity on an annual basis, but we have retained discretion to provide additional targeted grants in certain circumstances.

### **Employment Arrangements and Severance Agreements with our Chief Executive Officer and our 2016 Named Executive Officers**

We have entered into employment agreements with each of our 2016 named executive officers and Mr. Tucker, our current President and Chief Executive Officer. These agreements set forth the initial terms and conditions of each executive's employment with us, including base salary, target annual bonus opportunity and standard employee benefit plan participation. In connection with this offering, we intend to enter into amended and restated employment agreements with each of Messrs. Tucker, Ceesay and Ignelzi.

These employment agreements provide for "at will" employment. The material terms of these existing and new employment agreements with our 2016 named executive officers and Mr. Tucker, our current President and Chief Executive Officer, are described below. The term "cause" used in each existing employment agreement is defined therein and the term "change in control transaction" used in each existing employment agreement is defined in the 2014 Stock Incentive Plan, or the 2014 Plan. The term "good reason" used in Mr. Tucker's existing employment agreement is defined therein and for Messrs. Ceesay's and Ignelzi's existing employment agreements is defined in the 2014 Plan. Such terms used in the new employment agreements with each of Messrs. Tucker, Ceesay and Ignelzi are defined in their respective agreements.

### **John Tucker**

We entered into an employment agreement with Mr. John Tucker, our President and Chief Executive Officer, on January 16, 2017 and entered into an amended and restated employment agreement with Mr. Tucker on January 24, 2017. We have entered into a second amended and restated employment agreement with Mr. Tucker,

## [Table of Contents](#)

effective upon the effectiveness of the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part, pursuant to which Mr. Tucker is entitled to receive an annual base salary of \$481,000 and an annual target bonus equal to 50% of his annual base salary based upon our board of directors' assessment of Mr. Tucker's performance and our attainment of targeted goals as set by the board of directors in its sole discretion. This second amended and restated employment agreement also contains provisions related to a confidentiality, inventions assignment, non-competition and non-solicitation, pursuant to which Mr. Tucker agrees to refrain from disclosing our confidential information during or at any time following his employment with us and from competing with us or soliciting our employees or customers during his employment and for 12 months following termination of his employment. Mr. Tucker's second amended and restated employment agreement provides that, in the event that his employment is terminated by us without "cause" or by him for "good reason," subject to the execution and effectiveness of a separation agreement and release, he will be entitled to receive (i) an amount equal to (x) 12 months of base salary plus his average target incentive compensation received for the three preceding fiscal years, payable on our normal payroll cycle if such termination is not in connection with a "change in control" or (y) 18 months if such termination is in connection with a "change in control," and (ii) reimbursement of COBRA premiums for health benefit coverage for him and his immediate family in an amount equal to the monthly employer contribution that we would have made to provide health insurance to Mr. Tucker had he remained employed with us for up to (x) 12 months following termination if such termination is not in connection with a "change in control" or (y) 18 months if such termination is in connection with a "change in control". In addition, if within 12 months following a "change in control," Mr. Tucker is terminated by us without "cause" or he resigns for "good reason," all time-based stock options and other time-based stock-based awards held by Mr. Tucker will accelerate and vest immediately.

Pursuant to his prior amended and restated employment agreement, Mr. Tucker was entitled to receive a stock option award to purchase shares of our common stock equal to approximately 4% (496,674 shares) of our capital stock on a fully-diluted basis on the date of grant. The option is scheduled to vest as to 25% on the first anniversary of the vesting start date and, as to the remainder, in 36 equal monthly installments on the first day of each month thereafter, subject to Mr. Tucker's continued service. In the event of a "change in control" during such continued service, 50% of the unvested shares subject to the option shall accelerate and vest immediately. If within 12 months following a "change in control," Mr. Tucker is terminated by us without "cause" or he resigns for "good reason," 100% of the unvested shares subject to the option will accelerate and vest immediately.

### **Abraham Ceesay**

We entered into an employment agreement with Mr. Abraham Ceesay, our Chief Operating Officer, on February 17, 2016, and have entered into an amended and restated employment agreement with Mr. Ceesay, effective upon the effectiveness of the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part, to which Mr. Ceesay is entitled to receive an annual base salary of \$379,000 and an annual target bonus equal to 40% of his annual base salary based upon our board of directors' assessment of Mr. Ceesay's performance and our attainment of targeted goals as set by the board of directors in its sole discretion. This amended and restated agreement, Mr. Ceesay also contains provisions related to confidentiality, inventions assignment, non-competition and non-solicitation agreement with us, pursuant to which Mr. Ceesay agrees to refrain from disclosing our confidential information during or at any time following his employment with us and from competing with us or soliciting our employees or customers during his employment and for 12 months following termination of his employment. Mr. Ceesay's amended and restated employment agreement provides that, in the event that his employment is terminated by us without "cause" or by him for "good reason," subject to the execution and effectiveness of a separation agreement and release, he will be entitled to receive (i) an amount equal to 12 months of base salary, (if such termination is not in connection with a "change in control") or 12 months of base salary plus his average target incentive compensation received for the three preceding fiscal years (if such termination is in connection with a "change in control") payable on our normal payroll cycle, and (ii) reimbursement of COBRA premiums for health benefit coverage for him and his immediate family in an amount equal to the monthly employer contribution that we would have made to provide health insurance to Mr. Ceesay had he remained employed with us for up to twelve (12) months following termination. In addition, if within 12 months following a "change in control," Mr. Ceesay is terminated by us without "cause" or he resigns for "good reason," all time-based stock options and other time-based stock-based awards held by Mr. Ceesay will accelerate and vest immediately.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Pursuant to his prior employment agreement, Mr. Ceesay received a stock option award to purchase 83,563 shares of our common stock. The option is scheduled to vest as to 25% on the first anniversary of the vesting start date and, as to the remainder, in 36 equal monthly installments on the first day of each month thereafter, subject to Mr. Ceesay's continued service. In the event of a "change in control" during such continued service, 50% of the unvested shares subject to the option shall accelerate and vest immediately. If within 12 months following a "change in control," Mr. Ceesay is terminated by us without "cause" or he resigns for "good reason," 100% of the unvested shares subject to the option will accelerate and vest immediately.

### ***Troy Ignelzi***

We entered into an employment agreement with Mr. Troy Ignelzi, our Chief Financial Officer, on March 10, 2016, and have entered into an amended and restated employment agreement with Mr. Ignelzi, effective upon the effectiveness of the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part, pursuant to which Mr. Ignelzi is entitled to receive an annual base salary of \$380,000 and an annual target bonus equal to 37% of his annual base salary based upon our board of directors' assessment of Mr. Ignelzi's performance and our attainment of targeted goals as set by the board of directors in their sole discretion. This amended and restated agreement also contains provisions related to confidentiality, inventions assignment, non-competition and non-solicitation, pursuant to which Mr. Ignelzi agrees to refrain from disclosing our confidential information during or at any time following his employment with us and from competing with us or soliciting our employees or customers during his employment and for 12 months following termination of his employment.

Mr. Ignelzi's amended and restated employment agreement provides that, in the event that his employment is terminated by us without "cause" or by him for "good reason," subject to the execution and effectiveness of a separation agreement and release, he will be entitled to receive (i) an amount equal to 12 months of base salary (if such termination is not in connection with a "change in control") or 12 months of base salary plus his average target incentive compensation received for the three preceding fiscal years (if such termination is in connection with a "change," payable on our normal payroll cycle, and (ii) reimbursement of COBRA premiums for health benefit coverage for him and his immediate family in an amount equal to the monthly employer contribution that we would have made to provide health insurance to Mr. Ignelzi had he remained employed with us for up to 12 months following termination. In addition, if within 12 months following a "change in control," Mr. Ignelzi is terminated by us without "cause" or he resigns for "good reason," all time-based stock options and other time-based stock-based awards held by Mr. Ignelzi will accelerate and vest immediately.

Pursuant to Mr. Ignelzi's amended and restated employment agreement, Mr. Ignelzi is entitled to monthly commuting expenses from Michigan to Massachusetts and, for commuting expenses incurred prior to January 1, 2018, we have agreed to pay Mr. Ignelzi a gross-up payment to the extent such reimbursement is taxable to Mr. Ignelzi. Mr. Ignelzi is also entitled to a one-time relocation payment of \$30,000 in connection with the relocation of his primary residence from Michigan to Massachusetts, provided Mr. Ignelzi relocates in calendar year 2018 and remains employed by us through the relocation.

Pursuant to his prior employment agreement, Mr. Ignelzi received a stock option award to purchase 62,671 shares of our common stock. The option is scheduled to vest as to 25% on the first anniversary of the vesting start date and, as to the remainder, in 36 equal monthly installments on the first day of each month thereafter, subject to Mr. Ignelzi's continued service. In the event of a "change in control transaction" during such continued service, 50% of the unvested shares subject to the option shall accelerate and vest immediately. If within 12 months following a "change in control," Mr. Ignelzi is terminated by us without "cause," or he resigns for "good reason," 100% of the unvested shares subject to the option will accelerate and vest immediately.

### ***Pieter Muntendam, M.D.***

We entered into an employment agreement with Dr. Pieter Muntendam, our former President & Chief Executive Officer, on March 24, 2014. Under the terms of the agreement, Dr. Muntendam was entitled to receive an annual base salary of \$315,000 and an annual bonus based upon our board of directors' assessment of Dr. Muntendam's performance and our attainment of targeted goals as set by the board of directors in its sole discretion. Dr. Muntendam's salary was increased to \$383,250 effective March 14, 2016. Pursuant to his agreement, Dr. Muntendam also entered into a confidentiality, inventions assignment, non-competition and non-solicitation agreement with us, pursuant to which Dr. Muntendam has agreed to refrain from disclosing our confidential information during or at any time following his employment with us and from competing with us or soliciting our employees or customers during his employment and for twelve months following termination of his employment.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Dr. Muntendam's employment agreement provided that, in the event that his employment is terminated by us without "cause", he will be entitled to receive (i) an amount equal to six (6) months of base salary, payable on our normal payroll cycle, and (ii) reimbursement of COBRA premiums for health benefit coverage for him and his immediate family in an amount equal to the monthly employer contribution that we would have made to provide health insurance to Dr. Muntendam had he remained employed with us for up to six (6) months following termination.

Dr. Muntendam entered into a separation agreement with us on February 3, 2017, which supersedes the employment agreement described above and provides for his termination as our President and Chief Executive Officer effective February 3, 2017. Pursuant to the separation agreement, Dr. Muntendam is entitled to continuation of his base salary for the six months following his termination and payment of his 2016 annual bonus. Pursuant to the separation agreement, all unvested stock options held by Dr. Muntendam as of his termination date ceased vesting immediately.

Dr. Muntendam also entered into a consulting agreement with us on February 3, 2017, which was superseded by another consulting agreement with us on March 30, 2017, pursuant to which he provides ongoing consulting services to us until either party elects to terminate or not renew the relationship.

### Outstanding Equity Awards at 2016 Fiscal Year-End

The following table sets forth information concerning outstanding equity awards held by our 2016 named executive officers as of December 31, 2016. All equity awards set forth in the table below were granted under our 2014 Plan.

NAME	OPTION AWARDS			
	NUMBER OF SECURITIES UNDERLYING UNEXERCISED OPTIONS (#) EXERCISABLE <sup>(1)</sup>	NUMBER OF SECURITIES UNDERLYING UNEXERCISED OPTIONS (#) UNEXERCISABLE	OPTION EXERCISE PRICE (\$)	OPTION EXPIRATION DATE
Pieter Muntendam, M.D.	90,526 <sup>(2)</sup>	—	8.84	5/31/2026
Abraham Ceesay	83,563 <sup>(3)</sup>	—	8.84	3/16/2026
Troy Ignelzi	62,671 <sup>(4)</sup>	—	8.84	3/16/2026

(1) Options are exercisable immediately on the grant date. In order to preserve the vesting provisions of the options, the shares of our common stock underlying options that are exercised early are subject to a repurchase right by us at the lower of exercise price or fair market value of the underlying stock at the date of repurchase.

(2) On May 31, 2016, Dr. Muntendam was awarded an option to purchase 90,526 shares of our common stock under our 2014 Plan. The shares underlying this option vest as follows: 18,105 of the shares subject to the option vest on December 24, 2017, of the remaining shares, an additional 1,856 shares vest on the 24th day of each month thereafter through February 24, 2021 and the remaining 1,858 shares vest on March 24, 2021, subject to Dr. Muntendam's continued service. Pursuant to the terms of his separation agreement, all unvested stock options held by Dr. Muntendam as of his termination date ceased vesting immediately.

(3) On March 16, 2016, Mr. Ceesay was awarded an option to purchase 83,563 shares of our common stock under our 2014 Plan. The shares underlying this option vest as follows: 25% of the shares subject to the option vest on March 14, 2017 (the first anniversary of Mr. Ceesay's commencement of employment) and the remaining shares vest in 36 equal monthly installments on the first day of each month thereafter, subject to Mr. Ceesay's continued service. In the event of a change in control transaction during such continued service, 50% of the unvested shares subject to the option shall accelerate and vest immediately. If within 12 months following a change in control transaction, Mr. Ceesay is terminated by us without cause or resigns for good reason, 100% of the unvested shares subject to the option will accelerate and vest immediately.

(4) On March 16, 2016, Mr. Ignelzi was awarded an option to purchase 62,671 shares of our common stock under our 2014 Plan. The shares underlying this option vest as follows: 25% of the shares subject to the option vest on March 14, 2017 (the first anniversary of Mr. Ignelzi's commencement of employment) and the remaining shares vest in 36 equal monthly installments on the first day of each month thereafter, subject to Mr. Ignelzi's continued service. In the event of a change in control transaction during such continued service, 50% of the unvested shares subject to the option shall accelerate and vest immediately. If within 12 months following a change in control transaction, Mr. Ignelzi is terminated by us without cause, or resigns for good reason, 100% of the unvested shares subject to the option will accelerate and vest immediately.

### Compensation Risk Assessment

We believe that although a portion of the compensation provided to our executive officers and other employees is performance-based, our executive compensation program does not encourage excessive or unnecessary risk taking.

## [Table of Contents](#)

This is primarily due to the fact that our compensation programs are designed to encourage our executive officers and other employees to remain focused on both short-term and long-term strategic goals. As a result, we do not believe that our compensation programs are reasonably likely to have a material adverse effect on us.

### **Employee Benefit and Equity Compensation Plans**

#### ***2014 Stock Incentive Plan***

Our 2014 Plan was approved by our board of directors and our stockholders on March 24, 2014. The 2014 Plan was most recently amended in March 2017 with the approval of both our board of directors and our stockholders. Under the 2014 Plan, we have reserved for issuance an aggregate of 1,263,203 shares of our common stock. The number of shares of common stock reserved for issuance is subject to adjustment in the event of any merger, consolidation, sale of all or substantially all of our assets, reorganization, recapitalization, reclassification, stock dividend, stock split, reverse stock split or other similar transaction.

The shares of common stock underlying awards that expire or are terminated, surrendered or canceled without having been fully exercised or are forfeited or repurchased or result in shares of common stock not being issued under the 2014 Plan are added back to the shares of common stock available for issuance under the 2014 Plan. In addition, shares of common stock tendered to us by a participant to exercise an award are added back to the shares available for grant under the 2014 Plan.

Our board of directors has acted as administrator of the 2014 Plan. The administrator has full power to select, from among the individuals eligible for awards, the individuals to whom awards will be granted, and to determine the specific terms and conditions of each award, subject to the provisions of the 2014 Plan. Persons eligible to participate in the 2014 Plan are those employees, officers and directors of, and consultants and advisors to, our company as selected from time to time by the administrator in its discretion.

The 2014 Plan permits the granting of (1) options to purchase common stock intended to qualify as incentive stock options under Section 422 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, or the Code and (2) options that do not so qualify. The per share option exercise price of each option will be determined by the administrator but may not be less than 100% of the fair market value of the common stock on the date of grant. The term of each option will be fixed by the administrator. The administrator will determine at what time or times each option may be exercised. In addition, the 2014 Plan permits the granting of restricted shares of common stock.

The 2014 Plan provides that upon the occurrence of a "change in control transaction," as defined in the 2014 Plan, our board of directors may take one or more of the following actions as to some or all awards outstanding under the 2014 Plan: (i) provide that outstanding options awards will be assumed or substituted by the acquiring or successor corporation, (ii) upon written notice to the optionees, provide that all unexercised options will terminate immediately prior to the consummation of the change in control transaction unless exercised by the optionee (to the extent exercisable) within a specified period following the date of such notice, (iii) upon written notice to the grantees, provide that all unvested shares of Restricted Stock shall be repurchased at cost, (iv) make or provide for a cash payment to the optionees equal to the difference between the per share cash consideration in the change in control transaction and the per share exercise price of the outstanding award, or (v) provide that all or any outstanding Options shall become exercisable and all or any outstanding Restricted Stock Awards shall vest in part or in full immediately prior to such event. To the extent that any Options are exercisable at a price equal to or in excess of the per share price payable in such change in control transaction, our board of directors may provide that such Options shall terminate immediately upon the consummation of the change in control transaction without any payment being made to the holders of such options.

The administrator may amend, suspend or terminate the 2014 Plan at any time, subject to stockholder approval where such approval is required by applicable law. The administrator of the 2014 Plan may also amend, modify or terminate any outstanding award, provided that no amendment to an award may adversely affect a participant's rights without his or her consent.

The 2014 Plan will terminate automatically upon the earlier of 10 years from the date on which the 2014 Plan was adopted by our board of directors or upon action of board to terminate the 2014 Plan. As of September 30, 2017, options to purchase 1,046,879 shares of common stock were outstanding under the 2014 Plan. Our board of directors has determined not to make any further awards under the 2014 Plan following the closing of this offering.

### **2017 Stock Option and Incentive Plan**

Our 2017 Stock Option and Incentive Plan, or the 2017 Plan, was adopted by our board of directors on October 27, 2017 and approved by our stockholders on November 6, 2017 and became effective upon the effectiveness of the registration statement of which this prospectus is part. The 2017 Plan replaces the 2014 Plan as our board of directors has determined not to make additional awards under the 2014 Plan following the closing of our initial public offering. The 2017 Plan allows the compensation committee to make equity-based and cash-based incentive awards to our officers, employees, directors and other key persons (including consultants).

We have initially reserved 1,430,000 shares of our common stock, or the Initial Limit, for the issuance of awards under the 2017 Plan. The 2017 Plan provides that the number of shares reserved and available for issuance under the plan will automatically increase each January 1, beginning on January 1, 2018, by 4% of the outstanding number of shares of our common stock on the immediately preceding December 31, or such lesser number of shares as determined by our compensation committee, or the Annual Increase. This number is subject to adjustment in the event of a stock split, stock dividend or other change in our capitalization.

The shares we issue under the 2017 Plan will be authorized but unissued shares or shares that we reacquire. The shares of common stock underlying any awards that are forfeited, cancelled, held back upon exercise or settlement of an award to satisfy the exercise price or tax withholding, reacquired by us prior to vesting, satisfied without any issuance of stock, expire or are otherwise terminated (other than by exercise) under the 2017 Plan and the 2014 Plan will be added back to the shares of common stock available for issuance under the 2017 Plan.

Stock options and stock appreciation rights with respect to no more than 816,526 shares of stock may be granted to any one individual in any one calendar year. The maximum aggregate number of shares that may be issued in the form of incentive stock options shall not exceed the Initial Limit cumulatively increased on January 1, 2018 and on each January 1 thereafter by the lesser of the Annual Increase for such year or 816,526 shares of common stock.

The 2017 Plan is administered by our compensation committee. Our compensation committee has full power to select, from among the individuals eligible for awards, the individuals to whom awards will be granted, to make any combination of awards to participants, and to determine the specific terms and conditions of each award, subject to the provisions of the 2017 Plan. Persons eligible to participate in the 2017 Plan will be those full or part-time officers, employees, non-employee directors and other key persons (including consultants) as selected from time to time by our compensation committee in its discretion.

The 2017 Plan permits the granting of both options to purchase common stock intended to qualify as incentive stock options under Section 422 of the Code, and options that do not so qualify. The option exercise price of each option will be determined by our compensation committee but may not be less than 100% of the fair market value of our common stock on the date of grant. The term of each option will be fixed by our compensation committee and may not exceed 10 years from the date of grant. Our compensation committee will determine at what time or times each option may be exercised.

Our compensation committee may award stock appreciation rights subject to such conditions and restrictions as it may determine. Stock appreciation rights entitle the recipient to shares of common stock, or cash, equal to the value of the appreciation in our stock price over the exercise price. The exercise price of each stock appreciation right may not be less than 100% of the fair market value of the common stock on the date of grant.

Our compensation committee may award restricted shares of common stock and restricted stock units to participants subject to such conditions and restrictions as it may determine. These conditions and restrictions may include the achievement of certain performance goals and/or continued employment with us through a specified vesting period. Our compensation committee may also grant shares of common stock that are free from any restrictions under the 2017 Plan. Unrestricted stock may be granted to participants in recognition of past services or other valid consideration and may be issued in lieu of cash compensation due to such participant. Our compensation committee may grant cash bonuses under the 2017 Plan to participants, subject to the achievement of certain performance goals.

Our compensation committee may grant awards of restricted stock, restricted stock units or stock- or cash-based awards under the 2017 Plan that are intended to qualify as "performance-based compensation" under Section 162(m) of the Code. Those awards would only vest or become payable upon the attainment of performance goals that are established by

## [Table of Contents](#)

our compensation committee and related to one or more performance criteria. The performance criteria that would be used with respect to any such awards include: research and development, publication, clinical and/or regulatory milestones, total shareholder return earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation and amortization, net income (loss) (either before or after interest, taxes, depreciation and/or amortization), changes in the market price of our common stock, economic value added, sales or revenue, coverage decisions, acquisitions or strategic transactions, operating income (loss), cash flow (including, but not limited to, operating cash flow and free cash flow), return on capital, assets, equity, or investment, return on sales, gross or net profit levels, productivity, expense, margins, operating efficiency, customer satisfaction, working capital, earnings (loss) per share of common stock, sales or market shares and number of customers, any of which may be measured either in absolute terms or as compared to any incremental increase or as compared to results of a peer group. From and after the time that we become subject to Section 162(m) of the Code, the maximum award that is intended to qualify as "performance-based compensation" under Section 162(m) of the Code that may be made to any one employee during any one calendar year is 816,526 shares of common stock with respect to a stock-based award and \$2,450,000 with respect to a cash-based award.

The 2017 Plan provides that in the case of, and subject to, the consummation of a "sale event" as defined in the 2017 Plan, all outstanding awards may be assumed, substituted or otherwise continued by the successor entity. To the extent that the successor entity does not assume, substitute or otherwise continue such awards, then (i) all stock options and stock appreciation rights will automatically become fully exercisable and the restrictions and conditions on all other awards with time-based conditions will automatically be deemed waived, and awards with conditions and restrictions relating to the attainment of performance goals may become vested and non-forfeitable in connection with a sale event in the compensation committee's discretion and (ii) upon the effectiveness of the sale event, the 2017 Plan and all awards will automatically terminate. In the event of such termination, (i) individuals holding options and stock appreciation rights will be permitted to exercise such options and stock appreciation rights (to the extent exercisable) prior to the sale event; or (ii) we may make or provide for a cash payment to participants holding options and stock appreciation rights equal to the difference between the per share cash consideration payable to stockholders in the sale event and the exercise price of the options or stock appreciation rights (to the extent then exercisable).

Our board of directors may amend or discontinue the 2017 Plan and our compensation committee may amend the exercise price of options and amend or cancel outstanding awards for purposes of satisfying changes in law or any other lawful purpose but no such action may adversely affect rights under an award without the holder's consent. Certain amendments to the 2017 Plan require the approval of our stockholders. No awards may be granted under the 2017 Plan after the date that is 10 years from the date of stockholder approval. No awards under the 2017 Plan have been made prior to the date of this prospectus.

### ***Employee Stock Purchase Plan***

On October 27, 2017, our board of directors adopted and on November 6, 2017, our stockholders approved our 2017 Employee Stock Purchase Plan, or the ESPP. The ESPP authorizes the issuance of up to a total of 205,000 shares of common stock to participating employees. The ESPP provides that the number of shares reserved and available for issuance under the ESPP shall be cumulatively increased each January 1, beginning on January 1, 2018, by the least of (i) 205,000 shares of common stock (ii) 1 percent of the outstanding number of shares of our common stock on the immediately preceding December 31, or (iii) such lesser number of shares as determined by our compensation committee. The number of shares reserved and available for issuance under the ESPP is subject to adjustment in the event of a stock split, stock dividend or other change in our capitalization.

All employees whose customary employment is for more than 20 hours a week are eligible to participate in the ESPP. Any employee who owns five percent or more of the voting power or value of our shares of common stock is not eligible to purchase shares under the ESPP.

We may make one or more offerings each year to our employees to purchase shares under the ESPP. Each eligible employee may elect to participate in any offering by submitting an enrollment form at least 15 business days before the relevant offering date.

Each employee who is a participant in the ESPP may purchase shares by authorizing payroll deductions of up to 15 percent of his or her base compensation during an offering period. Unless the participating employee has previously withdrawn from the offering, his or her accumulated payroll deductions will be used to purchase shares of common stock on the last business day of the offering period at a price equal to 85 percent of the fair market value of the

## [Table of Contents](#)

common stock on the first business day or the last business day of the offering period, whichever is lower, provided that no more than 30,750 shares of common stock may be purchased by any one employee during each offering period or such lesser maximum number of shares as shall have been established by our compensation committee in advance of the offering. Under applicable tax rules, an employee may purchase no more than \$25,000 worth of common stock, valued at the start of the purchase period, under the ESPP in any calendar year.

The accumulated payroll deductions of any employee who is not a participant on the last day of an offering period will be refunded. An employee's rights under the ESPP terminate upon voluntary withdrawal from the plan or when the employee ceases employment with us for any reason.

The ESPP may be terminated or amended by our board of directors at any time. An amendment that increases the number of shares of common stock that are authorized under the ESPP and certain other amendments require the approval of our stockholders.

### **Senior Executive Cash Incentive Bonus Plan**

In October 2017, our board of directors adopted the Senior Executive Cash Incentive Bonus Plan, or the Bonus Plan. The Bonus Plan provides for cash bonus payments based upon the attainment of performance targets established by our compensation committee. The payment targets will be related to financial and operational measures or objectives with respect to our company, or corporate performance goals, as well as individual performance objectives.

Our compensation committee may select corporate performance goals from among the following: achievement of cash flow (including, but not limited to, operating cash flow and free cash flow); research and development, publication, clinical and/or regulatory milestones; earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation and amortization; net income (loss) (either before or after interest, taxes, depreciation and/or amortization); changes in the market price of our common stock; economic value-added; acquisitions or strategic transactions, including licenses, collaborations, joint ventures or promotion arrangements; operating income (loss); return on capital, assets, equity, or investment; total stockholder returns; coverage decisions; productivity; expense efficiency; margins; operating efficiency; working capital; earnings (loss) per share of our common stock; sales or market shares; number of prescriptions or prescribing physicians; revenue; corporate revenue; operating income and/or net annual recurring revenue, any of which may be (A) measured in absolute terms or compared to any incremental increase, (B) measured in terms of growth, (C) compared to another company or companies or to results of a peer group, (D) measured against the market as a whole and/or as compared to applicable market indices and/or (E) measured on a pre-tax or post-tax basis (if applicable).

Each executive officer who is selected to participate in the Bonus Plan will have a target bonus opportunity set for each performance period. The bonus formulas will be adopted in each performance period by the compensation committee and communicated to each executive. The corporate performance goals will be measured at the end of each performance period after our financial reports have been published or such other appropriate time as the compensation committee determines. If the corporate performance goals and individual performance objectives are met, payments will be made as soon as practicable following the end of each performance period. Subject to the rights contained in any agreement between the executive officer and us, an executive officer must be employed by us on the bonus payment date to be eligible to receive a bonus payment. The Bonus Plan also permits the compensation committee to approve additional bonuses to executive officers in its sole discretion and provides the compensation committee with discretion to adjust the size of the award as it deems appropriate to account for unforeseen factors beyond management's control that affected corporate performance.

### **401(k) Plan**

We maintain the scPharmaceuticals 401(k) Plan, a tax-qualified retirement plan for our employees. The 401(k) plan is intended to qualify under Section 401(k) of the Code, so that contributions to the 401(k) plan by employees or by us, and the investment earnings thereon, are not taxable to the employees until withdrawn from the 401(k) plan, and so that contributions by us, if any, will be deductible by us when made. All employees are eligible to participate in the 401(k) plan as of the first day of the first full month of their employment. Participants have the option to make two kinds of Elective Deferral Contributions: Pre-Tax Elective Deferrals and Roth Elective Deferrals. Any initial election or change of election by an eligible employee may be made at any time. We make a matching contribution equal to 100% on the first 3% of compensation deferred as an Elective Deferral and an additional 50% on the next 2% of compensation deferred as an Elective Deferral. Participants are always 100% vested in their contributions and any matching contribution made by us.

**DIRECTOR COMPENSATION**

The following table presents the total compensation for each person who served as a non-employee member of our board of directors and received compensation for such service during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2016. Other than as set forth in the table and described more fully below, we did not pay any compensation, make any equity awards or non-equity awards to, or pay any other compensation to any of the non-employee members of our board of directors in 2016. We reimburse non-employee members of our board of directors for reasonable travel expenses. Dr. Muntendam, our former President and Chief Executive Officer as of December 31, 2016, did not receive any compensation for his service as a member of our board of directors during 2015 or 2016. Dr. Muntendam's compensation for service as an employee for fiscal year 2016 is presented in "Executive Compensation – 2016 Summary Compensation Table." In addition, John Tucker, our current President and Chief Executive Officer does not receive any compensation for his service as a member of our board of directors.

NAME	FEES EARNED OR PAID IN CASH (\$)	OPTION AWARDS (\$)	TOTAL (\$)
Mette Kirstine Agger (1)	—	—	—
Dorothy Coleman (2)	11,000	—	11,000
Abhay Gandhi (1)	—	—	—
Jack A. Khattar (2)(3)	5,000	46,387(4)	51,387
Kush M. Parmar M.D., Ph.D. (1)	—	—	—
Leonard D. Schaeffer (2)	11,000	—	11,000
Jonathan Silverstein (1)	—	—	—

(1) Investor-appointed directors did not receive fees or other compensation for their service on our board of directors.

(2) Non-investor appointed directors, other than Mr. Tucker, received \$2,000 per in-person board meeting and \$500 per telephonic board meeting.

(3) Mr. Khattar joined our board of directors on June 29, 2016.

(4) As of December 31, 2016, Mr. Khattar held an option to purchase 6,963 shares of our common stock, none of which were vested as of such date.

**Non-Employee Director Compensation Policy**

Our board of directors has adopted a non-employee director compensation policy, effective upon effectiveness of the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part, that is designed to enable us to attract and retain, on a long-term basis, highly qualified non-employee directors. Under the policy, each director who is not an employee will be paid cash compensation from and after the completion of this offering, as set forth below:

	MEMBER ANNUAL FEE (\$)	CHAIRMAN ADDITIONAL ANNUAL FEE (\$)
Board of Directors	30,000	60,000
Audit Committee	7,500	15,000
Compensation Committee	5,000	10,000
Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee	4,000	7,500

In addition, each non-employee director serving on our board of directors upon completion of this offering and each non-employee director elected or appointed to our board of directors following the completing of this offering (other than in connection with this offering) will be granted 12,000 options on the date of such director's election or appointment to the board of directors, which will vest in the following manner, subject to continued service through such vesting date(s): 33% on first anniversary of grant, then the remainder should vest ratably monthly over two years. On the date of each annual meeting of stockholders of our company, each non-employee director will be granted 6,000 options, which will vest in the following manner, subject to continued service as a director through such vesting date(s): in full upon the earlier to occur of the first anniversary of the date of grant or the date of the next annual meeting.

## CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS

Other than the compensation agreements and other arrangements described under “Executive Compensation” and “Director Compensation” in this prospectus and the transactions described below, since January 1, 2014, there has not been and there is not currently proposed, any transaction or series of similar transactions to which we were, or will be, a party in which the amount involved exceeded, or will exceed, \$120,000 and in which any director, executive officer, holder of five percent or more of any class of our capital stock or any member of the immediate family of, or entities affiliated with, any of the foregoing persons, had, or will have, a direct or indirect material interest.

### Private Placements of Securities

#### Series A Preferred Stock Financing

In March 2014, with subsequent closings in October 2014 and April 2015, we sold an aggregate of 17,565,679 shares of our Series A preferred stock at a purchase price of \$1.00 per share. Certain investors (or such investors’ affiliates) holding notes issued in 2013 through January of 2014, or the 2013 notes, used the consideration received upon termination of the 2013 notes as a portion of the purchase price of the Series A preferred stock. The following table summarizes purchases of our Series A preferred stock by related persons:

STOCKHOLDER	SHARES OF SERIES A PREFERRED STOCK	TOTAL PURCHASE PRICE
5AM Ventures (1) (2)	8,000,000	\$8,000,000
Lundbeckfond Invest A/S (3)	8,000,000	\$8,000,000
Pieter Muntendam, M.D. (4)	450,045	\$ 372,239 (5)
Leonard Schaeffer (6)	250,000	\$ 250,000

- (1) Kush M. Parmar, M.D., Ph.D., a partner at 5AM Ventures, is a member of our board of directors. 5AM Ventures is a holder of five percent or more of our capital stock.
- (2) Consists of (i) 7,680,000 shares, all purchased and received by 5AM Ventures IV, L.P. and (ii) 320,000 shares, all purchased and received by 5AM Co-Investors IV, L.P.
- (3) Mette Kirstine Agger, the managing partner at Lundbeckfonden Ventures, the general partner of Lundbeckfond Invest A/S, is a member of our board of directors. Lundbeckfond Invest A/S is a holder of five percent or more of our capital stock.
- (4) Pieter Muntendam, M.D. is a holder of five percent or more of our capital stock.
- (5) Reflects conversion of principal and interest on certain of the 2013 notes at a discounted price per share relative to the Series A purchase price.
- (6) Leonard Schaeffer is a member of our board of directors.

#### First 2016 Convertible Note Financing

In January 2016, we entered into a convertible note purchase agreement, pursuant to which, including by means of multiple subsequent closings through July 2016, we issued and sold to investors an aggregate principal amount of \$8.0 million of convertible promissory notes, or the initial 2016 notes. All of the initial 2016 notes in aggregate principal amount of \$8.0 million, together with accrued interest of \$0.2 million, were used as consideration by the investors to purchase our Series A preferred stock in August 2016. The following table summarizes the issuance of such convertible notes to related persons:

STOCKHOLDER	PRINCIPAL AMOUNT OF NOTES AT FINAL CLOSING	PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND ACCRUED INTERESTED AT TERMINATION	SHARES OF SERIES A PREFERRED STOCK FROM CONVERSION
5AM Ventures (1) (2)	\$3,000,000	\$ 3,092,711	3,092,711
Lundbeckfond Invest A/S (3)	\$3,000,000	\$ 3,092,383	3,092,383
Schaeffer Holdings LLC (4)	\$ 300,000	\$ 309,501	309,501
Dorothy Coleman (5)	\$ 100,000	\$ 103,024	103,024
Pieter Muntendam, M.D. (6)	\$ 100,000	\$ 102,926	102,926

## [Table of Contents](#)

- (1) Kush M. Parmar, M.D., Ph.D., a partner at 5AM Ventures, is a member of our board of directors. 5AM Ventures is a holder of five percent or more of our capital stock.
- (2) Consists of (i) 2,969,003 shares, all purchased and received by 5AM Ventures IV, L.P. and (ii) 123,708 shares, all purchased and received by 5AM Co-Investors IV, L.P. 5AM Ventures is a holder of five percent or more of our capital stock.
- (3) Mette Kirstine Agger, the managing partner at Lundbeckfond Invest A/S, is a member of our board of directors. Lundbeckfond Invest A/S is a holder of five percent or more of our capital stock.
- (4) Leonard Schaeffer, manager at Schaeffer Holdings LLC, is a member of our board of directors.
- (5) Dorothy Coleman is a member of our board of directors.
- (6) Pieter Muntendam, M.D. is a holder of five percent or more of our capital stock.

### **Second 2016 Convertible Note Financing**

In August 2016, we entered into a convertible note purchase agreement, pursuant to which, including by means of secondary closings in September 2016, we issued and sold to investors an aggregate principal amount of \$4.7 million of convertible promissory notes, or the secondary 2016 notes. All of the secondary 2016 notes in aggregate principal amount of \$4.7 million, together with accrued interest of \$0.1 million, were used as consideration by the investors to purchase our Series B preferred stock in December 2016. The following table summarizes the issuance of such convertible notes to related persons:

<b>STOCKHOLDER</b>	<b>PRINCIPAL AMOUNT OF NOTES AT FINAL CLOSING</b>
5AM Ventures (1)(2)	\$ 2,000,000
Lundbeckfond Invest A/S (3)	\$ 2,000,000
Pieter Muntendam, M.D. (4)	\$ 75,000

- (1) Kush M. Parmar, M.D., Ph.D., a partner at 5AM Ventures, is a member of our board of directors. 5AM Ventures is a holder of five percent or more of our capital stock.
- (2) Consists of (i) \$1,920,000 in principal amount for 5AM Ventures IV, L.P. and (ii) \$80,000 in principal amount for 5AM Co-Investors IV, L.P.
- (3) Mette Kirstine Agger, the managing partner at Lundbeckfond Invest A/S, is a member of our board of directors. Lundbeckfond Invest A/S is a holder of five percent or more of our capital stock.
- (4) Pieter Muntendam, M.D. is a holder of five percent or more of our capital stock.

### **Series B Preferred Stock Financing**

In December 2016, we sold an aggregate of 46,962,784 shares of our Series B preferred stock at a purchase price of \$1.00 per share. Certain investors (or such investor's affiliate) holding secondary 2016 notes used the consideration received upon termination of the secondary 2016 notes as a portion of the purchase price of the Series B preferred stock. The following table summarizes purchases of our Series B preferred stock by related persons:

<b>STOCKHOLDER</b>	<b>CASH PAID FOR SERIES B PREFERRED STOCK</b>	<b>PRINCIPAL AND ACCRUED INTEREST UNDER THE SECOND 2016 NOTES</b>	<b>SHARES OF SERIES B PREFERRED STOCK</b>	<b>TOTAL PURCHASE PRICE</b>
5AM Ventures (1)(2)	\$ 5,000,000	\$ 2,053,041	7,566,301	\$ 7,053,041
Lundbeckfond Invest A/S (3)	\$ 4,500,000	\$ 2,054,356	7,067,945	\$ 6,554,356
OrbiMed Private Investments VI, L.P. (4)	\$ 18,500,000	—	18,500,000	\$ 18,500,000
Sun Pharmaceutical Industries Inc. (5)	\$ 13,000,000	—	13,000,000	\$ 13,000,000
Pieter Muntendam, M.D. (6)	—	\$ 76,463	95,578	\$ 76,463

- (1) Kush M. Parmar, M.D., Ph.D., a partner at 5AM Ventures, is a member of our board of directors. 5AM Ventures is a holder of five percent or more of our capital stock.
- (2) Consists of (i) 7,263,649 shares, all purchased and received by 5AM Ventures IV, L.P. (ii) 302,652 shares, all purchased and received by 5AM Co-Investors IV, L.P.
- (3) Mette Kirstine Agger, the managing partner at Lundbeckfond Invest A/S, is a member of our board of directors. Lundbeckfond Invest A/S is a holder of five percent or more of our capital stock.
- (4) Jonathan Silverstein, a partner at OrbiMed, is a member of our board of directors. OrbiMed is a holder of five percent or more of our capital stock.

## [Table of Contents](#)

(5) Abhay Gandhi, an executive officer at Sun Pharma, is a member of our board of directors. Sun Pharma is a holder of five percent or more of our capital stock.

(6) Pieter Muntendam, M.D. is a holder of five percent or more of our capital stock.

### **Agreements with Stockholders**

In connection with our Series B preferred stock financing, we entered into investors' rights, voting and right of first refusal and co-sale agreements containing registration rights, information rights, voting rights and rights of first refusal, among other things, with certain holders of our preferred stock and certain holders of our common stock. These stockholder agreements will terminate upon the closing of this offering, except for the registration rights granted under our investors' rights agreement, as more fully described in "Description of Capital Stock—Registration Rights."

### **Participation in this Offering**

Certain of our existing stockholders, including certain affiliates of our directors, have agreed to purchase an aggregate of approximately \$35 million of shares of our common stock in this offering at the initial public offering price.

### **Indemnification Agreements**

In connection with this offering, we have entered into agreements to indemnify our directors and executive officers. These agreements will, among other things, require us to indemnify these individuals for certain expenses (including attorneys' fees), judgments, fines and settlement amounts reasonably incurred by such person in any action or proceeding, including any action by or in our right, on account of any services undertaken by such person on behalf of our company or that person's status as a member of our board of directors to the maximum extent allowed under Delaware law.

### **Policies for Approval of Related Party Transactions**

Our board of directors reviews and approves transactions with directors, officers and holders of five percent or more of our voting securities and their affiliates, each a related party. Prior to this offering, the material facts as to the related party's relationship or interest in the transaction are disclosed to our board of directors prior to their consideration of such transaction, and the transaction is not considered approved by our board of directors unless a majority of the directors who are not interested in the transaction approve the transaction. Further, when stockholders are entitled to vote on a transaction with a related party, the material facts of the related party's relationship or interest in the transaction are disclosed to the stockholders, who must approve the transaction in good faith.

In connection with this offering, we have adopted a written related party transactions policy that such transactions must be approved by our audit committee. This policy became effective on the date on which the registration statement of which this prospectus is part was declared effective by the SEC. Pursuant to this policy, the audit committee has the primary responsibility for reviewing and approving or disapproving "related party transactions," which are transactions between us and related persons in which the aggregate amount involved exceeds or may be expected to exceed \$120,000 and in which a related person has or will have a direct or indirect material interest. For purposes of this policy, a related person is defined as a director, executive officer, nominee for director, or greater than 5% beneficial owner of our common stock, in each case since the beginning of the most recently completed year, and their immediate family members.

## PRINCIPAL STOCKHOLDERS

The following table sets forth certain information known to us regarding beneficial ownership of our capital stock as of September 30, 2017, as adjusted to reflect the sale of common stock offered by us in this offering, for:

- each person or group of affiliated persons known by us to be the beneficial owner of more than five percent of our capital stock;
- each of our named executive officers;
- each of our directors; and
- all of our executive officers and directors as a group.

Beneficial ownership is determined in accordance with the rules of the SEC and generally includes voting or investment power with respect to securities. Under those rules, beneficial ownership includes any shares as to which the individual or entity has sole or shared voting power or investment power, and includes securities that the individual or entity has the right to acquire, such as through the exercise of stock options, within 60 days of September 30, 2017. Except as noted by footnote, and subject to community property laws where applicable, we believe, based on the information provided to us, that the persons and entities named in the table below have sole voting and investment power with respect to all common stock shown as beneficially owned by them.

Certain of our existing stockholders, including certain affiliates of our directors, have agreed to purchase an aggregate of approximately \$35 million of shares of our common stock in this offering at the initial public offering price. The table below does not give effect to the purchases by such stockholders in this offering.

The percentage of beneficial ownership prior to this offering in the table below is based on 11,210,151 shares of common stock deemed to be outstanding as of September 30, 2017 (of which 852 shares are subject to a right of repurchase by us pursuant to a stock restriction agreement between us and the holders of such shares), assuming the conversion of all outstanding shares of our preferred stock upon the closing of this offering into an aggregate of 10,126,771 shares of common stock upon the completion of this offering, and the percentage of beneficial ownership after this offering in the table below is based on 17,610,151 shares of common stock outstanding after the closing of the offering. To the extent that the underwriters sell more than 6,400,000 shares in this offering, the underwriters have the option to purchase up to an additional 960,000 shares at the initial public offering price less the underwriting discount. The information in the table below assumes no exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase additional shares.

[Table of Contents](#)

Except as otherwise noted below, the address for persons listed in the table is c/o scPharmaceuticals Inc., 2400 District Avenue, Suite 310, Burlington, Massachusetts 01830.

NAME AND ADDRESS OF BENEFICIAL OWNER	NUMBER OF SHARES BENEFICIALLY OWNED PRIOR TO OFFERING	PERCENTAGE OF SHARES BENEFICIALLY OWNED	
		BEFORE OFFERING	AFTER OFFERING
<b>5% Stockholders:</b>			
Entities associated with 5AM Ventures (1)	2,598,678	23.2%	14.8%
Lundbeckfond Invest A/S (2)	2,529,225	22.6%	14.4%
OrbiMed Private Investments VI, L.P. (3)	2,576,532	23.0%	14.6%
Sun Pharmaceutical Industries, Inc. (4)	1,810,536	16.2%	10.3%
Pieter Muntendam (5)	921,248	8.2%	5.2%
<b>Named Executive Officer, Other Executive Officers and Directors:</b>			
John H. Tucker (6)	496,674	4.2%	2.7%
Abraham Ceesay (7)	155,209	1.4%	*
Troy Ignelzi (8)	124,166	1.1%	*
Mette Kirstine Agger	—	*	*
Dorothy Coleman (9)	21,311	*	*
Abhay Gandhi	—	*	*
Jack A. Khattar (10)	6,963	*	*
Kush M. Parmar M.D., Ph.D.	—	*	*
Leonard D. Schaeffer (11)	105,776	*	*
Jonathan T. Silverstein	—	*	*
<b>Director Nominee</b>			
Klaus Veitinger, M.D.(12)	18,105	*	*
<b>All executive officers, director and director nominees as a group (11 persons) (13)</b>			
	928,204	7.6%	5.0%

\* Less than 1%

- (1) Consists of (i) 2,494,731 shares of common stock issuable upon conversion of preferred stock held by 5AM Ventures IV, L.P.; and (ii) 103,947 shares of common stock issuable upon conversion of preferred stock held by 5AM Co-Investors IV, L.P. Dr. John D. Diekman, Andrew Schwab and Dr. Scott M. Rocklage are managing members of 5AM Partners IV, LLC, the general partner of 5AM Ventures IV, L.P. and 5AM Co-Investors IV, L.P., and as such, share voting and investment authority over the shares held by 5AM Ventures IV, L.P. and 5AM Co-Investors IV, L.P. Kush Parmar, a member of our board of directors, is a managing partner at 5AM Venture Management, LLC, which is an affiliate of 5AM Partners. Each of 5AM Partners IV, LLC, Dr. Diekman, Mr. Schwab, Dr. Rocklage, and Dr. Parmar disclaim beneficial ownership of such shares except to the extent of its or their pecuniary interest therein. The address of 5AM Ventures is 501 2nd Street, Suite 350, San Francisco, CA 94107.
- (2) Consists of 2,529,225 shares of common stock issuable upon conversion of preferred stock held by Lundbeckfond Invest A/S. The board of directors of Lundbeckfond Invest A/S may be deemed to share voting and investment authority over the shares held by Lundbeckfond Invest A/S. Mette Kirstine Agger, a member of our board of directors, is a managing partner at Lundbeckfond Ventures, which is an affiliate of Lundbeckfond Invest A/S. The address of Lundbeckfond Invest A/S is Scherfigsvej 7, DK-2100 København Ø.
- (3) Consists of 2,576,532 shares of common stock issuable upon conversion of preferred stock held by OrbiMed Private Investments VI, L.P. ("OPI VI"). OrbiMed Capital GP VI LLC ("GP VI") is the sole general partner of OPI VI. OrbiMed Advisors LLC ("OrbiMed Advisors") is the managing member of GP VI. Samuel D. Isaly is the managing member of and owner of a controlling interest in OrbiMed Advisors. By virtue of such relationships, GP VI, OrbiMed Advisors, and Mr. Isaly may be deemed to have voting and investment power with respect to the shares held by OPI VI and as a result may be deemed to have beneficial ownership of such shares. Jonathan T. Silverstein, a member of OrbiMed Advisors, is a member of our board of directors. Each of GP VI, OrbiMed Advisors, Mr. Isaly and Mr. Silverstein disclaims beneficial ownership of the shares held by OPI VI, except to the extent of its or his pecuniary interest therein if any. The address of these entities is 601 Lexington Avenue, 54th floor, New York, New York 10022.
- (4) Consists of 1,810,536 shares of common stock issuable upon conversion of preferred stock held by Sun Pharmaceutical Industries, Inc. ("Sun Pharma"). The board of directors of Sun Pharma may be deemed to share voting and investment authority over the shares held by Sun Pharma. The address of Sun Pharma is 2 Independence Way, Princeton, NJ 08540.
- (5) Consists of (i) 821,512 shares of common stock held by Pieter Muntendam; (ii) 90,324 shares of common stock issuable upon conversion of preferred stock held by Pieter Muntendam; and (iii) 9,412 shares of common stock issuable upon conversion of

## Table of Contents

preferred stock held by Melissa Paul (the "Paul Shares"). Dr. Muntendam may be deemed to beneficially own the Paul Shares, which are held by Melissa Paul, Dr. Muntendam's wife. Dr. Muntendam disclaims beneficial ownership of the Paul Shares and this shall not be deemed an admission that he is the beneficial owner of the Paul Shares.

- (6) Consists of 496,674 shares of common stock underlying options exercisable within 60 days of September 30, 2017.
- (7) Consists of 155,209 shares of common stock underlying options exercisable within 60 days of September 30, 2017.
- (8) Consists of 124,166 shares of common stock underlying options exercisable within 60 days of September 30, 2017.
- (9) Consists of (i) 14,348 shares of common stock issuable upon conversion of preferred stock and (ii) 6,963 shares of common stock underlying options exercisable within 60 days of September 30, 2017.
- (10) Consists of 6,963 shares of common stock underlying options exercisable within 60 days of September 30, 2017.
- (11) Consists of (i) 34,818 shares of common stock issuable upon conversion of preferred stock held by Leonard D. Schaeffer; (ii) 43,104 shares of common stock issuable upon conversion of preferred stock held by Schaeffer Holdings LLC; and (iii) 27,854 shares of common stock underlying options exercisable within 60 days of September 30, 2017.
- (12) Consists of 18,105 shares of common stock underlying options exercisable within 60 days of September 30, 2017.
- (13) Includes an aggregate of 835,934 shares of common stock underlying options exercisable within 60 days of September 30, 2017 held by seven executive officers, directors and director nominees.

## DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK

*The following descriptions are summaries of the material terms of our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and amended and restated bylaws, which will be effective upon the closing of this offering. The descriptions of the common stock and preferred stock give effect to changes to our capital structure that will occur upon the completion of this offering. We refer in this section to our amended and restated certificate of incorporation as our certificate of incorporation, and we refer to our amended and restated bylaws as our bylaws.*

### General

Upon completion of this offering, our authorized capital stock will consist of 150,000,000 shares of common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, and 10,000,000 shares of preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, all of which shares of preferred stock will be undesignated.

As of September 30, 2017, 1,083,380 shares of our common stock (of which 852 shares are subject to a right of repurchase by us pursuant to a stock restriction agreement between us and the holders of such shares), 25,749,471 shares of Series A preferred stock and 46,962,784 shares of Series B preferred stock were outstanding and held by 32 stockholders of record. This amount does not take into account the conversion of all outstanding shares of our preferred stock into common stock upon the closing of this offering.

### Common Stock

The holders of our common stock are entitled to one vote for each share held on all matters submitted to a vote of the stockholders. The holders of our common stock do not have any cumulative voting rights. Holders of our common stock are entitled to receive ratably any dividends declared by our board of directors out of funds legally available for that purpose, subject to any preferential dividend rights of any outstanding preferred stock. Our common stock has no preemptive rights, conversion rights or other subscription rights or redemption or sinking fund provisions.

In the event of our liquidation, dissolution or winding up, holders of our common stock will be entitled to share ratably in all assets remaining after payment of all debts and other liabilities and any liquidation preference of any outstanding preferred stock. The shares to be issued by us in this offering will be, when issued and paid for, validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable.

### Preferred Stock

Upon the completion of this offering, all outstanding shares of our preferred stock will be converted into shares of our common stock. Upon the consummation of this offering, our board of directors will have the authority, without further action by our stockholders, to issue up to 10,000,000 shares of preferred stock in one or more series and to fix the rights, preferences, privileges and restrictions thereof. These rights, preferences and privileges could include dividend rights, conversion rights, voting rights, terms of redemption, liquidation preferences, sinking fund terms and the number of shares constituting, or the designation of, such series, any or all of which may be greater than the rights of common stock. The issuance of our preferred stock could adversely affect the voting power of holders of common stock and the likelihood that such holders will receive dividend payments and payments upon our liquidation. In addition, the issuance of preferred stock could have the effect of delaying, deferring or preventing a change in control of our company or other corporate action. Immediately after consummation of this offering, no shares of preferred stock will be outstanding, and we have no present plan to issue any shares of preferred stock.

### Stock Options

As of September 30, 2017, there were outstanding options to purchase an aggregate of 1,046,879 shares of our common stock.

### Registration Rights

Upon the completion of this offering, the holders of 10,126,771 shares of our common stock, including those issuable upon the conversion of preferred stock, will be entitled to rights with respect to the registration of these securities under the Securities Act. These rights are provided under the terms of an investors' rights agreement

## [Table of Contents](#)

between us, holders of our preferred stock. The investors' rights agreement includes demand registration rights, short-form registration rights and piggyback registration rights. All fees, costs and expenses of underwritten registrations under this agreement will be borne by us and all selling expenses, including underwriting discounts and selling commissions, will be borne by the holders of the shares being registered.

### ***Demand Registration Rights***

Beginning 180 days after the effective date of this registration statement, the holders of 10,126,771 shares of our common stock, including those issuable upon the conversion of preferred stock upon closing of this offering, are entitled to demand registration rights. Under the terms of the investors' rights agreement, we will be required, upon the written request of holders of at least 30% of these securities that would result in an aggregate offering price of at least \$20.0 million, to file a registration statement and use commercially reasonable efforts to effect the registration of all or a portion of these shares for public resale. We are required to effect only two registrations pursuant to this provision of the investors' rights agreement.

### ***Short-Form Registration Rights***

Pursuant to the investors' rights agreement, if we are eligible to file a registration statement on Form S-3, upon the written request of majority in interest of these holders to sell registrable securities at an aggregate price of at least \$2.0 million, we will be required to use commercially reasonable efforts to effect a registration of such shares. We are required to effect only two registrations in any twelve month period pursuant to this provision of the investors' rights agreement. The right to have such shares registered on Form S-3 is further subject to other specified conditions and limitations.

### ***Piggyback Registration Rights***

Pursuant to the investors' rights agreement, if we register any of our securities either for our own account or for the account of other security holders, the holders of these shares are entitled to include their shares in the registration. Subject to certain exceptions contained in the investors' rights agreement, we and the underwriters may limit the number of shares included in the underwritten offering to the number of shares which we and the underwriters determine in our sole discretion will not jeopardize the success of the offering.

### ***Indemnification***

Our investors' rights agreement contains customary cross-indemnification provisions, under which we are obligated to indemnify holders of registrable securities in the event of material misstatements or omissions in the registration statement attributable to us, and they are obligated to indemnify us for material misstatements or omissions attributable to them.

### ***Expiration of Registration Rights***

The demand registration rights and short form registration rights granted under the investors' rights agreement will terminate on the third anniversary of the completion of this offering or at such time after this offering when the holders' shares may be sold without restriction pursuant to Rule 144 within a three month period.

### ***Anti-Takeover Effects of our Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws and Delaware Law***

Our certificate of incorporation and bylaws include a number of provisions that may have the effect of delaying, deferring or preventing another party from acquiring control of us and encouraging persons considering unsolicited tender offers or other unilateral takeover proposals to negotiate with our board of directors rather than pursue non-negotiated takeover attempts. These provisions include the items described below.

### ***Board Composition and Filling Vacancies***

Our certificate of incorporation provides for the division of our board of directors into three classes serving staggered three-year terms, with one class being elected each year. Our certificate of incorporation also provides that directors may be removed only for cause and then only by the affirmative vote of the holders of two-thirds or more of the shares then entitled to vote at an election of directors. Furthermore, any vacancy on our board of directors, however occurring, including a vacancy resulting from an increase in the size of our board, may only be filled by the affirmative vote of a majority of our directors then in office even if less than a quorum. The classification of directors, together with the limitations on removal of directors and treatment of vacancies, has the effect of making it more difficult for stockholders to change the composition of our board of directors.

### **No Written Consent of Stockholders**

Our certificate of incorporation provides that all stockholder actions are required to be taken by a vote of the stockholders at an annual or special meeting, and that stockholders may not take any action by written consent in lieu of a meeting. This limit may lengthen the amount of time required to take stockholder actions and would prevent the amendment of our bylaws or removal of directors by our stockholders without holding a meeting of stockholders.

### **Meetings of Stockholders**

Our certificate of incorporation and bylaws provide that only a majority of the members of our board of directors then in office may call special meetings of stockholders and only those matters set forth in the notice of the special meeting may be considered or acted upon at a special meeting of stockholders. Our bylaws limit the business that may be conducted at an annual meeting of stockholders to those matters properly brought before the meeting.

### **Advance Notice Requirements**

Our bylaws establish advance notice procedures with regard to stockholder proposals relating to the nomination of candidates for election as directors or new business to be brought before meetings of our stockholders. These procedures provide that notice of stockholder proposals must be timely given in writing to our corporate secretary prior to the meeting at which the action is to be taken. Generally, to be timely, notice must be received at our principal executive offices not less than 90 days nor more than 120 days prior to the first anniversary date of the annual meeting for the preceding year. Our bylaws specify the requirements as to form and content of all stockholders' notices. These requirements may preclude stockholders from bringing matters before the stockholders at an annual or special meeting.

### **Amendment to Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws**

Any amendment of our certificate of incorporation must first be approved by a majority of our board of directors, and if required by law or our certificate of incorporation, must thereafter be approved by a majority of the outstanding shares entitled to vote on the amendment and a majority of the outstanding shares of each class entitled to vote thereon as a class, except that the amendment of the provisions relating to stockholder action, board composition, limitation of liability and the amendment of our bylaws and certificate of incorporation must be approved by not less than two-thirds of the outstanding shares entitled to vote on the amendment, and not less than two-thirds of the outstanding shares of each class entitled to vote thereon as a class. Our bylaws may be amended by the affirmative vote of a majority of the directors then in office, subject to any limitations set forth in the bylaws; and may also be amended by the affirmative vote of at least two-thirds of the outstanding shares entitled to vote on the amendment, or, if our board of directors recommends that the stockholders approve the amendment, by the affirmative vote of the majority of the outstanding shares entitled to vote on the amendment, in each case voting together as a single class.

### **Undesignated Preferred Stock**

Our certificate of incorporation provides for 10,000,000 authorized shares of preferred stock. The existence of authorized but unissued shares of preferred stock may enable our board of directors to discourage an attempt to obtain control of us by means of a merger, tender offer, proxy contest or otherwise. For example, if in the due exercise of its fiduciary obligations, our board of directors were to determine that a takeover proposal is not in the best interests of our stockholders, our board of directors could cause shares of preferred stock to be issued without stockholder approval in one or more private offerings or other transactions that might dilute the voting or other rights of the proposed acquirer or insurgent stockholder or stockholder group. In this regard, our certificate of incorporation grants our board of directors broad power to establish the rights and preferences of authorized and unissued shares of preferred stock. The issuance of shares of preferred stock could decrease the amount of earnings and assets available for distribution to holders of shares of common stock. The issuance may also adversely affect the rights and powers, including voting rights, of these holders and may have the effect of delaying, deterring or preventing a change in control of us.

### **Choice of forum**

Our certificate of incorporation provides that, unless we consent in writing to the selection of an alternative form, the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware will be the sole and exclusive forum for: (1) any derivative action or proceeding brought on our behalf; (2) any action asserting a claim of breach of a fiduciary duty or other wrongdoing by any of our directors, officers, employees or agents to us or our stockholders; (3) any action asserting a claim

## [Table of Contents](#)

against us arising pursuant to any provision of the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware or our certificate of incorporation or bylaws; (4) any action to interpret, apply, enforce or determine the validity of our certificate of incorporation or bylaws; or (5) any action asserting a claim governed by the internal affairs doctrine. Our certificate of incorporation also provides that any person or entity purchasing or otherwise acquiring any interest in shares of our capital stock will be deemed to have notice of and to have consented to this choice of forum provision. It is possible that a court of law could rule that the choice of forum provision contained in our restated certificate of incorporation is inapplicable or unenforceable if it is challenged in a proceeding or otherwise.

### **Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law**

Upon completion of this offering, we will be subject to the provisions of Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law. In general, Section 203 prohibits a publicly held Delaware corporation from engaging in a "business combination" with an "interested stockholder" for a three-year period following the time that this stockholder becomes an interested stockholder, unless the business combination is approved in a prescribed manner. Under Section 203, a business combination between a corporation and an interested stockholder is prohibited unless it satisfies one of the following conditions:

- before the stockholder became interested, our board of directors approved either the business combination or the transaction which resulted in the stockholder becoming an interested stockholder;
- upon consummation of the transaction which resulted in the stockholder becoming an interested stockholder, the interested stockholder owned at least 85% of the voting stock of the corporation outstanding at the time the transaction commenced, excluding for purposes of determining the voting stock outstanding, shares owned by persons who are directors and also officers, and employee stock plans, in some instances, but not the outstanding voting stock owned by the interested stockholder; or
- at or after the time the stockholder became interested, the business combination was approved by our board of directors and authorized at an annual or special meeting of the stockholders by the affirmative vote of at least two-thirds of the outstanding voting stock which is not owned by the interested stockholder.

Section 203 defines a business combination to include:

- any merger or consolidation involving the corporation and the interested stockholder;
- any sale, transfer, lease, pledge or other disposition involving the interested stockholder of 10% or more of the assets of the corporation;
- subject to exceptions, any transaction that results in the issuance or transfer by the corporation of any stock of the corporation to the interested stockholder;
- subject to exceptions, any transaction involving the corporation that has the effect of increasing the proportionate share of the stock of any class or series of the corporation beneficially owned by the interested stockholder; and
- the receipt by the interested stockholder of the benefit of any loans, advances, guarantees, pledges or other financial benefits provided by or through the corporation.

In general, Section 203 defines an interested stockholder as any entity or person beneficially owning 15% or more of the outstanding voting stock of the corporation and any entity or person affiliated with or controlling or controlled by the entity or person.

### **Nasdaq Global Select Market Listing**

We have been approved, subject notice of issuance, to list our common stock on The Nasdaq Global Select Market under the trading symbol "SCPH."

### **Transfer Agent and Registrar**

The transfer agent and registrar for our common stock is Computershare Trust Company, N.A. The transfer agent and registrar's address is 250 Royal Street, Canton, Massachusetts 02021, and its telephone number is (800) 962-4284.

## SHARES ELIGIBLE FOR FUTURE SALE

Prior to this offering, there has been no public market for our shares. Future sales of our common stock in the public market, or the availability of such shares for sale in the public market, could adversely affect market prices prevailing from time to time. As described below, only a limited number of shares will be available for sale shortly after this offering due to contractual and legal restrictions on resale. Nevertheless, sales of our common stock in the public market after such restrictions lapse, or the perception that those sales may occur, could adversely affect the prevailing market price at such time and our ability to raise equity capital in the future.

Based on the number of shares outstanding as of September 30, 2017, upon the completion of this offering, 17,610,151 shares of our common stock will be outstanding, assuming no exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase additional shares and no exercise of outstanding options. Of the outstanding shares, all of the shares sold in this offering will be freely tradable, except that any shares held by our affiliates, as that term is defined in Rule 144 under the Securities Act, may only be sold in compliance with the limitations described below, and restricted shares of common stock are subject to time-based vesting terms. All remaining shares of common stock held by existing stockholders immediately prior to the completion of this offering will be "restricted securities" as such term is defined in Rule 144. These restricted securities were issued and sold by us, or will be issued and sold by us, in private transactions and are eligible for public sale only if registered under the Securities Act or if they qualify for an exemption from registration under the Securities Act, including the exemptions provided by Rule 144 or Rule 701, summarized below.

### Rule 144

In general, a person who has beneficially owned restricted stock for at least six months would be entitled to sell their securities provided that (i) such person is not deemed to have been one of our affiliates at the time of, or at any time during the 90 days preceding, a sale and (ii) we are subject to the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or the Exchange Act, periodic reporting requirements for at least 90 days before the sale. Persons who have beneficially owned restricted shares for at least six months but who are our affiliates at the time of, or any time during the 90 days preceding, a sale, would be subject to additional restrictions, by which such person would be entitled to sell within any three-month period only a number of securities that does not exceed the greater of either of the following:

- 1% of the number of shares then outstanding, which will equal approximately 176,101 shares immediately after this offering, assuming no exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase additional shares, based on the number of shares outstanding as of September 30, 2017; or
- the average weekly trading volume of our common stock on The Nasdaq Global Select Market during the four calendar weeks preceding the filing of a notice on Form 144 with respect to the sale;

provided, in each case, that we are subject to the Exchange Act periodic reporting requirements for at least 90 days before the sale. Such sales both by affiliates and by non-affiliates must also comply with the manner of sale, current public information and notice provisions of Rule 144.

### Rule 701

Rule 701 under the Securities Act, as in effect on the date of this prospectus, permits resales of shares in reliance upon Rule 144 but without compliance with certain restrictions of Rule 144, including the holding period requirement. Most of our employees, executive officers or directors who purchased shares under a written compensatory plan or contract may be entitled to rely on the resale provisions of Rule 701, but all holders of Rule 701 shares are required to wait until 90 days after the date of this prospectus before selling their shares.

However, substantially all Rule 701 shares are subject to lock-up agreements as described below and under "Underwriting" included elsewhere in this prospectus and will become eligible for sale upon the expiration of the restrictions set forth in those agreements.

### Lock-Up Agreements

All of our directors, executive officers and our stockholders have signed a lock-up agreement that prevents them from selling any of our common stock or any securities convertible into or exercisable or exchangeable for common stock

---

[Table of Contents](#)

for a period of not less than 180 days from the date of this prospectus without the prior written consent of the representatives, subject to certain exceptions. See the section entitled "Underwriting" appearing elsewhere in this prospectus for more information.

**Registration Rights**

Upon completion of this offering, certain holders of our securities will be entitled to various rights with respect to registration of their shares under the Securities Act. Registration of these shares under the Securities Act would result in these shares becoming fully tradable without restriction under the Securities Act immediately upon the effectiveness of the registration. See the section entitled "Description of Capital Stock—Registration Rights" appearing elsewhere in this prospectus for more information.

**Equity Incentive Plans**

We intend to file one or more registration statements on Form S-8 under the Securities Act to register our shares issued or reserved for issuance under our equity incentive plans. The first such registration statement is expected to be filed soon after the date of this prospectus and will automatically become effective upon filing with the SEC. Accordingly, shares registered under such registration statement will be available for sale in the open market, unless such shares are subject to vesting restrictions with us or the lock-up restrictions described above. As of the date of this prospectus, we estimate that such registration statement on Form S-8 will cover approximately 2,800,453 shares.

## MATERIAL U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSIDERATIONS FOR NON-U.S. HOLDERS OF COMMON STOCK

The following discussion is a summary of the material U.S. federal income tax considerations applicable to non-U.S. holders (as defined below) with respect to their ownership and disposition of shares of our common stock issued pursuant to this offering. For purposes of this discussion, a non-U.S. holder means a beneficial owner of our common stock that is for U.S. federal income tax purposes:

- a non-resident alien individual;
- a foreign corporation or any other foreign organization taxable as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes; or
- a foreign estate or trust, the income of which is not subject to U.S. federal income tax on a net income basis.

This discussion does not address the tax treatment of partnerships or other entities that are pass-through entities for U.S. federal income tax purposes or persons that hold their common stock through partnerships or other pass-through entities. A partner in a partnership or other pass-through entity that will hold our common stock should consult his, her or its tax advisor regarding the tax consequences of acquiring, holding and disposing of our common stock through a partnership or other pass-through entity, as applicable.

This discussion is based on current provisions of the U.S. Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, which we refer to as the Code, existing and proposed U.S. Treasury Regulations promulgated thereunder, current administrative rulings and judicial decisions, all as in effect as of the date of this prospectus and, all of which are subject to change or to differing interpretation, possibly with retroactive effect. Any such change or differing interpretation could alter the tax consequences to non-U.S. holders described in this prospectus. There can be no assurance that the Internal Revenue Service, which we refer to as the IRS, will not challenge one or more of the tax consequences described herein. We assume in this discussion that a non-U.S. holder holds shares of our common stock as a capital asset within the meaning of Section 1221 of the Code, generally property held for investment.

This discussion does not address all aspects of U.S. federal income taxation that may be relevant to a particular non-U.S. holder in light of that non-U.S. holder's individual circumstances nor does it address any aspects of any U.S. federal tax other than the income tax, U.S. state, local or non-U.S. taxes, the alternative minimum tax, or the Medicare tax on net investment income. This discussion also does not consider any specific facts or circumstances that may apply to a non-U.S. holder and does not address the special tax rules applicable to particular non-U.S. holders, such as:

- insurance companies;
- tax-exempt or governmental organizations;
- financial institutions;
- brokers or dealers in securities;
- regulated investment companies;
- pension plans;
- "controlled foreign corporations," "passive foreign investment companies," and corporations that accumulate earnings to avoid U.S. federal income tax;
- "qualified foreign pension funds," or entities wholly owned by a "qualified foreign pension fund";
- partnerships or other entities or arrangements treated as partnerships for U.S. federal income tax purposes (and partners and investors therein);
- persons that have a functional currency other than the U.S. dollar;
- persons deemed to sell our common stock under the constructive sale provisions of the Code;
- persons that hold our common stock as part of a straddle, hedge, conversion transaction, synthetic security or other integrated investment;
- persons who hold or receive our common stock pursuant to the exercise of any employee stock option or otherwise as compensation;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- persons for whom our stock constitutes “qualified small business stock” within the meaning of Section 1202 of the Code; and
- certain U.S. expatriates.

This discussion is for general information only and is not tax advice. Accordingly, all prospective non-U.S. holders of our common stock should consult their tax advisors with respect to the U.S. federal, state, local and non-U.S. tax consequences of the purchase, ownership and disposition of our common stock.

### **Distributions on Our Common Stock**

Distributions, if any, on our common stock will constitute dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes to the extent paid from our current or accumulated earnings and profits, as determined under U.S. federal income tax principles. If a distribution exceeds our current and accumulated earnings and profits, the excess will be treated as a tax-free return of the non-U.S. holder’s investment, up to such holder’s tax basis in the common stock. Any remaining excess will be treated as capital gain, subject to the tax treatment described below in “Gain on sale, exchange or other disposition of our common stock.” Any such distributions will also be subject to the discussions below under the sections titled “Backup Withholding and Information Reporting” and “Withholding and Information Reporting Requirements—FATCA.”

Subject to the discussion in the following two paragraphs in this section, dividends paid to a non-U.S. holder generally will be subject to withholding of U.S. federal income tax at a 30% rate or such lower rate as may be specified by an applicable income tax treaty between the United States and such holder’s country of residence.

Dividends that are treated as effectively connected with a trade or business conducted by a non-U.S. holder within the United States and, if an applicable income tax treaty so provides, that are attributable to a permanent establishment or a fixed base maintained by the non-U.S. holder within the United States, are generally exempt from the 30% withholding tax if the non-U.S. holder satisfies applicable certification and disclosure requirements. However, such U.S. effectively connected income, net of specified deductions and credits, is taxed at the same graduated U.S. federal income tax rates applicable to United States persons (as defined in the Code). Any U.S. effectively connected income received by a non-U.S. holder that is a corporation may also, under certain circumstances, be subject to an additional “branch profits tax” at a 30% rate or such lower rate as may be specified by an applicable income tax treaty between the United States and such holder’s country of residence.

A non-U.S. holder of our common stock who claims the benefit of an applicable income tax treaty between the United States and such holder’s country of residence generally will be required to provide a properly executed IRS Form W-8BEN or W-8BEN-E (or successor form) to the applicable withholding agent and satisfy applicable certification and other requirements. Non-U.S. holders are urged to consult their tax advisors regarding their entitlement to benefits under a relevant income tax treaty. A non-U.S. holder that is eligible for a reduced rate of U.S. withholding tax under an income tax treaty may obtain a refund or credit of any excess amounts withheld by timely filing a U.S. tax return with the IRS.

### **Gain on Sale or Other Taxable Disposition of Our Common Stock**

Subject to the discussions below under “Backup Withholding and Information Reporting” and “Withholding and Information Reporting Requirements—FATCA,” a non-U.S. holder generally will not be subject to any U.S. federal income tax on any gain realized upon such holder’s sale or other taxable disposition of shares of our common stock unless:

- the gain is effectively connected with the non-U.S. holder’s conduct of a U.S. trade or business and, if an applicable income tax treaty so provides, is attributable to a permanent establishment or a fixed-base maintained by such non-U.S. holder in the United States, in which case the non-U.S. holder generally will be taxed on a net income basis at the graduated U.S. federal income tax rates applicable to United States persons (as defined in the Code) and, if the non-U.S. holder is a foreign corporation, the branch profits tax described above in “Distributions on Our Common Stock” also may apply;
- the non-U.S. holder is a nonresident alien individual who is present in the United States for 183 days or more in the taxable year of the disposition and certain other conditions are met, in which case the non-U.S.

## [Table of Contents](#)

holder will be subject to a 30% tax (or such lower rate as may be specified by an applicable income tax treaty between the United States and such holder's country of residence) on the net gain derived from the disposition, which may be offset by certain U.S. source capital losses of the non-U.S. holder, if any (even though the individual is not considered a resident of the United States), provided that the non-U.S. holder has timely filed U.S. federal income tax returns with respect to such losses; or

- we are, or have been, at any time during the five-year period preceding such sale of other taxable disposition (or the non-U.S. holder's holding period, if shorter) a "U.S. real property holding corporation," unless our common stock is regularly traded on an established securities market and the non-U.S. holder holds no more than 5% of our outstanding common stock, directly or indirectly, actually or constructively, during the shorter of the 5-year period ending on the date of the disposition or the period that the non-U.S. holder held our common stock. Generally, a corporation is a U.S. real property holding corporation only if the fair market value of its U.S. real property interests equals or exceeds 50% of the sum of the fair market value of its worldwide real property interests plus its other assets used or held for use in a trade or business. Although there can be no assurance, we do not believe that we are, or have been, a U.S. real property holding corporation, or that we are likely to become one in the future. No assurance can be provided that our common stock will be regularly traded on an established securities market for purposes of the rules described above.

### **Backup Withholding and Information Reporting**

We must report annually to the IRS and to each non-U.S. holder the gross amount of the distributions on our common stock paid to such holder and the tax withheld, if any, with respect to such distributions. Non-U.S. holders may have to comply with specific certification procedures to establish that the holder is not a United States person (as defined in the Code) in order to avoid backup withholding at the applicable rate with respect to dividends on our common stock. Dividends paid to non-U.S. holders subject to withholding of U.S. federal income tax, as described above in "Distributions on Our Common Stock," generally will be exempt from U.S. backup withholding.

Information reporting and backup withholding will generally apply to the proceeds of a disposition of our common stock by a non-U.S. holder effected by or through the U.S. office of any broker, U.S. or foreign, unless the holder certifies its status as a non-U.S. holder and satisfies certain other requirements, or otherwise establishes an exemption. Generally, information reporting and backup withholding will not apply to a payment of disposition proceeds to a non-U.S. holder where the transaction is effected outside the United States through a non-U.S. office of a broker. However, for information reporting purposes, dispositions effected through a non-U.S. office of a broker with substantial U.S. ownership or operations generally will be treated in a manner similar to dispositions effected through a U.S. office of a broker. Non-U.S. holders should consult their tax advisors regarding the application of the information reporting and backup withholding rules to them. Copies of information returns may be made available to the tax authorities of the country in which the non-U.S. holder resides or is incorporated under the provisions of a specific treaty or agreement. Backup withholding is not an additional tax. Any amounts withheld under the backup withholding rules from a payment to a non-U.S. holder can be refunded or credited against the non-U.S. holder's U.S. federal income tax liability, if any, provided that an appropriate claim is filed with the IRS in a timely manner.

### **Withholding and Information Reporting Requirements—FATCA**

The Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act, or FATCA, generally imposes a U.S. federal withholding tax at a rate of 30% on payments of dividends on, or gross proceeds from the sale or other disposition of, our common stock paid to a foreign entity unless (i) if the foreign entity is a "foreign financial institution," such foreign entity undertakes certain due diligence, reporting, withholding, and certification obligations, (ii) if the foreign entity is not a "foreign financial institution," such foreign entity identifies certain of its U.S. investors, if any, or (iii) the foreign entity is otherwise exempt under FATCA. Under applicable U.S. Treasury regulations, withholding under FATCA currently applies to payments of dividends on our common stock, but will only apply to payments of gross proceeds from a sale or other disposition of our common stock made after December 31, 2018. Under certain circumstances, a non-U.S. holder may be eligible for refunds or credits of this withholding tax. An intergovernmental agreement between the United States and an applicable foreign country may modify the requirements described in this paragraph. Non-U.S. holders should consult their tax advisors regarding the possible implications of this legislation on their investment in our common stock and the entities through which they hold our common stock, including, without limitation, the process and deadlines for meeting the applicable requirements to prevent the imposition of the 30% withholding tax under FATCA.

## UNDERWRITING

Subject to the terms and conditions set forth in the underwriting agreement, dated November 16, 2017, among us and Jefferies LLC, Leerink Partners LLC and BMO Capital Markets Corp., as the representatives of the underwriters named below and the joint book-running managers of this offering, we have agreed to sell to the underwriters, and each of the underwriters has agreed, severally and not jointly, to purchase from us, the respective number of shares of common stock shown opposite its name below:

---

<b>UNDERWRITER</b>	<b>NUMBER OF SHARES</b>
Jefferies LLC	2,560,000
Leerink Partners LLC	2,240,000
BMO Capital Markets Corp.	1,600,000
Total	<u>6,400,000</u>

---

The underwriting agreement provides that the obligations of the several underwriters are subject to certain conditions precedent such as the receipt by the underwriters of officers' certificates and legal opinions and approval of certain legal matters by their counsel. The underwriting agreement provides that the underwriters will purchase all of the shares of common stock if any of them are purchased. If an underwriter defaults, the underwriting agreement provides that the purchase commitments of the nondefaulting underwriters may be increased or the underwriting agreement may be terminated. We have agreed to indemnify the underwriters and certain of their controlling persons against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act, and to contribute to payments that the underwriters may be required to make in respect of those liabilities.

The underwriters have advised us that, following the pricing of this offering, they currently intend to make a market in the common stock as permitted by applicable laws and regulations. However, the underwriters are not obligated to do so, and the underwriters may discontinue any market-making activities at any time without notice in their sole discretion. Accordingly, no assurance can be given as to the liquidity of the trading market for the common stock, that you will be able to sell any of the common stock held by you at a particular time or that the prices that you receive when you sell will be favorable.

The underwriters are offering the shares of common stock subject to their acceptance of the shares of common stock from us and subject to prior sale. The underwriters reserve the right to withdraw, cancel or modify offers to the public and to reject orders in whole or in part.

### Commission and Expenses

The underwriters have advised us that they propose to offer the shares of common stock to the public at the initial public offering price set forth on the cover page of this prospectus and to certain dealers, which may include the underwriters, at that price less a concession not in excess of \$0.588 per share of common stock. After the offering, the initial public offering price and concession to dealers may be reduced by the representatives. No such reduction will change the amount of proceeds to be received by us as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The following table shows the public offering price, the underwriting discounts and commissions that we are to pay the underwriters and the proceeds, before expenses, to us in connection with this offering. Such amounts are shown assuming both no exercise and full exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase additional shares.

	PER SHARE		TOTAL	
	WITHOUT OPTION TO PURCHASE ADDITIONAL SHARES	WITH OPTION TO PURCHASE ADDITIONAL SHARES	WITHOUT OPTION TO PURCHASE ADDITIONAL SHARES	WITH OPTION TO PURCHASE ADDITIONAL SHARES
Public offering price	\$ 14.00	\$ 14.00	\$89,600,000	\$103,040,000
Underwriting discounts and commissions paid by us	\$ 0.98	\$ 0.98	\$ 6,272,000	\$ 7,212,800
Proceeds to us, before expenses	\$ 13.02	\$ 13.02	\$83,328,000	\$ 95,827,200

We estimate expenses payable by us in connection with this offering, other than the underwriting discounts and commissions referred to above, will be approximately \$2.1 million. We have also agreed to reimburse the underwriters for certain expenses, including an amount not to exceed \$40,000 in connection with the clearance of this offering with the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, as set forth in the underwriting agreement.

### **Determination of Offering Price**

Prior to this offering, there has not been a public market for our common stock. Consequently, the initial public offering price for our common stock was determined by negotiations between us and the representatives. Among the factors to be considered in these negotiations were prevailing market conditions, our financial information, market valuations of other companies that we and the underwriters believe to be comparable to us, estimates of our business potential, the present state of our development and other factors deemed relevant.

We offer no assurances that the initial public offering price will correspond to the price at which the common stock will trade in the public market subsequent to the offering or that an active trading market for the common stock will develop and continue after the offering.

### **Listing**

We have been approved, subject to notice of issuance, to have our common stock listed on The Nasdaq Global Select Market under the trading symbol "SCPH".

### **Option to Purchase Additional Shares**

We have granted to the underwriters an option, exercisable for 30 days from the date of this prospectus, to purchase, from time to time, in whole or in part, up to an aggregate of 960,000 shares from us at the public offering price set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, less underwriting discounts and commissions. If the underwriters exercise this option, each underwriter will be obligated, subject to specified conditions, to purchase a number of additional shares proportionate to that underwriter's initial purchase commitment as indicated in the table above. This option may be exercised only if the underwriters sell more shares than the total number set forth on the cover page of this prospectus.

### **No Sales of Similar Securities**

We, our officers, directors and holders of all of our outstanding capital stock have agreed, subject to specified exceptions, not to directly or indirectly:

- sell, offer, contract or grant any option to sell (including any short sale), pledge, transfer, establish an open "put equivalent position" within the meaning of Rule 16a-1(h) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or
- otherwise dispose of any shares of common stock, options or warrants to acquire shares of common stock, or securities exchangeable or exercisable for or convertible into shares of common stock currently or hereafter owned either of record or beneficially, or
- publicly announce an intention to do any of the foregoing for a period of 180 days after the date of this prospectus without the prior written consent of Jefferies LLC and Leerink Partners LLC.

## [Table of Contents](#)

This restriction terminates after the close of trading of the common stock on and including the 180th day after the date of this prospectus.

Jefferies LLC and Leerink Partners LLC may, in their discretion and at any time or from time to time before the termination of the 180-day period release all or any portion of the securities subject to lock-up agreements. There are no existing agreements between the underwriters and any of our shareholders who will execute a lock-up agreement, providing consent to the sale of shares prior to the expiration of the lock-up period.

### **Stabilization**

The underwriters have advised us that they, pursuant to Regulation M under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, certain persons participating in the offering may engage in short sale transactions, stabilizing transactions, syndicate covering transactions or the imposition of penalty bids in connection with this offering. These activities may have the effect of stabilizing or maintaining the market price of the common stock at a level above that which might otherwise prevail in the open market. Establishing short sales positions may involve either “covered” short sales or “naked” short sales.

“Covered” short sales are sales made in an amount not greater than the underwriters’ option to purchase additional shares of our common stock in this offering. The underwriters may close out any covered short position by either exercising their option to purchase additional shares of our common stock or purchasing shares of our common stock in the open market. In determining the source of shares to close out the covered short position, the underwriters will consider, among other things, the price of shares available for purchase in the open market as compared to the price at which they may purchase shares through the option to purchase additional shares.

“Naked” short sales are sales in excess of the option to purchase additional shares of our common stock. The underwriters must close out any naked short position by purchasing shares in the open market. A naked short position is more likely to be created if the underwriters are concerned that there may be downward pressure on the price of the shares of our common stock in the open market after pricing that could adversely affect investors who purchase in this offering.

A stabilizing bid is a bid for the purchase of shares of common stock on behalf of the underwriters for the purpose of fixing or maintaining the price of the common stock. A syndicate covering transaction is the bid for or the purchase of shares of common stock on behalf of the underwriters to reduce a short position incurred by the underwriters in connection with the offering. Similar to other purchase transactions, the underwriter’s purchases to cover the syndicate short sales may have the effect of raising or maintaining the market price of our common stock or preventing or retarding a decline in the market price of our common stock. As a result, the price of our common stock may be higher than the price that might otherwise exist in the open market. A penalty bid is an arrangement permitting the underwriters to reclaim the selling concession otherwise accruing to a syndicate member in connection with the offering if the common stock originally sold by such syndicate member are purchased in a syndicate covering transaction and therefore have not been effectively placed by such syndicate member.

Neither we, nor any of the underwriters make any representation or prediction as to the direction or magnitude of any effect that the transactions described above may have on the price of our common stock. The underwriters are not obligated to engage in these activities and, if commenced, any of the activities may be discontinued at any time.

### **Electronic Distribution**

A prospectus in electronic format may be made available by e-mail or on the websites or through online services maintained by one or more of the underwriters or their affiliates. In those cases, prospective investors may view offering terms online and may be allowed to place orders online. The underwriters may agree with us to allocate a specific number of shares of common stock for sale to online brokerage account holders. Any such allocation for online distributions will be made by the underwriters on the same basis as other allocations. Other than the prospectus in electronic format, the information on the underwriters’ websites and any information contained in any other website maintained by any of the underwriters is not part of this prospectus, has not been approved and/or endorsed by us or the underwriters and should not be relied upon by investors.

## **Other Activities and Relationships**

The underwriter and certain of its affiliates are full service financial institutions engaged in various activities, which may include securities trading, commercial and investment banking, financial advisory, investment management, investment research, principal investment, hedging, financing and brokerage activities. The underwriter and certain of its affiliates have, from time to time, performed, and may in the future perform, various commercial and investment banking and financial advisory services for us and our affiliates, for which they received or will receive customary fees and expenses.

In the ordinary course of their various business activities, the underwriter and certain of its affiliates may make or hold a broad array of investments and actively trade debt and equity securities (or related derivative securities) and financial instruments (including bank loans) for their own account and for the accounts of their customers, and such investment and securities activities may involve securities and/or instruments issued by us and our affiliates. If the underwriters or their respective affiliates have a lending relationship with us, they routinely hedge their credit exposure to us consistent with their customary risk management policies. The underwriters and their respective affiliates may hedge such exposure by entering into transactions which consist of either the purchase of credit default swaps or the creation of short positions in our securities or the securities of our affiliates, including potentially the common stock offered hereby. Any such short positions could adversely affect future trading prices of the common stock offered hereby. The underwriters and certain of their respective affiliates may also communicate independent investment recommendations, market color or trading ideas and/or publish or express independent research views in respect of such securities or instruments and may at any time hold, or recommend to clients that they acquire, long and/or short positions in such securities and instruments.

## **Selling Restrictions**

### ***Australia***

This prospectus is not a disclosure document for the purposes of Australia's Corporations Act 2001 (Cth) of Australia, or Corporations Act, has not been lodged with the Australian Securities & Investments Commission and is only directed to the categories of exempt persons set out below. Accordingly, if you receive this prospectus in Australia:

You confirm and warrant that you are either:

- a "sophisticated investor" under section 708(8)(a) or (b) of the Corporations Act;
- a "sophisticated investor" under section 708(8)(c) or (d) of the Corporations Act and that you have provided an accountant's certificate to the Company which complies with the requirements of section 708(8)(c)(i) or (ii) of the Corporations Act and related regulations before the offer has been made;
- a person associated with the Company under Section 708(12) of the Corporations Act; or
- a "professional investor" within the meaning of section 708(11)(a) or (b) of the Corporations Act.

To the extent that you are unable to confirm or warrant that you are an exempt sophisticated investor, associated person or professional investor under the Corporations Act any offer made to you under this prospectus is void and incapable of acceptance.

You warrant and agree that you will not offer any of the securities issued to you pursuant to this prospectus for resale in Australia within 12 months of those securities being issued unless any such resale offer is exempt from the requirement to issue a disclosure document under section 708 of the Corporations Act.

### ***Canada***

#### ***Resale Restrictions***

The distribution of our common shares in Canada is being made only in the provinces of Ontario, Quebec, Alberta and British Columbia on a private placement basis exempt from the requirement that we prepare and file a prospectus with the securities regulatory authorities in each province where trades of these securities are made. Any resale of our common shares in Canada must be made under applicable securities laws which may vary depending on the relevant jurisdiction, and which may require resales to be made under available statutory exemptions or under

## [Table of Contents](#)

a discretionary exemption granted by the applicable Canadian securities regulatory authority. Purchasers are advised to seek legal advice prior to any resale of the securities.

### *Representations of Canadian Purchasers*

By purchasing our common shares in Canada and accepting delivery of a purchase confirmation, a purchaser is representing to us and the dealer from whom the purchase confirmation is received that:

- the purchaser is entitled under applicable provincial securities laws to purchase the common shares without the benefit of a prospectus qualified under those securities laws as it is an “accredited investor” as defined under National Instrument 45-106—*Prospectus Exemptions*,
- the purchaser is a “permitted client” as defined in National Instrument 31-103—*Registration Requirements, Exemptions and Ongoing Registrant Obligations*,
- where required by law, the purchaser is purchasing as principal and not as agent, and
- the purchaser has reviewed the text above under “—Resale Restrictions.”

### *Conflicts of Interest*

Canadian purchasers are hereby notified that the underwriters are relying on the exemption set out in section 3A.3 or 3A.4, if applicable, of National Instrument 33-105—*Underwriting Conflicts* from having to provide certain conflict of interest disclosure in this document.

### *Statutory Rights of Action*

Securities legislation in certain provinces or territories of Canada may provide a purchaser with remedies for rescission or damages if the prospectus (including any amendment thereto) such as this document contains a misrepresentation, provided that the remedies for rescission or damages are exercised by the purchaser within the time limit prescribed by the securities legislation of the purchaser’s province or territory. The purchaser of our common shares in Canada should refer to any applicable provisions of the securities legislation of the purchaser’s province or territory for particulars of these rights or consult with a legal advisor.

### *Enforcement of Legal Rights*

All of our directors and officers as well as the experts named herein may be located outside of Canada and, as a result, it may not be possible for Canadian purchasers to effect service of process within Canada upon us or those persons. All or a substantial portion of our assets and the assets of those persons may be located outside of Canada and, as a result, it may not be possible to satisfy a judgment against us or those persons in Canada or to enforce a judgment obtained in Canadian courts against us or those persons outside of Canada.

### *Taxation and Eligibility for Investment*

Canadian purchasers of our common shares should consult their own legal and tax advisors with respect to the tax consequences of an investment in our common shares in their particular circumstances and about the eligibility of our common shares for investment by the purchaser under relevant Canadian legislation.

Upon receipt of this document, each Canadian investor hereby confirms that it has expressly requested that all documents evidencing or relating in any way to the sale of the securities described herein (including for greater certainty any purchase confirmation or any notice) be drawn up in the English language only. *Par la réception de ce document, chaque investisseur canadien confirme par les présentes qu’il a expressément exigé que tous les documents faisant foi ou se rapportant de quelque manière que ce soit à la vente des valeurs mobilières décrites aux présentes (incluant, pour plus de certitude, toute confirmation d’achat ou tout avis) soient rédigés en anglais seulement.*

### **European Economic Area**

In relation to each member state of the European Economic Area which has implemented the Prospectus Directive (each, a “Relevant Member State”), an offer to the public of any common shares which are the subject of the offering contemplated by this prospectus may not be made in that Relevant Member State except that an offer to the

## [Table of Contents](#)

public in that Relevant Member State of any common shares may be made at any time under the following exemptions under the Prospectus Directive, if they have been implemented in that Relevant Member State:

- to any legal entity which is a “qualified investor” as defined in the Prospectus Directive;
- to fewer than 100 or, if the Relevant Member State has implemented the relevant provision of the 2010 PD Amending Directive, 150, natural or legal persons (other than qualified investors as defined in the Prospectus Directive), as permitted under the Prospectus Directive, subject to obtaining the prior consent of the underwriters or the underwriters nominated by us for any such offer; or
- in any other circumstances falling within Article 3(2) of the Prospectus Directive,

provided that no such offer of common shares shall require us or any of the underwriters to publish a prospectus pursuant to Article 3 of the Prospectus Directive or supplement a prospectus pursuant to Article 16 of the Prospectus Directive.

For the purposes of this provision, the expression an “offer common shares to the public” in relation to the common shares in any Relevant Member State means the communication in any form and by any means of sufficient information on the terms of the offer and the common shares to be offered so as to enable an investor to decide to purchase or subscribe to the common shares, as the same may be varied in that Relevant Member State by any measure implementing the Prospectus Directive in that Relevant Member State and the expression “Prospectus Directive” means Directive 2003/71/EC (and amendments thereto, including the 2010 PD Amending Directive, to the extent implemented in the Relevant Member State), and includes any relevant implementing measure in the Relevant Member State and the expression “2010 PD Amending Directive” means Directive 2010/73/EU.

### **Hong Kong**

No securities have been offered or sold, and no securities may be offered or sold, in Hong Kong, by means of any document, other than to persons whose ordinary business is to buy or sell shares or debentures, whether as principal or agent; or to “professional investors” as defined in the Securities and Futures Ordinance (Cap. 571) of Hong Kong (“SFO”) and any rules made under that Ordinance; or in other circumstances which do not result in the document being a “prospectus” as defined in the Companies Ordinance (Cap. 32) of Hong Kong (“CO”) or which do not constitute an offer or invitation to the public for the purpose of the CO or the SFO. No document, invitation or advertisement relating to the securities has been issued or may be issued or may be in the possession of any person for the purpose of issue (in each case whether in Hong Kong or elsewhere), which is directed at, or the contents of which are likely to be accessed or read by, the public of Hong Kong (except if permitted under the securities laws of Hong Kong) other than with respect to securities which are or are intended to be disposed of only to persons outside Hong Kong or only to “professional investors” as defined in the SFO and any rules made under that Ordinance.

This prospectus has not been registered with the Registrar of Companies in Hong Kong. Accordingly, this prospectus may not be issued, circulated or distributed in Hong Kong, and the securities may not be offered for subscription to members of the public in Hong Kong. Each person acquiring the securities will be required, and is deemed by the acquisition of the securities, to confirm that he is aware of the restriction on offers of the securities described in this prospectus and the relevant offering documents and that he is not acquiring, and has not been offered any securities in circumstances that contravene any such restrictions.

### **Japan**

The offering has not been and will not be registered under the Financial Instruments and Exchange Law of Japan (Law No. 25 of 1948 of Japan, as amended), or FIEL, and the Initial Purchaser will not offer or sell any securities, directly or indirectly, in Japan or to, or for the benefit of, any resident of Japan (which term as used herein means any person resident in Japan, including any corporation or other entity organized under the laws of Japan), or to others for re-offering or resale, directly or indirectly, in Japan or to, or for the benefit of, any resident of Japan, except pursuant to an exemption from the registration requirements of, and otherwise in compliance with, the FIEL and any other applicable laws, regulations and ministerial guidelines of Japan.

### **Singapore**

This prospectus has not been and will not be lodged or registered as a prospectus with the Monetary Authority of Singapore. Accordingly, this prospectus and any other document or material in connection with the offer or sale, or invitation for subscription or purchase, of the common stock may not be circulated or distributed, nor may the

## [Table of Contents](#)

common stock be offered or sold, or be made the subject of an invitation for subscription or purchase, whether directly or indirectly, to persons in Singapore other than (i) to an institutional investor under Section 274 of the Securities and Futures Act, Chapter 289 of Singapore (the "SFA"), (ii) to a relevant person pursuant to Section 275(1), or any person pursuant to Section 275(1A), and in accordance with the conditions specified in Section 275, of the SFA, or (iii) otherwise pursuant to, and in accordance with the conditions of, any other applicable provision of the SFA.

Where the common stock is subscribed or purchased under Section 275 of the SFA by a relevant person which is:

- a corporation (which is not an accredited investor (as defined in Section 4A of the SFA)) the sole business of which is to hold investments and the entire share capital of which is owned by one or more individuals, each of whom is an accredited investor; or
- a trust (where the trustee is not an accredited investor) whose sole purpose is to hold investments and each beneficiary of the trust is an individual who is an accredited investor,

securities (as defined in Section 239(1) of the SFA) of that corporation or the beneficiaries' rights and interest (howsoever described) in that trust shall not be transferred within six months after that corporation or that trust has acquired the common stock pursuant to an offer made under Section 275 of the SFA except:

- to an institutional investor or to a relevant person defined in Section 275(2) of the SFA, or to any person arising from an offer referred to in Section 275(1A) or Section 276(4)(i)(B) of the SFA;
- where no consideration is or will be given for the transfer;
- where the transfer is by operation of law;
- as specified in Section 276(7) of the SFA; or
- as specified in Regulation 32 of the Securities and Futures (Offers of Investments) (Shares and Debentures) Regulations 2005 of Singapore.

### **Switzerland**

The securities may not be publicly offered in Switzerland and will not be listed on the SIX Swiss Exchange ("SIX") or on any other stock exchange or regulated trading facility in Switzerland. This prospectus has been prepared without regard to the disclosure standards for issuance prospectuses under art. 652a or art. 1156 of the Swiss Code of Obligations or the disclosure standards for listing prospectuses under art. 27 ff. of the SIX Listing Rules or the listing rules of any other stock exchange or regulated trading facility in Switzerland. Neither this prospectus nor any other offering or marketing material relating to the securities or the offering may be publicly distributed or otherwise made publicly available in Switzerland.

Neither this prospectus nor any other offering or marketing material relating to the offering, the Company or the securities have been or will be filed with or approved by any Swiss regulatory authority. In particular, this prospectus will not be filed with, and the offer of securities will not be supervised by, the Swiss Financial Market Supervisory Authority FINMA, and the offer of securities has not been and will not be authorized under the Swiss Federal Act on Collective Investment Schemes ("CISA"). The investor protection afforded to acquirers of interests in collective investment schemes under the CISA does not extend to acquirers of securities.

### **United Kingdom**

This prospectus is only being distributed to, and is only directed at, persons in the United Kingdom that are qualified investors within the meaning of Article 2(1)(e) of the Prospectus Directive that are also (i) investment professionals falling within Article 19(5) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005, as amended (the "Order") and/or (ii) high net worth entities falling within Article 49(2)(a) to (d) of the Order and other persons to whom it may lawfully be communicated (each such person being referred to as a "relevant person").

This prospectus and its contents are confidential and should not be distributed, published or reproduced (in whole or in part) or disclosed by recipients to any other persons in the United Kingdom. Any person in the United Kingdom that is not a relevant person should not act or rely on this document or any of its contents.

## LEGAL MATTERS

The validity of the shares of common stock offered by this prospectus will be passed upon for us by Goodwin Procter LLP. Certain legal matters relating to this offering will be passed upon for the underwriters by Latham & Watkins LLP.

## EXPERTS

The financial statements of scPharmaceuticals as of December 31, 2015 and 2016 and for each of the years then ended have been audited by RSM US LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, as stated in their report thereon, and included in this Prospectus and Registration Statement in reliance upon such report and upon the authority of such firm as experts in accounting and auditing.

## WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION

We have filed with the SEC a registration statement on Form S-1 (File Number 333-221077) under the Securities Act with respect to the common stock we are offering by this prospectus. This prospectus does not contain all of the information included in the registration statement. For further information pertaining to us and our common stock, you should refer to the registration statement and to its exhibits. Whenever we make reference in this prospectus to any of our contracts, agreements or other documents, the references are not necessarily complete, and you should refer to the exhibits attached to the registration statement for copies of the actual contract, agreement or other document.

Upon the completion of the offering, we will be subject to the informational requirements of the Exchange Act and will file annual, quarterly and current reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC. You can read our SEC filings, including the registration statement, at the SEC's website at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov). You may also read and copy any document we file with the SEC at its public reference facility at 100 F Street, N.E., Room 1580, Washington, D.C. 20549. We also maintain a website at [www.scpharmaceuticals.com](http://www.scpharmaceuticals.com). Upon completion of the offering, you may access, free of charge, our annual reports on Form 10-K, quarterly reports on Form 10-Q, current reports on Form 8-K and any amendments to those reports, as soon as reasonably practicable after such material is electronically filed with, or furnished to, the SEC.

You may also obtain copies of the documents at prescribed rates by writing to the Public Reference Section of the SEC at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549. Please call the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330 for further information on the operation of the public reference facilities.

SCPHARMACEUTICALS INC.

INDEX TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Index to Financial Statements as of December 31, 2015 and 2016 and for the Years Ended December 31, 2015 and 2016

---

[Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm](#)

**PAGE**

F-2

Financial Statements:

[Balance Sheets](#)

F-3

[Statements of Operations](#)

F-4

[Statements of Convertible Preferred Stock and Stockholders' Deficit](#)

F-5

[Statements of Cash Flows](#)

F-6

[Notes to Financial Statements](#)

F-7

---

Index to Unaudited Interim Condensed Financial Statements as of December 31, 2016 and September 30, 2017 and for the Nine Month Periods Ended September 30, 2016 and 2017

---

Financial Statements:

**PAGE**

[Balance Sheets](#)

F-22

[Statements of Operations and Comprehensive Loss](#)

F-23

[Statements of Cash Flows](#)

F-24

[Notes to Financial Statements](#)

F-25

---

**REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM**

To the Board of Directors and Stockholders  
scPharmaceuticals Inc.

We have audited the accompanying balance sheets of scPharmaceuticals Inc., (the Company) as of December 31, 2015 and 2016, and the related statements of operations, convertible preferred stock and stockholders' deficit, and cash flows for the years then ended (collectively, the financial statements). These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the auditing standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) and in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. The Company is not required to have, nor were we engaged to perform, an audit of its internal control over financial reporting. Our audits included consideration of internal control over financial reporting as a basis for designing audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements, assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of scPharmaceuticals Inc., as of December 31, 2015 and 2016, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the years then ended in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

/s/ RSM US LLP

Boston, Massachusetts

April 17, 2017, except for Note 3 as to which the date is August 30, 2017, and the Stock Split paragraph of Note 2, as to which the date is November 6, 2017

## SCPHARMACEUTICALS INC.

## Balance Sheets

(in thousands, except share and per share data)

	DECEMBER 31, 2015	DECEMBER 31, 2016
<b>Assets</b>		
Current assets		
Cash	\$ 1,573	\$ 39,282
Prepaid expenses	126	101
VAT receivable	104	349
Other current assets	15	8
Total current assets	1,818	39,740
Property and equipment, net	23	26
Deposits and other assets	5	6
Total assets	<u>\$ 1,846</u>	<u>\$ 39,772</u>
<b>Liabilities, Convertible Preferred Stock, and Stockholders' Deficit</b>		
Current liabilities		
Accounts payable	\$ 684	\$ 1,546
Accrued expenses	1,293	2,178
Other current liabilities	28	12
Total current liabilities	2,005	3,736
Other liabilities	8	7
Total liabilities	<u>2,013</u>	<u>3,743</u>
Commitments and contingencies (Note 11)		
Series A convertible preferred stock; \$0.0001 par value; 25,749,471 shares authorized at December 31, 2016; 17,565,679 and 25,749,471 shares issued and outstanding at December 31, 2015 and December 31, 2016, respectively; liquidation preference of \$25,749 at December 31, 2016	18,073	26,502
Series B convertible preferred stock; \$0.0001 par value; 46,962,784 shares authorized at December 31, 2016; 0 and 46,962,784 shares issued and outstanding at December 31, 2015 and December 31, 2016, respectively; liquidation preference of \$46,963 at December 31, 2016	—	46,601
Stockholders' Deficit		
Common stock; \$0.0001 par value; 95,000,000 shares authorized at December 31, 2016; 825,577 and 1,070,087 issued and outstanding at December 31, 2015 and December 31, 2016, respectively	—	—
Additional paid-in capital	582	6,125
Accumulated deficit	(18,822)	(43,199)
Total stockholders' deficit	(18,240)	(37,074)
Total liabilities, convertible preferred stock, and stockholders' deficit	<u>\$ 1,846</u>	<u>\$ 39,772</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

**SCPHARMACEUTICALS INC.**  
**Statements of Operations**  
(in thousands, except share and per share data)

	FOR THE YEAR ENDED	
	DECEMBER 31, 2015	DECEMBER 31, 2016
Operating expenses:		
Research and development	\$ 8,267	\$ 11,856
General and administrative	2,577	6,054
Total operating expenses	<u>10,844</u>	<u>17,910</u>
Loss from operations	(10,844)	(17,910)
Fair value adjustments to Series A purchase rights	394	—
Other (expense) income	(68)	38
Interest income	—	7
Interest expense	—	(6,512)
Net loss	<u>\$ (10,518)</u>	<u>\$ (24,377)</u>
Net loss per share, basic and diluted	<u>\$ (13.78)</u>	<u>\$ (25.01)</u>
Weighted—average common shares outstanding, basic and diluted	<u>763,112</u>	<u>974,660</u>
Pro forma net loss per share, basic and diluted (unaudited)		<u>\$ (6.11)</u>
Pro forma weighted—average common shares outstanding, basic and diluted (unaudited)		<u>3,989,846</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

**SCPHARMACEUTICALS INC.**  
**Statements of Convertible Preferred Stock and Stockholders' Deficit**  
(in thousands, except share data)

	CONVERTIBLE PREFERRED STOCK				STOCKHOLDERS' DEFICIT				
	SERIES A		SERIES B		COMMON STOCK		ADDITIONAL PAID-IN CAPITAL	ACCUMULATED DEFICIT	TOTAL STOCKHOLDERS' DEFICIT
	SHARES	AMOUNT	SHARES	AMOUNT	SHARES	AMOUNT			
<b>At December 31, 2014</b>	9,565,679	\$ 8,423	—	\$ —	707,939	\$ —	\$ 190	\$ (8,304)	\$ (8,114)
Net loss	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(10,518)	(10,518)
Issuance of Series A convertible preferred stock, net of costs of \$7	8,000,000	9,650	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Issuance of common stock upon exercise of stock options	—	—	—	—	8,728	—	3	—	3
Vesting of restricted stock	—	—	—	—	108,910	—	10	—	10
Stock-based compensation	—	—	—	—	—	—	379	—	379
<b>At December 31, 2015</b>	17,565,679	18,073	—	—	825,577	—	582	(18,822)	(18,240)
Net loss	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(24,377)	(24,377)
Beneficial conversion features on convertible notes payable	—	—	—	—	—	—	4,653	—	4,653
Conversion of convertible notes payable to Series A convertible preferred stock	8,183,792	8,429	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Conversion of convertible notes payable to Series B convertible preferred stock	—	—	5,962,784	5,963	—	—	—	—	—
Issuance of Series B convertible preferred stock, net of costs of \$362	—	—	41,000,000	40,638	—	—	—	—	—
Issuance of common stock upon exercise of stock options	—	—	—	—	8,900	—	1	—	1
Vesting of restricted stock	—	—	—	—	235,610	—	13	—	13
Stock-based compensation	—	—	—	—	—	—	876	—	876
<b>At December 31, 2016</b>	<u>25,749,471</u>	<u>\$26,502</u>	<u>46,962,784</u>	<u>\$46,601</u>	<u>1,070,087</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ 6,125</u>	<u>\$ (43,199)</u>	<u>\$ (37,074)</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

## SCPHARMACEUTICALS INC.

## Statements of Cash Flows

(in thousands)

	FOR THE YEAR ENDED	
	DECEMBER 31, 2015	DECEMBER 31, 2016
<b>Cash flows from operating activities</b>		
Net loss	\$ (10,518)	\$ (24,377)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash used in operating activities		
Depreciation expense	4	5
Stock-based compensation	379	876
Non-cash interest expense	—	6,512
Fair value adjustments to Series A purchase rights	(394)	—
Changes in operating assets and liabilities		
Prepaid expenses and other assets	(85)	(214)
Accounts payable, accrued expenses and other liabilities	974	1,743
Net cash flows used in operating activities	(9,640)	(15,455)
<b>Cash flows from investing activities</b>		
Purchases of property and equipment	(17)	(9)
Net cash flows used in investing activities	(17)	(9)
<b>Cash flows from financing activities</b>		
Proceeds from issuance of Series B convertible preferred stock	—	41,000
Costs related to issuance of Series B convertible preferred stock	—	(362)
Proceeds from issuance of Series A convertible preferred stock and purchase rights	8,000	—
Costs related to issuance of Series A convertible preferred stock and purchase rights	(7)	—
Proceeds from issuance of convertible notes	—	12,600
Costs related to issuance of convertible notes	—	(66)
Proceeds from the early exercise of stock options	30	—
Proceeds from the exercise of vested stock options	3	1
Purchase of restricted stock	(9)	—
Net cash flows provided by financing activities	8,017	53,173
Net (decrease) increase in cash	(1,640)	37,709
Cash, beginning of year	3,213	1,573
Cash, end of year	\$ 1,573	\$ 39,282
<b>Supplemental disclosure of non-cash activities</b>		
Conversion of convertible notes into Series A convertible preferred stock, including accrued interest	\$ —	\$ 8,429
Conversion of convertible notes into Series B convertible preferred stock, including accrued interest	—	5,963
Beneficial conversion feature of convertible notes	—	4,653
Vesting of restricted stock	(10)	(13)
Reclassification of Series A purchase rights to Series A convertible preferred stock	1,657	—

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

**SCPHARMACEUTICALS INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

For the Years Ended December 31, 2015 and 2016

**1. Description of Business and Basis of Presentation**

**Description of Business**

scPharmaceuticals LLC was formed as a Limited Liability Company under the laws of the State of Delaware on February 19, 2013. On March 24, 2014, scPharmaceuticals LLC was converted to a Delaware Corporation and changed its name to scPharmaceuticals Inc. ("the Company"). The Company is a biopharmaceutical company developing a portfolio of transformative pharmaceutical products. The Company is currently developing two products using its sc2Wear Infusor, subcutaneous furosemide and a cephalosporin antibiotic for subcutaneous administration. The Company's headquarters and primary place of business is Lexington, Massachusetts.

**Basis of Presentation**

The accompanying financial statements have been prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States ("U.S. GAAP") and have been prepared on a basis which assumes that the Company will continue as a going concern, which contemplates the realization of assets and the satisfaction of liabilities and commitments in the normal course of business.

At December 31, 2016, the Company had cash of \$39.3 million, and working capital of \$36.0 million. During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company incurred a net loss totaling \$24.4 million and used cash in operating activities totaling \$15.5 million. The Company expects to continue to incur losses and use cash in operating activities in 2017.

The Company has incurred significant losses since its inception and has financed its operations primarily through convertible notes and the sale of equity. The Company believes that, based on its current development plans and activities, its cash balance of \$39.3 million as of December 31, 2016 will be sufficient to satisfy its liquidity requirements for more than one year from the issuance date of these financial statements. The Company continues to monitor the development and regulatory path of its product portfolio and is prepared to discontinue conducting and funding any activities not required to ensure the successful filing and approval of its first product candidate, subcutaneous furosemide. Costs associated with the Company's research and development program include contract services, consulting, salaries, materials and supplies and overhead. Pre-commercial activities are discretionary, and as such, the Company will continue to adjust its spending as needed to preserve capital.

**2. Significant Accounting Policies**

**Stock Split**

On November 6, 2017, the Company effectuated a 1-for-7.180193 reverse stock split of its outstanding common stock, which was approved by the Company's board of directors on October 27, 2017 and by the Company's stockholders on November 6, 2017. The reverse stock split resulted in an adjustment to the preferred stock conversion prices to reflect a proportional decrease in the number of shares of common stock to be issued upon conversion. The accompanying financial statements and notes to the financial statements give retroactive effect to the reverse stock split for all periods presented. The shares of common stock retained a par value of \$0.0001 per share. Accordingly, the stockholders' deficit reflects the reverse stock split by reclassifying from common stock to additional paid-in capital in an amount equal to the par value of the decreased shares resulting from the reverse stock split.

**Use of Estimates**

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with U.S. GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and the disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of expenses during the reported periods. Significant items subject to such estimates and assumptions include accruals related to development costs and clinical activities, valuation of stock options used for the calculation of stock-based compensation, assumptions used in the determination of the fair value of the Series A purchase rights liability, valuation of common and preferred stock used in the determination of the beneficial conversion feature of convertible notes and preferred stock, and the establishment of the tax valuation allowance. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

## [Table of Contents](#)

### **Foreign Currency Transactions**

The functional currency of the Company is the U.S. dollar. Accordingly, gains and losses resulting from translating transactions denominated in currencies and balances of assets and liabilities outstanding at the balance sheet date, other than U.S. dollars, are included in net loss in the Statements of Operations.

### **Cash**

The Company places its cash with institutions with high credit quality. However, at certain times such cash may be in excess of Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation and Securities Investor Protection Corporation insurance limits. The Company has not experienced any losses with respect to these accounts.

### **Research and Development Costs**

Research and development costs are expensed as incurred. Nonrefundable advance payments, if any, for goods or services used in research and development are initially recorded as an asset and then recognized as an expense as the related goods are delivered or services are performed. Research and development expenses include contract services, consulting, salaries, materials and supplies and overhead.

### **Fair Value Measurements**

The Financial Accounting Standards Board ("FASB") Accounting Standard Codification ("ASC") Topic, *Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures* ("ASC 820"), provides a fair value hierarchy, which classifies fair value measurements based on the inputs used in measuring fair value. Observable inputs are inputs that market participants would use in pricing the asset or liability based on market data obtained from sources independent of the Company. Unobservable inputs are inputs that reflect the Company's assumptions about the inputs that market participants would use in pricing the asset or liability, and are developed based on the best information available in the circumstances. The fair value hierarchy applies only to the valuation inputs used in determining the reported fair value of the investments and is not a measure of the investment credit quality. The three levels of the fair value hierarchy are described below:

Level 1—Valuations based on unadjusted quoted prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities that the Company has the ability to access at the measurement date.

Level 2—Valuations based on quoted prices for similar assets or liabilities in markets that are not active or for which all significant inputs are observable, either directly or indirectly.

Level 3—Valuations that require inputs that reflect the Company's own assumptions that are both significant to the fair value measurement and observable.

To the extent that valuation is based on models or inputs that are less observable or unobservable in the market, the determination of fair value requires more judgment. Accordingly, the degree of judgment exercised by the Company in determining fair value is greatest for instruments categorized in Level 3. A financial instrument's level within the fair value hierarchy is based on the lowest level of any input that is significant to the fair value measurement.

Items measured at fair value on a recurring basis include Series A purchase rights (Note 8). The carrying values of the Company's cash, prepaid expenses, VAT receivable and deposits approximate their fair values due to their short term nature.

### **Income Taxes**

Prior to March 24, 2014, the Company was a limited liability company and was treated as a partnership for income tax purposes; as such, the Company was only subject to certain minimal taxes and fees, however, income taxes on taxable income or losses realized by the Company was the obligation of its members. Since incorporation, in 2014, the Company accounts for income taxes in accordance with the ASC 740, *Income Taxes*. Deferred tax assets and liabilities are recorded to reflect the impact of temporary differences between amounts of assets and liabilities for financial reporting purposes and such amounts as measured under enacted tax laws. A valuation allowance is required to offset any net deferred tax assets if, based upon the available evidence, it is more likely than not that some or all of the deferred tax asset will not be realized.

The Company provides reserves for potential payments of tax to various tax authorities related to uncertain tax positions. The tax benefits recorded are based on a determination of whether and how much of a tax benefit taken by

## [Table of Contents](#)

the Company in its tax filings or positions is “more likely than not” to be realized following resolution of any uncertainty related to the tax benefit, assuming that the matter in question will be raised by the tax authorities. Potential interest and penalties associated with such uncertain tax positions are recorded as a component of income tax expense. At December 31, 2016, the Company had not identified any significant uncertain tax positions.

### **Stock-Based Compensation**

Stock-based compensation expense is recognized based on the grant-date fair value using the Black-Scholes valuation model. The Company recognizes compensation expense only for those stock-based awards expected to vest after considering expected forfeitures. Cumulative compensation expense is at least equal to the compensation expense for vested awards. Stock-based compensation is recognized on a straight-line basis over the service period of each award. Stock compensation costs have not been capitalized by the Company.

The Company accounts for stock-based awards issued to non-employees by recognizing compensation expense based on the fair value of such awards when the services are completed over the vesting period of the award.

### **Segments**

Operating segments are identified as components of an enterprise about which separate discrete financial information is available for evaluation by the chief operating decision-maker (“CODM”) in making decisions regarding resource allocation and assessing performance. The Company’s chief executive officer is the CODM, and he uses consolidated financial information in determining how to allocate resources and assess performance. The Company has determined that it operates in one segment. All of the Company’s assets are located in the United States.

### **Recently Issued Accounting Standards**

In August 2014, the FASB issued Accounting Standards Update (“ASU”) No. 2014-15, Presentation of Financial Statements—Going Concern (Subtopic 205-40) (“ASU 2014-15”). ASU 2014-15 provides guidance on determining when and how to disclose going concern uncertainties in the financial statements. The new standard requires management to perform interim and annual assessments of an entity’s ability to continue as a going concern within one year of the date the financial statements are issued. An entity must provide certain disclosures if conditions or events raise substantial doubt about the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern. This accounting update is effective for annual and interim periods ending after December 15, 2016, with early adoption permitted. The Company adopted this standard as of January 1, 2016 and there was no impact to the financial statement presentation.

In April 2015, the FASB issued ASU No. 2015-03, Interest—Imputation of Interest (Subtopic 835-30): Simplifying the Presentation of Debt Issuance Costs (“ASU 2015-03”). This update requires that debt issuance costs related to a recognized debt liability be presented in the balance sheet as a direct deduction from the carrying amount of that debt liability, consistent with debt discounts. ASU 2015-03 is effective for financial statements issued for annual and interim periods beginning after December 15, 2015 for public business entities. For all other entities, it is effective for annual periods beginning after December 15, 2015 and interim periods within fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2016. The Company adopted this standard as of January 1, 2016 and there was no impact to the financial statement presentation.

In November 2015, the FASB issued ASU No. 2015-17, Income Taxes (Topic 740): Balance Sheet Classification of Deferred Taxes (“ASU 2015-17”), which simplifies the presentation of deferred income taxes. The amendments in this update require that deferred tax liabilities and assets be classified as noncurrent in a classified statement of financial position. This accounting update is effective for financial statements issued for annual periods beginning after December 15, 2016, and interim periods within those annual periods for public business entities. For all other entities, it is effective for annual periods beginning after December 15, 2017, and interim periods within annual periods beginning after December 15, 2018. Earlier application is permitted for any interim and annual financial statements that have not yet been issued. The Company has early adopted ASU 2015-17 effective December 31, 2016 on a prospective basis. Adoption of ASU 2015-17 had no impact to the Company’s balance sheet as of December 31, 2016. Reclassification was not required given that the Company had a full valuation allowance. No prior periods were retrospectively adjusted.

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-02, Leases (Topic 842) (“ASU 2016-02”). ASU 2016-02 is intended to improve financial reporting of leasing transactions by requiring organizations that lease assets to

## [Table of Contents](#)

recognize assets and liabilities for the rights and obligations created by leases that extend more than twelve months on the balance sheet. This accounting update also requires additional disclosures surrounding the amount, timing, and uncertainty of cash flows arising from leases. ASU 2016-02 is effective for financial statements issued for annual and interim periods beginning after December 15, 2018 for public business entities. For all other entities, it is effective for annual periods beginning after December 15, 2019 and interim periods within fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2020. Early adoption is permitted. The Company is still evaluating whether the adoption of this pronouncement will have a material impact on its financial statements.

In March 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-06, Derivatives and Hedging (Topic 815): Contingent Put and Call Options in Debt Instruments (“ASU 2016-06”). This new standard simplifies the embedded derivative analysis for debt instruments containing contingent call or put options by removing the requirement to assess whether a contingent event is related to interest rates or credit risks. ASU 2016-06 is effective for financial statements issued for annual and interim periods beginning after December 15, 2016 for public business entities. For all other entities, it is effective for annual periods beginning after December 15, 2017 and interim periods within fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2018. Early adoption is permitted. The Company is still evaluating whether the adoption of this pronouncement will have a material impact on its financial statements.

In March 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-09, Compensation—Stock Compensation (Topic 718): Improvements to Employee Share-Based Payment Accounting (“ASU 2016-09”). This new standard requires recognition of the income tax effects of vested or settled awards in the income statement and involves several other aspects of the accounting for share-based payment transactions, including the income tax consequences, classification of awards as either equity or liabilities and classification on the statement of cash flows. ASU 2016-09 is effective for financial statements issued for annual and interim periods beginning after December 15, 2016 for public business entities. For all other entities, it is effective for annual periods beginning after December 15, 2017 and interim periods within fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2018. Early adoption is permitted. The Company is still evaluating whether the adoption of this pronouncement will have a material impact on its financial statements.

### **3. Net Loss per Share and (Unaudited) Pro Forma Net Loss per Share**

#### ***Net Loss per Share***

Basic net loss per share is calculated by dividing the net loss by the weighted-average number of shares of common stock outstanding during the period without consideration of dilutive common stock equivalents. Diluted net loss per share is the same as basic net loss per common share, since the effects of potentially dilutive securities are anti-dilutive.

Dilutive common stock equivalents are comprised of convertible preferred stock, unexercised stock options outstanding under the Company’s equity plan and unvested restricted stock.

The following table sets forth the computation of basic and diluted net loss per share of common stock (in thousands, except shares and per share data):

	FOR THE YEAR ENDED	
	DECEMBER 31, 2015	DECEMBER 31, 2016
Net loss	\$ (10,518)	\$ (24,377)
Weighted—average common shares outstanding, basic and diluted	763,112	974,660
Net loss per share, basic and diluted	\$ (13.78)	\$ (25.01)

## [Table of Contents](#)

The following table sets forth the outstanding potentially dilutive securities that have been excluded in the calculation of diluted net loss per share because their inclusion would be anti-dilutive (in common stock equivalent shares):

	FOR THE YEAR ENDED	
	DECEMBER 31, 2015	DECEMBER 31, 2016
Convertible preferred stock, on an as-converted basis	2,446,403	10,126,771
Stock options to purchase common stock	200,536	444,410
Unvested restricted stock	240,663	5,053
	<u>2,887,602</u>	<u>10,576,234</u>

### **Unaudited Pro Forma Information**

The unaudited pro forma basic and diluted net loss per share attributable to common stockholders for the year ended December 31, 2016 has been prepared to give effect, upon the closing of a qualified firm commitment underwritten public offering in which the Company sells shares of its common stock at a price to the public of at least \$17.96 per share, and resulting in at least \$50.0 million of gross proceeds to the Company, or upon the consent of the holders of at least 60% of the Company's outstanding preferred stock, to the conversion of all outstanding shares of convertible preferred stock into shares of common stock as if the proposed initial public offering had occurred on the later of January 1, 2016 or the issuance date of the convertible preferred stock.

The following table summarizes our pro forma net loss per share (in thousands, except share and per share data):

	FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016 (unaudited)
<b>Numerator:</b>	
Net loss and pro forma net loss	\$ (24,377)
<b>Denominator:</b>	
Weighted—average common shares outstanding, basic and diluted	974,660
Pro forma adjustments to reflect assumed conversion of convertible preferred stock	3,015,186
Pro forma weighted—average common shares outstanding, basic and diluted	<u>3,989,846</u>
Pro forma net loss per share, basic and diluted	<u>\$ (6.11)</u>

### **4. Property and Equipment**

Property and equipment consist of the following as of December 31, (dollars in thousands):

	ESTIMATED USEFUL LIFE	2015	2016
Office equipment	5 years	\$ 10	\$ 10
Computer equipment	3 years	—	8
Leasehold improvements	Life of lease	17	17
		27	35
Less: Accumulated depreciation		(4)	(9)
Property and equipment, net		<u>\$ 23</u>	<u>\$ 26</u>

Depreciation expense for the periods ended December 31, 2015 and 2016 was \$4,000 and \$5,000, respectively.

[Table of Contents](#)

## 5. Accrued Expenses

Accrued expenses at December 31 consist of (in thousands):

	2015	2016
Contract research and development	\$ 730	\$1,567
Financing related costs	—	303
Consulting and professional service fees	247	170
Employee compensation and related costs	307	85
Other	9	53
Total accrued expenses	<u>\$1,293</u>	<u>\$2,178</u>

## 6. Income Taxes

As discussed in Note 1, prior to March 24, 2014, the Company was a Delaware limited liability company which was treated as a partnership for income tax purposes and was subject to certain minimal taxes and fees; however, income taxes on taxable income or losses realized by the Company were the obligation of the members.

The Company accounts for income taxes in accordance with ASC 740, *Income Taxes* ("ASC 740"), which requires an asset and liability approach for measuring deferred taxes based on temporary differences between the financial statements and tax bases of assets and liabilities existing at each balance sheet date using enacted tax rates for the years in which taxes are expected to be paid or recovered. The tax benefit arising from the Company's net loss has been offset by an increase in the valuation allowance.

Accordingly, the Company had no net income tax provision or benefit during the periods ended December 31, 2015 and 2016. Components of the net deferred tax asset at December 31, 2015 and 2016 are as follows (in thousands):

	2015	2016
Federal net operating loss carryforwards	\$ 1,164	\$ 3,014
State net operating loss carryforwards	182	436
Research and development tax credits	378	663
Accrued liabilities	112	32
Depreciation and amortization	19	18
Capitalized research and development costs	5,109	9,670
Other	66	103
	<u>7,030</u>	<u>13,936</u>
Valuation allowance	<u>(7,030)</u>	<u>(13,936)</u>
Net deferred tax asset	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>

At December 31, 2016, the Company had available federal net operating loss carryforwards of \$9.1 million that expire at various dates through 2036. The federal net operating loss includes excess benefits related to the exercise of stock options of \$0.2 million that when utilized will be recorded through retained earnings. In assessing the realizability of net deferred tax assets, management considers whether it is more likely than not that the net deferred tax assets will be realized. The ultimate realization of net deferred tax assets is dependent upon the generation of future taxable income during the periods in which temporary differences representing future deductible amounts become deductible. Management has established a full valuation allowance against the net deferred tax assets at December 31, 2015 and 2016 since it is more likely than not that these future tax benefits will not be realized. During 2016, the valuation allowance increased by \$6.9 million.

At December 31, 2016, the Company had federal and state research and development credit carryforwards of \$0.6 million and \$0.2 million, respectively. The net credit carryforwards may be used to offset future income taxes and expire at various dates through 2036. Changes in the Company's ownership, as defined in the U.S. Internal Revenue Code, may limit the Company's ability to utilize the tax credit and net operating loss carryforwards.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The Company files tax returns in the United States, Massachusetts and other states. The tax years 2014 through 2016 remain open to examination by major taxing jurisdictions to which the Company is subject, which are primarily the United States federal and Massachusetts, as carryforward attributes generated in years past may still be adjusted upon examination by the Internal Revenue Service or state tax authorities if they have or will be used in a future period. The Company is currently not under examination by the Internal Revenue Service or any other jurisdictions for any tax years. The Company recognizes both accrued interest and penalties related to unrecognized benefits in income tax expense. The Company has not recorded any interest or penalties on any unrecognized tax benefits since its inception. The Company does not believe material uncertain tax positions have arisen to date, and as a result, no material reserves for these matters have been recorded.

A reconciliation of income tax (expense) benefit at the statutory federal income tax rate and income taxes as reflected in the financial statements at December 31, 2015 and 2016 are as follows:

	<u>2015</u>	<u>2016</u>
Federal income tax at statutory rate	34.00%	34.00%
State income tax, net of federal benefit	5.28%	3.46%
Research and development credits	3.14%	1.46%
Book compensation related to stock options	(0.87)%	(0.93)%
Change in income tax rate	(0.03)%	(0.18)%
Fair value adjustments to Series A purchase rights	1.27%	—
Non-cash interest	—	(9.08)%
Other	(1.51)%	(0.40)%
Increase in valuation allowance	(41.28)%	(28.33)%
Effective tax rate	<u>—%</u>	<u>—%</u>

## 7. Stock-Based Compensation

### *Stock Options*

The Company's 2014 Stock Incentive Plan (the "2014 Stock Plan") became effective in March 2014 and will expire in March 2024. Under the 2014 Stock Plan, the Company may grant incentive stock options, non-statutory stock options, restricted stock awards and other stock-based awards. The Company's 2013 LLC Unit Option Plan (the "2013 Stock Plan") was terminated in March 2014 effective upon the conversion of scPharmaceuticals LLC to scPharmaceuticals Inc. and all unit options were converted to options under the 2014 Stock Plan. No further unit options will be granted under the 2013 Stock Plan.

As of December 31, 2016, there were 1,263,203 shares of the Company's common stock authorized for issuance under the 2014 Stock Plan.

At December 31, 2016, there were 770,522 options available for issuance and 444,410 options outstanding under the 2014 Stock Plan. Options granted under the 2014 Plan have a term of ten years. Vesting of options under the 2014 Stock Plan is determined by the board of directors, but is generally a four-year term.

The fair value of options at date of grant was estimated using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model with the following assumptions:

	<u>2015</u>	<u>2016</u>
Risk-free interest rate	1.66%—1.85%	1.08%—1.58%
Expected dividend yield	0%	0%
Expected life	6.00—6.1 years	6.0—6.4 years
Expected volatility	73%—80%	86%—93%
Weighted-average grant date fair value	\$6.32	\$6.51

## [Table of Contents](#)

The Company does not have a history of market prices of its common stock as it is not a public company and, as such, volatility was estimated using historical volatilities of similar companies. The expected life of the awards is estimated based on the simplified method, which calculates the expected life based upon the midpoint of the term of the award and the vesting period. The Company uses the simplified method because it does not have sufficient option exercise data to provide a reasonable basis upon which to estimate the expected term. The Company has no history of paying dividends nor does management expect to pay dividends over the contractual terms of these options. The risk-free interest rates are based on the United States Treasury yield curve in effect at the time of grant, with maturities approximating the expected life of the stock options.

The following table summarizes information about stock option activity during 2015 and 2016 (in thousands, except share and per share data):

	NUMBER OF SHARES	WEIGHTED- AVERAGE EXERCISE PRICE	WEIGHTED- AVERAGE REMAINING CONTRACTUAL TERM	AGGREGATE INTRINSIC VALUE
Outstanding, December 31, 2014	131,533	\$ 1.02		
Granted	128,063	8.55		
Exercised	(22,850)	1.42		
Forfeited	(36,210)	8.12		
Outstanding, December 31, 2015	200,536	\$ 4.52		
Granted	254,863	8.73		
Exercised	(8,900)	0.08		
Forfeited	(2,089)	8.84		
Outstanding, December 31, 2016	444,410	\$ 6.99	8.66	\$ 435
Vested and exercisable, December 31, 2016	101,427	\$ 3.56	7.56	\$ 296
Vested and expected to vest, December 31, 2016	392,116	\$ 6.68	8.56	\$ 450

During 2015 and 2016, the Company received \$33,000 and \$1,000, respectively, upon exercise of stock options. The intrinsic value of the options exercised in 2015 and 2016 was \$177,000 and \$64,000, respectively. Among those options exercised, 14,120 were exercised prior to vesting in 2015. These shares are held under restricted stock agreements and will vest according to the provisions under the original stock option agreements. The cash received upon early exercise of options, \$30,000 in 2015, was recorded as a deposit liability on the Company's balance sheet and will be relieved and recorded as common stock and additional paid in capital as the shares vest. The Company repurchased 5,222 unvested restricted stock shares in 2015 for \$9,000. The deposit liability as of December 31, 2016 was \$8,000.

Unrecognized compensation expense related to unvested awards as of December 31, 2016 was \$1.5 million and will be recognized over the remaining vesting periods of the underlying awards. The weighted-average period over which such compensation is expected to be recognized is 3.18 years.

### **Restricted Stock**

At the time of the Company's conversion from a Limited Liability Company to a Delaware Corporation in 2014, the Company imposed restrictions on 821,512 shares of common stock owned by a founder ("2014 Restricted Stock Awards"). The terms of the restrictions allowed for 50% of the shares to vest immediately, with the remainder of the shares vesting over 3 years. The initial vesting of the shares was deemed to be non-substantive for accounting purposes, as there was no service required for the lapse of the restrictions. The fair value of the common stock at the time of the restrictions was \$1.66.

In May 2016, the Company terminated its right to repurchase the remaining unvested shares of the 2014 Restricted Stock Awards, thereby causing all unvested shares to become vested and any unrecognized compensation to be accelerated. During the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2016, \$0.2 million and \$0.4 million respectively, was recognized as compensation expense for the vesting of the 2014 Restricted Stock Awards.

## [Table of Contents](#)

A summary of the status of unvested 2014 Restricted Stock Awards as of December 31, 2015 and 2016 and changes during the periods then ended, is presented below:

	UNVESTED SHARES	WEIGHTED- AVERAGE GRANT-DATE FAIR VALUE PER SHARE
Unvested at December 31, 2014	333,714	\$ 1.66
Vested	(102,721)	1.66
Unvested at December 31, 2015	230,993	1.66
Vested	(230,993)	1.66
Unvested at December 31, 2016	—	—

## 8. Fair Value of Financial Instruments

The following fair value hierarchy table presents information about each major category of our financial liabilities measured at fair value on a recurring basis (in thousands):

	TOTAL	QUOTED PRICES IN ACTIVE MARKETS (LEVEL 1)	SIGNIFICANT OTHER OBSERVABLE INPUTS (LEVEL 2)	SIGNIFICANT UNOBSERVABLE INPUTS (LEVEL 3)
Liabilities:				
December 31, 2014				
Series A purchase rights	\$2,051	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 2,051
Total	<u>\$2,051</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ 2,051</u>

In March 2014, the Company entered into a Series A Preferred Stock Purchase Agreement (“Series A Preferred SPA”), which authorized the sale of up to 16,000,000 shares of convertible preferred stock in two equal and separate tranches, the Initial Closing and the Milestone Closing. The Initial Closing occurred immediately and the Company issued 8,000,000 shares of Series A convertible preferred stock (Note 10). Provided that the Company achieved the milestones required to execute the Milestone Closing, the Company would issue an additional 8,000,000 shares of Series A convertible preferred stock. On April 8, 2015, the Company closed the second tranche related to the Milestone Closing, issuing the additional 8,000,000 shares of Series A convertible preferred stock.

The purchase rights were legally separable and exercisable apart from the Series A convertible preferred stock issued in the Initial Closing and, because representatives of the Series A holders hold a majority of the seats on the board of directors, the decision to complete the Milestone Closing was deemed to be outside the control of the Company. Accordingly, the Company concluded that the purchase rights represent a separate financial instrument that pursuant to ASC 480, *Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity*, must be separately accounted for at fair value. The Company therefore recorded, at the time of entry into the Series A Preferred SPA, a Series A purchase right liability of \$1.0 million for the fair value of the Company’s obligation to sell the Series A convertible preferred stock in the Milestone Closing. The Series A purchase right liability was valued using the Black-Scholes option-pricing method to assign a value to the purchase right given the probability of milestone completion as of the valuation date. The value allocated to the Series A purchase rights reduced the amount allocated to the carrying value of the Series A convertible preferred stock on the Company’s balance sheet.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The significant assumptions used as inputs in the Black-Scholes valuation for the year ended December 31, 2014 were as follows:

	DATE OF ISSUANCE	DECEMBER 31, 2014
Stock price	\$0.88	\$1.16
Years to maturity	0.52	0.25
Risk-free interest rate	0.14%	0.04%
Volatility	66%	76%

The most significant and judgmental inputs driving the Company's Series A purchase rights are the assumptions regarding the fair value of the underlying preferred shares, the volatility factor and the probability of achieving the milestones required to execute the Milestone Closing. With all other inputs constant, an increase or decrease in the assumed fair value of the preferred shares would result in a higher or lower estimate of the fair value of the Series A purchase rights, respectively, although there would not be a direct correlation. Similarly, an increase or decrease in the assumed volatility factor would result in a higher or lower estimate of the fair value of the Series A purchase rights, respectively. Finally, an increase or decrease in the probability of achieving the milestones results in a higher or lower estimate of the fair value of the Series A purchase rights, respectively. The increase or decrease is more significant the further away from the maturity date of the Milestone Closing.

Immediately prior to the Milestone Closing, on April 7, 2015, the Company calculated the fair value of the Series A purchase rights to be \$1.7 million using the Black-Scholes option-pricing method. The significant assumptions used as inputs in the Black-Scholes valuation on April 7, 2015 were as follows:

Stock price	\$1.21
Years to maturity	0
Risk-free interest rate	0.02%
Volatility	42%

The fair value of the Series A purchase rights exercised was reclassified to Series A convertible preferred stock on the Company's balance sheet.

The Company reports the change in fair value during each period as a non-operating gain or loss recorded as a component of other (expense) income in the statement of operations. The table presented below is a summary of changes in the fair value of the Company's Level 3 valuation for the Series A purchase rights for the year ended December 31, 2015 (in thousands):

Beginning balance as of December 31, 2014	\$ 2,051
Change in fair value during period	(394)
Fair value of Series A purchase rights exercised	(1,657)
Ending balance as of December 31, 2015	\$ —

## 9. Convertible Notes

On January 21, 2016, the Company executed a Convertible Note Purchase Agreement ("the January 2016 Convertible Note Purchase Agreement") under which the Company was authorized to issue \$7.5 million in convertible promissory notes in an initial closing, subsequent closing and a second closing tied to the achievement of development milestones. The initial closing occurred on January 21, 2016 whereby the Company issued \$3.0 million of convertible notes pursuant to the January 2016 Convertible Note Purchase Agreement.

In January and February 2016, the Company issued \$0.7 million of additional convertible notes as part of the subsequent closing to the January 2016 Convertible Note Purchase Agreement.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The Company achieved the development milestones in May 2016 and, as such, was able to draw on the second closing of the January 2016 Convertible Note Purchase Agreement.

In May and June 2016, the Company issued \$3.7 million of additional convertible notes as part of the second closing to the January 2016 Convertible Note Purchase Agreement.

On July 1, 2016, the Company executed the First Amendment to Note Purchase Agreement which replaced the principal amount of notes to which Company could issue with \$8.2 million. On July 7, 2016, the Company issued \$0.6 million of additional convertible notes under the First Amendment to Note Purchase Agreement.

Principal and interest on all note issuances under the January 2016 Convertible Note Purchase Agreement, which accrued at a rate of 8% per annum, was due and payable upon the earlier of written demand by holders of the requisite noteholders any time on or after January 21, 2017, unless earlier converted upon automatic conversion at (i) a "Qualified Equity Financing" where such transaction results in the Company having raised gross proceeds of at least \$15.0 million or (ii) a "Qualified IPO" where the Company sells shares of common stock to investors at a price per share equal to at least \$21.55 and gross proceeds to the Company of at least \$35.0 million, or upon optional conversion at (i) a "Non-Qualified Equity Financing" or (ii) a "Non-Qualified IPO" or upon the sale of the Company.

Certain of the conversion features of the notes under the January 2016 Convertible Note Purchase Agreement allowed holders to convert principal and interest on each issuance into shares of the Company at a discount. The conversion price was equal to eighty percent (80%) of the per share price at which shares of equity financing securities or common stock are to be sold.

Based on the terms of the notes under the January 2016 Convertible Note Purchase Agreement and the Company's assessment that conversion of the notes prior to maturity in a "Qualified Equity Financing" was the predominant feature, the Company determined that the notes were share-settled debt, and as such accreted the notes over their term, to the value of the preferred stock into which the notes would be converted, \$9.9 million, recognizing accretion to the redemption value through the date the convertible notes were converted as interest expense.

Upon maturity, the noteholders have the option to convert any outstanding principal and accrued but unpaid interest into shares of Series A convertible preferred stock at a purchase price equal to \$1.00. This embedded conversion feature meets the definition of a beneficial conversion feature and was recognized by allocating a portion of the proceeds equal to the intrinsic value of the beneficial conversion feature measured at the commitment date, or \$4.7 million, to additional paid in capital. The accretion of the beneficial conversion feature was recognized through the date the convertible notes were converted as interest expense.

The Company allocated \$38,000 in transaction costs as a discount to the notes.

On August 22, 2016, the Company executed the Second Amendment to Note Purchase Agreement and Election to Convert. This amendment added a conversion option to convert the outstanding principal and accrued but unpaid interest into Series A convertible preferred stock at a purchase price equal to \$1.00. At that time, the convertible notes, plus accrued interest, converted into 8,183,792 shares of Series A convertible preferred stock pursuant to the new redemption feature (Note 10).

The amendment was treated as an extinguishment of debt which required the carrying value of the debt to be derecognized and the fair value of the debt to be recognized as new debt. At the amendment date, the carrying value of the debt included principal of \$8.0 million, and accrued interest, accretion to the redemption value, and accretion of the beneficial conversion feature of \$0.2 million, \$0.9 million, and \$2.1 million, respectively. Additionally, the unamortized beneficial conversion feature of \$2.6 million was allocated to the carrying value of the debt and the fair value of the new debt was established at \$8.4 million. The intrinsic value of the beneficial conversion feature was measured at the amendment date, \$0.3 million, and recorded as a reduction in additional paid in capital. The loss on extinguishment of \$1.8 million was recorded as interest expense.

On August 22, 2016, the Company executed a Note Purchase Agreement ("the August 2016 Note Purchase Agreement") under which the Company was authorized to issue \$10.0 million in convertible promissory notes in an initial closing, second closing, third closing, and subsequent closings. The second closing was subject to the second

## [Table of Contents](#)

closing development milestone. The third closing was subject to the third closing development milestone. The subsequent closings had to occur on or before the occurrence of the third closing.

The initial closing occurred on August 22, 2016 whereby the Company issued \$4.0 million of convertible notes pursuant to the August 2016 Note Purchase Agreement.

In September 2016, the Company issued \$0.7 million of additional convertible notes as part of the subsequent closing to the August 2016 Note Purchase Agreement.

Principal and interest on all note issuances under the August 2016 Note Purchase Agreement, which accrued at a rate of 8% per annum, was due and payable upon the earlier of written demand by holders of the requisite noteholders any time on or after August 22, 2017, unless sooner accelerated upon automatic conversion at (i) a "Qualified Equity Financing" where such transaction results in the Company having raised gross proceeds of at least \$25.0 million or (ii) a "Qualified IPO" where the Company sells shares of common stock to investors at a price per share equal to at least \$21.55 and gross proceeds to the Company of at least \$40.0 million, or upon optional conversion at (i) a "Non-Qualified Equity Financing" or (ii) a "Non-Qualified IPO" or upon the sale of the Company.

Certain of the conversion features of the notes under the August 2016 Note Purchase Agreement allowed holders to convert principal and interest on each issuance into shares of the Company at a discount. For the Qualified Equity Financing, the conversion price was equal to ninety percent (90%), if converted before the 60<sup>th</sup> day following the initial closing, or eighty percent (80%), thereafter, of the per share price at which shares of equity financing securities or common stock are to be sold. For all other applicable conversion features, the conversion price was equal to eighty percent (80%) of the per share price.

Based on the terms of the notes under the August 2016 Convertible Note Purchase Agreement and the Company's assessment that conversion of the notes prior to maturity in a "Qualified Equity Financing" was the predominant feature, the Company determined that the notes were share-settled debt, and as such accreted the notes over their term, to the value of the preferred stock into which the notes would be converted, \$5.8 million, recognizing accretion to the redemption value through the date the convertible notes were converted as interest expense.

Upon maturity, the noteholders have the option to convert any outstanding principal and accrued but unpaid interest into shares of Series A convertible preferred stock at a purchase price equal to \$1.00. This embedded conversion feature meets the definition of a beneficial conversion feature and was recognized by allocating a portion of the proceeds equal to the intrinsic value of the beneficial conversion feature measured at the commitment date, or \$0.2 million, to additional paid in capital. The accretion of the beneficial conversion feature was recognized through the date the convertible notes were converted as interest expense.

The Company allocated \$28,000 in transaction costs as a discount to the notes.

On December 22, 2016, pursuant to the August 2016 Note Purchase Agreement and in connection with the issuance of Series B convertible preferred stock (Note 10), the convertible notes and accrued interest converted into 5,962,784 shares of Series B convertible preferred stock.

The redemption was treated as an extinguishment of debt which required the carrying value of the debt to be derecognized and the fair value of the debt to be recognized as new debt. At the redemption date, the carrying value of the debt included principal of \$4.7 million, and accrued interest, accretion to the redemption value, and accretion of the beneficial conversion feature of \$120,000, \$356,000, and \$60,000, respectively. Additionally, the unamortized portion of the beneficial conversion feature of \$126,000 was allocated to the carrying value of the debt and the fair value of the new debt was established at \$6.0 million. The beneficial conversion feature at the conversion date was determined to be out of the money and, as such, was derecognized. The loss on extinguishment of \$1.0 million was recorded as interest expense.

## **10. Convertible Preferred Stock and Equity**

### ***Authorized Shares***

The amount of common stock authorized increased in 2016 in connection with the Company's equity financings. As of December 31, 2016, the Company has 95,000,000, 25,749,471 and 46,962,784 shares of common stock,

## [Table of Contents](#)

Series A convertible preferred stock and Series B convertible preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, authorized, respectively.

### **Common Stock**

At the time of conversion of the Delaware Limited Liability Corporation into a Delaware Corporation, 1,114,206 Class A Units converted into 1,026,890 shares of common stock of scPharmaceuticals Inc. at \$0.0001 per share par value.

The Company issued 22,850 and 8,897 additional shares in 2015 and 2016, respectively, as a result of restricted stock issuances and stock option exercises. In addition, the Company repurchased 5,222 shares of unvested restricted stock in 2015. At December 31, 2016, the Company had 1,075,140 shares outstanding of which 5,053 represented unvested restricted stock.

### **Convertible Preferred Stock**

On March 24, 2014, the Company entered into a Series A Preferred Stock Purchase Agreement ("Series A Preferred SPA"). Per the Series A Preferred SPA, the Company agreed to sell to the Purchasers, for cash, an aggregate of up to 16,000,000 shares of Series A convertible preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, for the purchase price of \$1.00 per share over two closings, an Initial Closing and a Milestone Closing. In addition, pursuant to the convertible note agreements, the Convertible Notes converted into 1,315,679 shares of Series A convertible preferred stock at the Initial Closing. The Initial Closing occurred on the date of the Series A Preferred SPA and the Milestone Closing was to occur on the 15th business day following delivery of the Milestone Closing Notice. This Milestone Closing was subject to the Company achieving several milestones related to its pharmaceutical and device development programs.

In conjunction with the execution of the Series A Preferred SPA, the Company received \$8.0 million from the sale of 8,000,000 shares of Series A convertible preferred stock, par value \$0.0001, at a price of \$1.00 per share at the Initial Closing. Costs associated with the financing were \$0.2 million resulting in net cash received of \$7.8 million.

In October 2014, the Series A Preferred SPA was amended to include an additional investment of \$250,000. The Company received \$250,000 from the sale of 250,000 shares of Series A convertible preferred stock, par value \$0.0001, at a price of \$1.00 per share on October 14, 2014.

On April 8, 2015, the Company received \$8.0 million from the sale of 8,000,000 shares of Series A convertible preferred stock, par value \$0.0001, at a price of \$1.00 per share at the Milestone Closing of the Series A Preferred SPA. Costs associated with the financing were \$7,000 resulting in net cash received of \$7,993,000.

On August 22, 2016, pursuant to the January 2016 Convertible Note Purchase Agreement, the Company issued 8,183,792 shares of Series A convertible preferred stock upon conversion of the underlying convertible notes (Note 9).

On December 22, 2016, the Company entered into a Series B Preferred Stock Purchase Agreement ("Series B Preferred SPA"). Per the Series B Preferred SPA, the Company agreed to sell to the Purchasers, for cash, an aggregate of up to 46,962,784 shares of Series B convertible preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, for the purchase price of \$1.00 per share. As part of the Series B Preferred SPA, pursuant to the August 2016 Note Purchase Agreement, the underlying convertible notes converted into 5,962,784 shares of Series B convertible preferred stock (Note 9).

In conjunction with the execution of the Series B Preferred SPA, the Company received \$41.0 million from the sale of 41,000,000 shares of Series B convertible preferred stock, par value \$0.0001, at a price of \$1.00 per share. Costs associated with the financing were \$0.4 million resulting in net cash received of \$40.6 million.

The Series A convertible preferred stock and the Series B convertible preferred stock, collectively "Convertible Preferred Stock" have the following characteristics:

#### **Dividends**

Holders of each share of Series A convertible preferred stock are entitled to receive non-cumulative cash dividends, prior and in preference to any declaration or payment of any dividend on shares of common stock at

## [Table of Contents](#)

the rate of six percent of the Series A original issue price, payable only when, as and if declared by the Board of Directors.

Through December 31, 2017, holders of each share of Series B convertible preferred stock are entitled to receive non-cumulative cash dividends, prior and in preference to any declaration or payment of any dividend on shares of common stock at the rate of six percent of the Series B original issue price, payable only when, as and if declared by the Board of Directors.

From and after January 1, 2018, dividends at the rate per annum of six percent shall accrue on each share of Series B Preferred Stock and shall become payable at the election of the Board of Directors in cash. In no event shall the value of the Series B Preferred Stock dividend exceed twenty percent of the Series B original issue price on a cumulative basis.

### ***Voting Rights***

Holders of each share of Convertible Preferred Stock are entitled to that number of votes equal to the number of whole shares of common stock into which a holder's shares of Convertible Preferred Stock could be converted as of the record date of any vote.

### ***Conversion Rights***

Shares of Convertible Preferred Stock are convertible, at the option of the holder, into shares of the Company's common stock at a conversion value determined by dividing the Series A original issue price or the Series B original issue price, as the case may be, by the applicable conversion price. The Series A conversion price of \$7.180193 (which reflects the stock split described in Note 2) and the Series B conversion price of \$7.180193 (which reflects the stock split described in Note 2) are collectively referred to as the "Conversion Price". All outstanding shares of Convertible Preferred Stock automatically convert into common stock upon the closing of a qualified firm commitment underwritten public offering in which the Company sells shares of its common stock at a price to the public of at least \$17.96 per share, and resulting in at least \$50.0 million of gross proceeds to the Company, or upon the consent of the holders of at least 60% of the Company's outstanding preferred stock. In the event of a public offering that is not a qualified public offering, the Convertible Preferred Stock may convert at the written election of at least 60% of the holders of the Convertible Preferred Stock, voting together as a single class on an as-converted basis.

### ***Liquidation Preference***

In the event of any liquidation, dissolution or winding-up of the Company, which would include the sale of the Company, the Series B convertible preferred stockholders shall be entitled to be paid, before any distribution or payment is made upon the holders of Series A convertible preferred stock or common stock, an amount per share equal to the Series B original issue price, plus any Series B original dividend declared but unpaid thereon, plus any unpaid Series B accruing dividends accrued thereon, beginning in January 2018, plus any other dividends declared but unpaid thereon. Any assets remaining following the preferential distribution to the holders of Series B convertible preferred stock shall be available for distribution to the holders of Series A convertible preferred stock in an amount per share equal to the Series A original issue price, plus any dividends declared but unpaid thereon. In the event that assets remain after all the preferential amounts required to be paid to the holders of shares of preferred stock are paid, the remaining assets shall be distributed among the holders of the shares of preferred stock and common stock, ratably among all holders of preferred stock and common stock pro-rata based on the number of shares held by each holder, treating the preferred stock as if they had been converted to common stock prior to such liquidation, dissolution, or winding-up.

The maximum amount to be distributed to holders of Series B convertible preferred stock is the greater of three times the Series B original issue price or the amount the holders would have received if all shares of Series B convertible preferred stock had been converted into common stock immediately prior to such liquidation, dissolution or winding-up of the Company. The maximum amount to be distributed to holders of Series A convertible preferred stock is the greater of three times the Series A original issue price or the amount the holders would have received if all shares of Series A convertible preferred stock had been converted into common stock immediately prior to such liquidation, dissolution or winding-up of the Company.

Because a majority of voting power of the outstanding common stock can be obtained without the Company's approval, redemption of the Convertible Preferred Stock can be triggered. This requires the Company to record

## [Table of Contents](#)

the Convertible Preferred Stock in temporary equity between liabilities and equity in the balance sheet. Convertible Preferred Stock has been recorded net of issuance costs. The Company has not recorded any accretion to redemption value as it is not required until redemption becomes probable.

### **Registration Rights**

The holders of shares of Convertible Preferred Stock are entitled to certain demand registration rights with respect to these securities, as set forth in the investors' rights agreement between the Company and the holders of these securities. These registration rights would require the Company to use its commercially reasonable efforts to register the shares of the Company's common stock underlying the Convertible Preferred Stock under the Securities Act of 1933, subject to certain conditions and limitations. The cost of registration would be incurred by the Company.

### **Reserved Shares**

The Company has reserved 10,571,181 shares of common stock for potential conversion of the preferred stock and for the exercise of outstanding options to purchase common stock.

## **11. Commitments and Contingencies**

### **Operating Leases**

The Company entered into noncancelable operating leases for office facilities located in Lexington, MA through February 28, 2017, June 30, 2017, and December 31, 2022, the Temporary Use and Occupancy Agreement, as amended, the Original Lease, and the Amended Lease, respectively. Rent expense under the operating leases totaled \$0.1 million and \$0.2 million for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2016, respectively.

As of December 31, 2016, the minimum future rent payments under the lease agreements are as follows (in thousands):

---

2017	\$ 90
2018	64
2019	66
2020	67
2021	69
Thereafter	71
Total minimum lease payments	<u>\$427</u>

---

## **12. 401(k) Savings Plan**

In July 2014, the Company established a defined contribution savings plan under Section 401(k) of the Internal Revenue Code covering all of its employees. Employees may make contributions by withholding a percentage of their salary. The plan includes an employer match equal to 100% on the first 3% of deferred compensation and an additional 50% on the next 2% of deferred compensation. During the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2016, the Company has recognized compensation expense of \$83,000 and \$122,000 for the employer match contribution.

## **13. Subsequent Events**

The Company has evaluated subsequent events up to April 17, 2017, the date the financial statements were issued, with the exception of Note 3, which was evaluated through August 30, 2017, and the Stock Split paragraph of Note 2, and the effects thereof, which were evaluated through November 6, 2017, pursuant to the requirements of ASC 855 *Subsequent Events*, and has determined the following material subsequent event:

In January 2017, the Company hired a new President and Chief Executive Officer. As part of the compensation package, 496,674 options were issued out of the 2014 Stock Plan. Severance was accrued for the prior President and Chief Executive Officer in accordance with his employment agreement.

**SCPHARMACEUTICALS INC.**  
**Unaudited Condensed Balance Sheets**  
(in thousands, except share and per share data)

	DECEMBER 31, 2016	SEPTEMBER 30, 2017	PRO FORMA STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY SEPTEMBER 30, 2017
<b>Assets</b>			
Current assets			
Cash	\$ 39,282	\$ 31,835	\$ 31,435
Prepaid expenses	101	300	300
VAT receivable	349	685	685
Deferred financing costs	—	1,092	1,092
Other current assets	8	26	26
Total current assets	39,740	33,938	33,538
Restricted cash	—	182	182
Property and equipment, net	26	209	209
Deposits and other assets	6	5	5
Total assets	<u>\$ 39,772</u>	<u>\$ 34,334</u>	<u>\$ 33,934</u>
<b>Liabilities, Convertible Preferred Stock, and Stockholders' (Deficit) Equity</b>			
Current liabilities			
Accounts payable	\$ 1,546	\$ 1,010	\$ 1,010
Accrued expenses	2,178	3,820	3,820
Other current liabilities	12	2	2
Total current liabilities	3,736	4,832	4,832
Term loan	—	9,360	9,360
Derivative liability	—	394	—
Other liabilities	7	88	88
Total liabilities	3,743	14,674	14,280
Commitments and contingencies (Note 10)			
Series A convertible preferred stock; \$0.0001 par value; 25,749,471 shares authorized at September 30, 2017; 25,749,471 shares issued and outstanding at December 31, 2016 and September 30, 2017; liquidation preference of \$25,749 at September 30, 2017, actual; no shares issued and outstanding at September 30, 2017, pro forma	26,502	26,502	—
Series B convertible preferred stock; \$0.0001 par value; 46,962,784 shares authorized at September 30, 2017; 46,962,784 shares issued and outstanding at December 31, 2016 and September 30, 2017; liquidation preference of \$46,963 at September 30, 2017, actual; no shares issued and outstanding at September 30, 2017, pro forma	46,601	46,592	—
Stockholders' (deficit) equity			
Common stock; \$0.0001 par value; 95,000,000 shares authorized at September 30, 2017; 1,070,087 and 1,082,528 issued and outstanding at December 31, 2016 and September 30, 2017, respectively; 11,209,299 shares issued and outstanding at September 30, 2017, pro forma	—	—	1
Additional paid-in capital	6,125	6,703	79,796
Accumulated deficit	(43,199)	(60,137)	(60,143)
Total stockholders' (deficit) equity	(37,074)	(53,434)	19,654
Total liabilities, convertible preferred stock, and stockholders' (deficit) equity	<u>\$ 39,772</u>	<u>\$ 34,334</u>	<u>\$ 33,934</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these unaudited condensed financial statements.

**SCPHARMACEUTICALS INC.**  
**Unaudited Condensed Statements of Operations and Comprehensive Loss**  
(in thousands, except share and per share data)

	NINE MONTHS ENDED	
	SEPTEMBER 30, 2016	SEPTEMBER 30, 2017
Operating expenses:		
Research and development	\$ 8,839	\$ 10,615
General and administrative	5,111	6,113
Total operating expenses	<u>13,950</u>	<u>16,728</u>
Loss from operations	(13,950)	(16,728)
Other income	11	82
Interest income	3	170
Interest expense	(5,123)	(461)
Net loss and comprehensive loss	<u>\$ (19,059)</u>	<u>\$ (16,937)</u>
Net loss per share, basic and diluted	<u>\$ (20.20)</u>	<u>\$ (15.76)</u>
Weighted—average common shares outstanding, basic and diluted	<u>943,501</u>	<u>1,074,702</u>
Pro forma net loss per share, basic and diluted		<u>\$ (1.51)</u>
Pro forma weighted—average common shares outstanding, basic and diluted		<u>11,201,473</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these unaudited condensed financial statements.

**SCPHARMACEUTICALS INC.**  
**Unaudited Condensed Statements of Cash Flows**  
(in thousands)

	FOR THE NINE MONTHS ENDED	
	SEPTEMBER 30, 2016	SEPTEMBER 30, 2017
<b>Cash flows from operating activities</b>		
Net loss	\$ (19,059)	\$ (16,937)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash used in operating activities		
Depreciation expense	3	8
Stock-based compensation	729	570
Non-cash interest expense	5,123	111
Changes in operating assets and liabilities		
Prepaid expenses and other assets	(230)	(1,644)
Accounts payable, accrued expenses and other liabilities	3,231	1,151
Net cash flows used in operating activities	<u>(10,203)</u>	<u>(16,741)</u>
<b>Cash flows from investing activities</b>		
Purchases of property and equipment	(9)	(190)
Net cash flows used in investing activities	<u>(9)</u>	<u>(190)</u>
<b>Cash flows from financing activities</b>		
Costs related to issuance of Series B convertible preferred stock	—	(8)
Proceeds from term loan	—	10,000
Costs related to term loan	—	(326)
Proceeds from issuance of convertible promissory notes	12,600	—
Costs related to issuance of convertible promissory notes	(66)	—
Proceeds from the exercise of vested stock options	—	3
Purchase of restricted stock	—	(3)
Net cash flows provided by financing activities	<u>12,534</u>	<u>9,666</u>
Net increase (decrease) in cash and restricted cash	2,322	(7,265)
Cash and restricted cash, beginning of period	1,573	39,282
Cash and restricted cash, end of period	<u>\$ 3,895</u>	<u>\$ 32,017</u>
<b>Supplemental cash flow information</b>		
Interest paid	\$ —	\$ 310
<b>Supplemental disclosure of non-cash activities</b>		
Conversion of convertible notes into Series A convertible preferred stock, including accrued interest	\$ 8,429	\$ —
Beneficial conversion feature of convertible notes	4,653	—
Vesting of restricted stock	(12)	(4)

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these unaudited condensed financial statements.

**SCPHARMACEUTICALS INC.**

**Notes to Unaudited Interim Condensed Financial Statements**

**1. Description of Business and Basis of Presentation**

***Description of Business***

scPharmaceuticals LLC was formed as a Limited Liability Company under the laws of the State of Delaware on February 19, 2013. On March 24, 2014, scPharmaceuticals LLC was converted to a Delaware corporation and changed its name to scPharmaceuticals Inc. ("the Company"). The Company is a pharmaceutical company focused on developing and commercializing products that have the potential to transform the way therapy is delivered, advance patient care and reduce healthcare costs. The Company's proprietary platform is designed to enable the subcutaneous administration of therapies that have previously been limited to intravenous, or IV, delivery. The Company's headquarters and primary place of business is Burlington, Massachusetts.

***Basis of Presentation***

The accompanying condensed financial statements have been prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States ("U.S. GAAP") for interim financial information and have been prepared on a basis which assumes that the Company will continue as a going concern, which contemplates the realization of assets and the satisfaction of liabilities and commitments in the normal course of business. Certain information and disclosures normally included in financial statements in accordance with U.S. GAAP have been condensed or omitted. Accordingly, these condensed financial statements should be read in conjunction with the Company's financial statements and related notes for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2016 included elsewhere in this prospectus.

The accompanying condensed balance sheet as of September 30, 2017, and the condensed statements of operations and comprehensive loss and condensed statements of cash flows for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2017 are unaudited. The unaudited interim condensed financial statements have been prepared on a basis consistent with that used to prepare the Company's audited annual financial statements and include, in the opinion of management, adjustments, consisting of normal recurring items, necessary for the fair statement of the condensed financial statements. The operating results for the nine months ended September 30, 2017 are not necessarily indicative of the results expected for the full year ending December 31, 2017.

**2. Significant Accounting Policies**

There have been no significant changes in the Company's accounting policies from those disclosed in the Company's audited financial statements and the related notes.

***Stock Split***

On November 6, 2017, the Company effectuated a 1-for-7.180193 reverse stock split of its outstanding common stock, which was approved by the Company's board of directors on October 27, 2017 and by the Company's stockholders on November 6, 2017. The reverse stock split resulted in an adjustment to the preferred stock conversion prices to reflect a proportional decrease in the number of shares of common stock to be issued upon conversion. The accompanying financial statements and notes to the financial statements give retroactive effect to the reverse stock split for all periods presented. The shares of common stock retained a par value of \$0.0001 per share. Accordingly, the stockholders' deficit reflects the reverse stock split by reclassifying from common stock to additional paid-in capital in an amount equal to the par value of the decreased shares resulting from the reverse stock split.

***Use of Estimates***

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with U.S. GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and the disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of expenses during the reported periods. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

***Unaudited Pro Forma Information***

The accompanying unaudited pro forma balance sheet as of September 30, 2017 has been prepared to give effect, upon the closing of a qualified public offering, to the conversion of all outstanding shares of convertible preferred

## [Table of Contents](#)

stock into an aggregate of 10,126,771 shares of common stock as if the Company's proposed public offering had occurred on September 30, 2017.

In the accompanying statements of operations, the unaudited pro forma basic and diluted net loss per share attributable to common stockholders for the nine months ended September 30, 2017 have been prepared to give effect, upon the closing of a qualified firm commitment underwritten public offering in which the Company sells shares of its common stock at a price to the public of at least \$17.96 per share, and resulting in at least \$50.0 million of gross proceeds to the Company, or upon the consent of the holders of at least 60% of the Company's outstanding preferred stock, to the conversion of all outstanding shares of convertible preferred stock into shares of common stock as if the proposed initial public offering had occurred on the later of January 1, 2016, or the issuance date of the convertible preferred stock.

### **Deferred Initial Public Offering Costs**

Deferred offering costs, which primarily consist of direct incremental legal and accounting fees relating to the initial public offering, are capitalized. The deferred offering costs will be offset against initial public offering proceeds upon the consummation of the offering. In the event the offering is terminated, deferred offering costs will be expensed.

### **Restricted Cash**

As of September 30, 2017, the Company classified \$182,000 as restricted cash related to a letter of credit issued as a security deposit in connection with the Company's lease of its corporate office facilities (Note 10).

### **Net Loss per Share**

Basic net loss per share is calculated by dividing the net loss by the weighted-average number of shares of common stock outstanding during the period without consideration of dilutive common stock equivalents. Diluted net loss per share is the same as basic net loss per common share, since the effects of potentially dilutive securities are anti-dilutive.

Dilutive common stock equivalents are comprised of convertible preferred stock, unexercised stock options outstanding under the Company's equity plan and unvested restricted stock.

### **Fair Value of Financial Instruments**

Assets and liabilities that are carried at fair value are to be classified and disclosed in one of the following three categories:

Level 1: Observable quoted market prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities;

Level 2: Observable inputs other than Level 1, such as quoted prices in active markets for similar assets or liabilities, quoted prices for identical or similar assets or liabilities in markets that are not active, or inputs other than quoted prices that are observable for the asset or liability; and

Level 3: Unobservable inputs for the asset or liability that are significant to the fair value of the assets or liabilities.

At December 31, 2016, the Company had no assets or liabilities that are required to be carried at fair value. As of September 30, 2017, the Company's derivative liability is carried at fair value, determined according to the fair value hierarchy described above (Note 3). The carrying values of the Company's cash and restricted cash, prepaid expenses, VAT receivable, deferred financing costs and deposits approximate their fair values due to their short term nature. The carrying value of the Company's loan payable was considered a reasonable estimate of fair value because the Company's interest rate is near current market rates for instruments with similar characteristics.

### **Derivative Liability**

The Company entered into an exit agreement in connection with its loan and security agreement with Solar Capital Ltd. and Silicon Valley Bank (Note 8), which provides for a payment to the lenders upon the occurrence of an exit event, as defined in the exit agreement, including an initial public offering. The Company classifies the exit payment obligation as a liability on its balance sheet because it represents a contingent payment obligation that is not clearly and closely related to the host instrument and meets the definition of a derivative. The derivative liability was initially recorded at fair value upon execution of the loan and security agreement and is subsequently remeasured to fair value at each reporting date. Changes in the fair value of the derivative liability are recognized as a component of other income (expense), net in the statement of operations and comprehensive loss. Changes in the fair value of the derivative liability will continue to be recognized until an exit event occurs.

**Income Taxes**

The Company provides reserves for potential payments of tax to various tax authorities related to uncertain tax positions. The tax benefits recorded are based on a determination of whether and how much of a tax benefit taken by the Company in its tax filings or positions is “more likely than not” to be realized following resolution of any uncertainty related to the tax benefit, assuming that the matter in question will be raised by the tax authorities. Potential interest and penalties associated with such uncertain tax positions are recorded as a component of income tax expense. At September 30, 2017, the Company had not identified any significant uncertain tax positions.

**Recently Issued Accounting Standards**

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-02, Leases (Topic 842) (“ASU 2016-02”). ASU 2016-02 is intended to improve financial reporting of leasing transactions by requiring organizations that lease assets to recognize assets and liabilities for the rights and obligations created by leases that extend more than twelve months on the balance sheet. This accounting update also requires additional disclosures surrounding the amount, timing, and uncertainty of cash flows arising from leases. ASU 2016-02 is effective for financial statements issued for annual and interim periods beginning after December 15, 2018 for public business entities. For all other entities, it is effective for annual periods beginning after December 15, 2019 and interim periods within fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2020. Early adoption is permitted. The Company is still evaluating whether the adoption of this pronouncement will have a material impact on its financial statements.

In March 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-06, Derivatives and Hedging (Topic 815): Contingent Put and Call Options in Debt Instruments (“ASU 2016-06”). This new standard simplifies the embedded derivative analysis for debt instruments containing contingent call or put options by removing the requirement to assess whether a contingent event is related to interest rates or credit risks. ASU 2016-06 is effective for financial statements issued for annual and interim periods beginning after December 15, 2016 for public business entities. For all other entities, it is effective for annual periods beginning after December 15, 2017 and interim periods within fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2018. Early adoption is permitted. The Company has evaluated this pronouncement and has determined there is no impact on its financial statements.

In March 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-09, Compensation—Stock Compensation (Topic 718): Improvements to Employee Share-Based Payment Accounting (“ASU 2016-09”). This new standard requires recognition of the income tax effects of vested or settled awards in the income statement and involves several other aspects of the accounting for share-based payment transactions, including the income tax consequences, classification of awards as either equity or liabilities and classification on the statement of cash flows. ASU 2016-09 is effective for financial statements issued for annual and interim periods beginning after December 15, 2016 for public business entities. For all other entities, it is effective for annual periods beginning after December 15, 2017 and interim periods within fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2018, with early adoption permitted. The Company early adopted this pronouncement and there was no material impact to the financial statement presentation.

In November 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-18, Statement of Cash Flows (Topic 230): Restricted Cash. This new standard requires restricted cash and restricted cash equivalents to be included as components of total cash and cash equivalents as presented on the statement of cash flows. ASU 2016-18 is effective for financial statements issued for annual and interim periods beginning after December 31, 2017 for public business entities. For all other entities, it is effective for annual periods beginning after December 15, 2018 and interim periods within fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2019. Early adoption is permitted. The Company elected to early adopt ASU 2016-18 as of January 1, 2017.

In May 2017, the FASB issued ASU No. 2017-09, Compensation – Stock Compensation (Topic 718): Scope of Modification Accounting (“ASU 2017-09”). This new standard clarifies when changes to the terms or conditions of a share-based payment award must be accounted for as modifications. It requires entities to apply modification accounting guidance if the value, vesting conditions or classification of the award changes. ASU 2017-09 is effective for financial statements issued for annual and interim periods beginning after December 15, 2017. Early adoption is permitted. The Company is still evaluating whether the adoption of this pronouncement will have a material impact on its financial statements.

[Table of Contents](#)**3. Fair Value of Financial Assets and Liabilities**

The following table presents information about the Company's financial assets and liabilities measured at fair value on a recurring basis and indicate the level of the fair value hierarchy utilized to determine such fair values (in thousands):

	FAIR VALUE MEASUREMENTS AS OF			
	SEPTEMBER 30, 2017:			
	LEVEL 1	LEVEL 2	LEVEL 3	TOTAL
<b>Liabilities:</b>				
Derivative liability	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 394	\$ 394
	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ 394</u>	<u>\$ 394</u>

**Valuation of Derivative Liability**

The fair value of the derivative liability recognized in connection with the Company's loan and security agreement (Note 8) was determined based on significant inputs not observable in the market, which represents a Level 3 measurement within the fair value hierarchy. The fair value of the derivative liability was determined using the probability-weighted expected return method ("PWERM"), which considered as inputs the timing and probability of occurrence of an exit event, the amount of the payment; and the risk-free discount rate reflecting the expected risk profile for each of the potential settlement scenarios. The Company determined that the change in the fair value of the derivative liability from the date of issuance through September 30, 2017 was not material.

**4. Net Loss per Share and Pro Forma Net Loss per Share****Net Loss per Share Attributable to Common Stockholders**

The following table sets forth the computation of basic and diluted net loss per share of common stock (in thousands, except share and per share data):

	NINE MONTHS ENDED	
	SEPTEMBER 30,	
	2016	2017
Net loss and comprehensive loss	<u>\$ (19,059)</u>	<u>\$ (16,937)</u>
Weighted-average shares used in computing net loss per share	<u>943,501</u>	<u>1,074,702</u>
Net loss per share, basic and diluted	<u>\$ (20.20)</u>	<u>\$ (15.76)</u>

The Company's potentially dilutive securities, which include stock options and convertible preferred stock, have been excluded from the computation of diluted net loss per share as the effect would be to reduce the net loss per share. Therefore, the weighted average number of common shares outstanding used to calculate both basic and diluted net loss per share attributable to common stockholders is the same. The Company excluded the following potential common shares, presented based on amounts outstanding at each period end, from the computation of diluted net loss per share attributable to common stockholders for the periods indicated because including them would have had an anti-dilutive effect.

	NINE MONTHS ENDED	
	SEPTEMBER 30,	
	2016	2017
Convertible preferred stock, on an if-converted basis	3,586,171	10,126,771
Stock options to purchase common stock	448,496	1,046,879
Unvested restricted stock	5,984	852
Total	<u>4,040,651</u>	<u>11,174,502</u>

## [Table of Contents](#)

The following table summarizes the Company's pro forma net loss per share (in thousands, except share and per share data):

	NINE MONTHS ENDED SEPTEMBER 30, 2017
<b>Numerator:</b>	
Net loss attributable to common stockholders	\$ (16,937)
<b>Denominator:</b>	
Weighted-average shares used in computing net loss per share, basic and diluted	1,074,702
Pro forma adjustments to reflect assumed conversion of convertible preferred stock	10,126,771
Weighted-average shares used in computing pro forma net loss per share, basic and diluted	11,201,473
Pro forma net loss per share, attributable to common stockholders basic and diluted	\$ (1.51)

## 5. Property and Equipment

Property and equipment consists of the following (dollars in thousands):

	ESTIMATED USEFUL LIFE	DECEMBER 31, 2016	SEPTEMBER 30, 2017
Office furniture	7 years	\$ —	\$ 116
Office equipment	5 years	10	10
Computer equipment	3 years	8	8
Leasehold improvements	Life of lease	17	92
		35	226
Less: Accumulated depreciation		(9)	(17)
Property and equipment, net		\$ 26	\$ 209

Depreciation expense for the periods ended September 30, 2016 and September 30, 2017 was \$3,000 and \$8,000, respectively.

## 6. Accrued Expenses

Accrued expenses consist of (in thousands):

	DECEMBER 31, 2016	SEPTEMBER 30, 2017
Contract research and development	\$ 1,567	\$ 1,866
Financing related costs	303	495
Consulting and professional service fees	170	315
Employee compensation and related costs	85	1,099
Other	53	45
Total accrued expenses	\$ 2,178	\$ 3,820

## 7. Stock-Based Compensation

### Stock Options

The Company's 2014 Stock Incentive Plan (the "2014 Stock Plan") became effective in March 2014 and will expire in March 2024. Under the 2014 Stock Plan, the Company may grant incentive stock options, non-statutory stock

[Table of Contents](#)

options, restricted stock awards and other stock-based awards. The Company's 2013 LLC Unit Option Plan (the "2013 Stock Plan") was terminated in March 2014 effective upon the conversion of scPharmaceuticals LLC to scPharmaceuticals Inc. and all unit options were converted to options under the 2014 Stock Plan. No further unit options will be granted under the 2013 Stock Plan.

As of September 30, 2017, there were 1,263,203 shares of the Company's common stock authorized for issuance under the 2014 Stock Plan.

At September 30, 2017, there were 159,806 options available for issuance and 1,046,879 options outstanding under the 2014 Stock Plan. Options granted under the 2014 Plan have a term of ten years. Vesting of options under the 2014 Stock Plan is determined by the board of directors, but is generally a four-year term.

The fair value of options at date of grant was estimated using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model with the following assumptions:

	NINE MONTHS ENDED SEPTEMBER 30,	
	2016	2017
Risk-free interest rate	1.08%—1.58%	1.89%—2.20%
Expected dividend yield	0%	0%
Expected life	6.0—6.4 years	5.8—6.7 years
Expected volatility	86%—93%	78%—84%
Weighted-average grant date fair value	\$6.51	\$2.67

The following table summarizes information about stock option activity during the nine months ended September 30, 2017 (in thousands, except share and per share data):

	NUMBER OF SHARES	WEIGHTED- AVERAGE EXERCISE PRICE	WEIGHTED- AVERAGE REMAINING CONTRACTUAL TERM	AGGREGATE INTRINSIC VALUE
Outstanding, December 31, 2016	444,410	\$ 6.99		
Granted	704,152	3.81		
Exercised	(10,113)	0.35		
Forfeited	(91,570)	8.83		
Outstanding, September 30, 2017	<u>1,046,879</u>	<u>\$ 4.76</u>	8.91	\$ 1,899
Vested and exercisable, September 30, 2017	186,606	\$ 5.59	7.45	\$ 366
Vested and expected to vest, September 30, 2017	<u>854,139</u>	<u>\$ 4.88</u>	8.81	\$ 1,537

Unrecognized compensation expense related to unvested awards as of September 30, 2017 was \$1.9 million and will be recognized over the remaining vesting periods of the underlying awards. The weighted-average period over which such compensation is expected to be recognized is 2.79 years.

The Company recorded stock-based compensation expense in the following expense categories of its accompanying condensed statements of operations and comprehensive loss for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2017 (in thousands):

	2016	2017
Research and development	\$ 136	\$ 109
General and administrative	593	461
Total	<u>\$ 729</u>	<u>\$ 570</u>

[Table of Contents](#)

**8. Term Loan**

In May 2017, the Company entered into a loan and security agreement, or 2017 Loan Agreement, with Solar Capital Ltd. and Silicon Valley Bank for \$10.0 million. Debt issuance costs for the 2017 Loan Agreement will be amortized to interest expense over the remaining term of the 2017 Loan Agreement using the effective-interest method.

The interest rate under the 2017 Loan Agreement is LIBOR plus 8.45%, and there is an interest-only period until November 30, 2018, followed by a 30-month principal and interest period. Pursuant to the 2017 Loan Agreement, the Company provided a first priority security interest in all existing and after-acquired assets, excluding intellectual property, owned by the Company.

The Company entered into an exit fee agreement in connection with the 2017 Loan Agreement which provides for an aggregate payment of 4% of the loan commitment, or \$400,000, to the lenders upon the occurrence of an exit event, including an initial public offering. The Company concluded that the exit payment obligation met the definition of a derivative that was required to be accounted for as a separate unit of accounting. The Company recorded the issuance-date fair value of the derivative liability of \$392,000 as a debt discount and as a derivative liability in the Company's balance sheet.

As of September 30, 2017, unpaid borrowings under the 2017 Loan Agreement totaled \$10.0 million. For the nine months ended September 30, 2017, the Company recorded \$78,000 related to the amortization of debt discount associated with the 2017 Loan Agreement.

The 2017 Loan Agreement allows the Company to voluntarily prepay all (but not less than all) of the outstanding principal at any time. A prepayment premium of 3% or 1% through the one year anniversary and thereafter, respectively, would be assessed on the outstanding principal. A final payment fee of \$250,000 is due upon the earlier to occur of the maturity date or prepayment of such borrowings.

In an event of default under the 2017 Loan Agreement, the interest rate will be increased by 5% and the balance under the loan may become immediately due and payable at the option of the lenders.

The 2017 Loan Agreement includes restrictions on, among other things, the Company's ability to incur additional indebtedness, change the name or location of the Company's business, merge with or acquire other entities, pay dividends or make other distributions to holders of its capital stock, make certain investments, engage in transactions with affiliates, create liens, sell assets or pay subordinated debt.

Total term loan and unamortized debt discount balances are as follows (in thousands):

---

	SEPTEMBER 30, 2017
Face value	\$ 10,000
Less: discount	(640)
Total	\$ 9,360
Less: current portion	—
Total	<u>\$ 9,360</u>

---

As of September 30, 2017, future principal payments due under the 2017 Loan Agreement are as follows (in thousands):

---

Year ended:	
December 31, 2018	\$ 333
December 31, 2019	4,000
December 31, 2020	4,000
December 31, 2021	1,667
Total future principal payments due under the 2017 Loan Agreement	<u>\$10,000</u>

---

## 9. Convertible Preferred Stock and Equity

### Authorized Shares

As of September 30, 2017, the Company has 95,000,000, 25,749,471 and 46,962,784 shares of common stock, Series A convertible preferred stock and Series B convertible preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, authorized, respectively.

### Common Stock

At the time of conversion of the Delaware Limited Liability Corporation into a Delaware Corporation, 1,114,206 Class A Units converted into 1,026,890 shares of common stock of scPharmaceuticals Inc. at \$0.0001 per share par value.

At September 30, 2017, the Company had 1,083,380 shares outstanding of which 852 represented unvested restricted stock.

### Reserved Shares

The Company has reserved 11,173,650 shares of common stock for potential conversion of the preferred stock and for the exercise of outstanding options to purchase common stock.

## 10. Commitments and Contingencies

### Operating Leases

The Company entered into noncancelable operating leases for office facilities located in Lexington, Massachusetts through June 30, 2017, July 31, 2017, and December 31, 2022, the Original Lease, the Temporary Use and Occupancy Agreement, as amended, and the Amended Lease, respectively. The Company entered into a noncancelable operating lease for office facilities located in Burlington, Massachusetts through November 30, 2022. Rent expense under the operating leases totaled \$103,000 and \$169,000 for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively.

As of September 30, 2017, the minimum future rent payments under the lease agreements are as follows (in thousands):

---

2017	\$ 15
2018	415
2019	495
2020	509
2021	524
Thereafter	496
Total minimum lease payments	<u>\$2,454</u>

---

**6,400,000 Shares**

**scPharmaceuticals**

**Common Stock**

---

**PROSPECTUS**

---

**Jefferies  
Leerink Partners  
BMO Capital Markets**

November 16, 2017

---

---